

開明中學講義

開明英文講義

〔第三冊〕

林語堂 林 幽

合 編



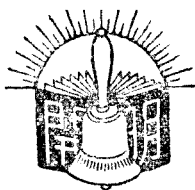
開明函授學校出版
開明書店印行

開明中學講義

開明英文講義

〔第三册〕

林語堂 林 幽
合 編



開明函授學校出版
開明書店印行

開明英文講義 第三册

二十四年三月初版 三十五年十月七版

每册定價國幣四元九角

編 著 者 林語堂 林 幽
發 行 者 開 明 書 店
 代 表 人 范 洗 人
印 刷 者 開 明 書 店
有 著 作 權 * 不 准 翻 印

(177 P.) Y

談 D53

CONTENTS

Lesson	page
1. Letter-heads	1
2. A Business Letter: Announcing the Establish- ment of a Firm	3
3. A Business Letter: Making Inquiry	6
4. A Business Letter: Replying the Inquiry	9
5. A Horse, an Ox, a Dog and a Man	12
6. The Ancient Greeks (I)	16
7. The Ancient Greeks (II)	18
8. The Romans	21
9. The Meaning of the Days of the Week	24
10. Elliptical Sentences	27
11. Inflections of Nouns and Pronouns	33
12. Inflections of Verbs, Adverbs and Adjectives	36
13. Is So-and-so Getting Better?	40
14. We are Glad to See You Back Again	43
15. Mr. D—— Wants to Take Us to a Show Tonight.	46
16. Four Kinds of Pronouns	50
17. The Conjugation of Verbs: Number and Person	53
18. The Inflection of Nouns: Number	55
19. How Cronus Overthrew Uranus.	57
20. How Zeus Overthrew Cronus	60
21. Zeus on Mount Olympus	65
22. Other Greek and Roman Gods and Goddesses	68
23. Possessive Adjectives and Possessive Pronouns	70
24. Cases of Nouns	72

25.	<i>What are Little Boys Made of?</i>	74
26.	Tsu-yi's Letter to His Brother	77
27.	His Brother's Reply	80
28.	A Letter of Inquiry	82
29.	The Reply	86
30.	A Cat Crying over a Mouse	89
31.	Conversations Heard in a Street	93
32.	Gender	96
33.	The Muses, etc.	99
34.	Le-tse's Letter to his Parents	102
35.	His Father's Reply	105
36.	Athena	108
37.	Interrogative Pronouns	111
38.	Relative Pronouns.	114
39.	Apollo (I)	117
40.	Apollo (II).	119
41.	More about the Greek Gods and Goddesses	124
42.	Self-Pronouns	127
43.	The Metric System	130
44.	Dry Measure and Liquid Measure	134
45.	<i>A Day in March</i> , etc.	136
46.	The Rise of Knighthood	140
47.	Knighthood and Europeans' Manners	143
48.	How to Read Fractions.	146
49.	History of the English Language	148
50.	Comparison	151
51.	Early English Literature	156
52.	The Age of Chaucer.	159
53.	The Tenses (I)	161
54.	The Tenses (II)	164
55.	How to Use the Different Tenses	166

56.	<i>A Pro Forma Order</i>	171
57.	Counter-Offer Accepted	174
58.	The Age of Spenser	176
59.	The Age of Shakespeare	179
60.	Direct and Indirect Quotation	182
61.	Complaints and Claims	188
62.	The Passive Voice	192
63.	The Age of Milton	194
64.	The Age of Dryden	198
65.	<i>Ariel's Song, etc.</i>	201
66.	Monies of Different Countries	207
67.	The Age of Classicism	211
68.	The Age of Transition	215
69.	<i>Amynta and Damon's Death, etc.</i>	219
70.	<i>On the Idea of Time, etc.</i>	222
71.	The Moods of Verbs	226
72.	The Subjunctive Mood	229
73.	The Age of Romanticism	231
74.	The Age of Tennyson and Browning	236
75.	From <i>The Lay of the Last Minstrel, etc.</i>	240
76.	<i>A Letter from Charles Lamb to William Wordsworth, etc.</i>	245
77.	<i>The Coffee-House, etc.</i>	248
78.	Auxiliaries	251
79.	English Literature Today.	255
80.	National Movements in English Literature	258
81.	American Literature before the Civil War	261
82.	American Literature after the Civil War	265
83.	<i>A Letter from Washington Irving to Benjamin Butler, etc.</i>	268
84.	Infinitives and Participles	272

85. Position of Adjectives, Adverbs, etc.	275
86. Formal and Informal Invitations and Replies.	279
87. Wedding Invitations and Replies	283
88. Medicines and Diseases	285
89. How to Write Telegrams, etc.	288
90. Rhetoric	290
GLOSSARY	294

LESSON 1

Letter-heads

(1) We have studied the different parts of a friendly [frënd'li] letter, and we shall now study the business letter. (2) A business letter has the same parts as a friendly letter; but the address of a business man or a business house is usually printed [prɪn'tid], and this part is called the letter-head [lɛt'ohed]. (3) We shall study below two typical [tɪp'ɪkl] letter-heads

I

Cable Address	THE GREAT CHINA CO.	Codes Used:
ACHUNGHWA	Importers, Exporters, &	A. B. C. 6th Edition,
SHANGHAI	Commission Agents	Acme, and Private
EXPORT DEPT	34 The Bund	
	Shanghai, China	

Reference No. _____, 194__.

II

WORKS	The Hwa Shang Can Co.	Telegraphic Address
64 Minkuo Road	(Manufacturers of Cans	58329, Hankow
Hankow, China	of All Shapes & Sizes)	
SALES OFFICE	SALES OFFICE	CODES USED:
7 Chungshan Road		Bentley and
Hankow, China		Private

生 字

- friendly** [frënd'li]: 和順的, 親熱的, 友誼的。——*friendly letter*: 友誼的信, 朋友間的通信。
- business** [bɪz'nɪs]: 商業, 營業。——*business letter*: 商界的信札。
- business man**: 商人, 商家。

business house: 商店。

print [prɪnt]: 印刷。

letter-head [lɛtə'rhɛd]: 書信箋頭所印之文字。

3. **typical** [tɪp/'ɪkl, 或 tɪp/'ɪkəl]: 可爲代表的。 [指指數]:

I: 左 (以下亞刺前號碼, 如 1, 4 等, 皆

(1) **cable** [kæ'bɛl]: 海底電線。“海電”的。——*cable address*: 海電掛號住址。 [(名詞)]

(4) **export** [ɛks'pɔrt]: 輸出, 出口, **department** [dɪpɑrt'ment]: 部份, 部。(簡寫作 *dept.*) —— *export department*: 出口部。

(5) **reference** [rɛfrɛns, 第二個 e 無音]: 參考。——*Reference No.* 備考之號數。

中 (1) **Co.** = *company* 之簡。

(2) **importer** [ɪmpɔrtə]: 輸入商, 進口商。 [出口商,

exporter [ɛkspɔrtə]: 輸出商,

(3) **commission** [kəmɪʃən]: 委

託; 佣金, 佣金。

agent [æ'jɛnt]: 代理人。——

commission agent: (受委託的代理人), 代辦人。

右 (1) **code** [kɔd]: 電報密碼。

(2) **A.B.C.** [æ'bɪ'sɛ]: 電報密碼名

edition [ɪdɪʃən]: 重訂版。

(3) **acme** [æk'mi]: 頂, 最高; (此處指) 一種電報密碼的名。

private [praɪvɪt]: 私下的; (此處指) 自己編的密碼。 [廠,

II: 左 (1) **works** [wɜrks]: 工場, T

(4) **sales office**: 銷售處, 營業部。

中 (1) **can** [kæn]: 罐頭。(名詞)

(2) **manufacturer** [mæn'ʃʌk'tʃərə, 或 -fæk'tʃərə]: 製造者。

(3) **shape** [ʃəp]: 形狀。

右 (1) **telegraphic** [tɛl'ɪgræfɪk] 屬於“陸電”的。——*telegraphic address*: 陸電掛號住址。

(4) **Bentley** [bɛntli]: 人名; (此處指) 電報密碼名。

講 義

(A) 當然書信箋頭文字的格式不止這兩種, 例如有的商家把那公司何年成立或它有分行在什麼所在都印出來。

(B) 外國商店往來的書信常有類分, 而各類中之各信又皆有號數; “備考的號數”就是指明該信爲某類某號。如果人家的信上有備考的號數, 我們覆信時, 須把它寫上, 以便收信人便於查閱舊信。

(C) *Codes Used* = *Codes which are used* = “所用的密碼”。

(D), 194. 這一行預備寫信時填上日期的。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	print	printed	printed

單數	複數	單數	複數
department	departments	reference	references
importer	importers	exporter	exporters
code	codes	size	sizes
manufacturer	manufacturers	shape	shapes
letter-head	letter-heads	can	cans
edition	editions	agent	agents

【造句】 用將來完了時制:

(1) pardon, (2) put on, (3) spend, (4) sweep, (5) try.

LESSON 2

Announcing the Establishment of a Firm

Proprietor & Manager WANG AL-LI	WANG AL-LI EXPORT CO. 13 Kiukiang Road Shanghai, China	Cable Address: WALEX, or 11596 Shanghai Codes Used: A B C. 6th Ed. and Private
--	--	---

Ref. No. AW. 1

July 1, 194.....

Messrs Winkle Import & Export Corp.,
246, East 47th Street,
New York, N.Y., U.S.A.

DEAR SIRS:

(1) I have the honour [ɔ̃n'o] to write you about the establishment [i-stäb'l'ishmunt] of my own [õn] export house in this city.

(2) I have been connected, for years, with the Chinese American Import & Export Co., first as a buyer, then as the head of their buying department. (3) Since the beginning of this year, when that Company failed, I have been investigating [ɪnvēs'ɪgə'tɪŋ] the conditions here; and, after due [dju] consideration [kənsɪd'əʃən] I have established [ɪ'stæb'lɪʃt] an export house of my own.

(4) As you were an old customer of the Chinese American Import & Export Co., it is not necessary [nēs'əsərɪ] for me to tell you about the good connections I have at this end. (5) However, I may assure [ə'shoer/] you that you will receive the same satisfactory [sæt'ɪsfækt'ərɪ] service [sɛr'vɪs] from me as you had from the old company.

(6) My terms of payment [tɛrmz_əv pæ'mənt] is also the same as that of the old company.

(7) I am,

Yours very truly [trʊd'li],

Wang Ai-li Export Co.

per Wang Ai-li
(Manager)

(8) WA/BKT

生 字

左 (1) **proprietor** [prəpri'ətə]: 所有者, 主人; 老闆。 「商號。」

中 (1) **export company**: 出口公司或 Messrs. (= Messieurs 之簡, 係 Mr. 之複數) [mɛs'ɔz]: 諸位先生, 貴號。

Winkle [wɪŋg'kl]: 人名。

import [ɪm'pɔrt]: 輸入, 進口。
(名詞)

corporation [kɔr'pərə'shən]: 公司。(簡寫作 corp.)

(10) **New York** [nu'jɔrk]: 紐約。
(N.Y. = New York)

U.S.A. (= United States of America): 美洲合衆國, 美國。

1. **honour** [ɔn'ə, h 無音]: 榮耀。

establishment [ɪ'stæb'lɪʃmənt, əs-]: 開設。(名詞)

- own** [ɔn]: (在所有格的名詞或代名詞之後) 自己的。
2. **for years** 數年, 多年。
- head** [hɛd]: 主任。
buying department: 進貨部。
3. **investigate** [ɪnvɛs'tiːgət]: 調查。
- due** [dū]: 適宜的, 相當的。
- consideration** [kɒnsɪ'dɪərəʃən]: 考慮。 [(云謂詞)]
- establish** [ɪstəb'liʃh]: 開設。
4. **necessary** [nɛs'ɪsəri, 或 nɛs'ɪsəri, 或將第三個元音 o 略去讀 -səri 亦可]: 必要的。
at this end: (在這邊), 在這邊。
5. **assure** [əʃʊər/]: 向 ~ 鄭重宣言, 保證。
- satisfactory** [sætɪsfak'tɔri, 或 -tri]: 令人滿意的。
- service** [sɛr'vɪs]: 服務。
6. **terms** [tɛrms]: 條件。
payment [pə'mɛnt]: 付款。——
terms of payment: 付款的條件。
7. **truly** [trʊli]: 真誠地。

講 義

(A) **messieurs** 是法文 **monsieur** 之後數, **monsieur**=**my sir**=**Mr.**; **messieurs**=**my sirs**, **monsieur** 讀 [mɔsiy'œr]; **messieurs** 讀 [mɛs'yœrs], 或 [mə'syœr]; **Messrs.** 即 **messieurs** 之簡, 但讀 [mɛs'ɔz], 或 [mɛs'yɔz]。

(B) “紐約”是城名, 又是省名, 所以正確的寫法是如這封信中所寫的, 雖則單寫 **New York**, 或 **New York City**, 該信仍可寄到。

(C) 外國人有榮耀的事, 往往直認不諱, 如本信第一句的口氣。

(D) **connect** 與 **connection** 在本課中的用法都是商業上的術語, **be connected with X company** 即“在 X company 服務”; **connection** 的本義則為“妥洽, 接頭”。

(E) **Yours very truly**, 乃很有禮貌而又不過於呆板的結尾語。

(F) 在 **Yours very truly**, 之下所印的斜體 **Wang Ai-li**, 是代表王愛利的簽字, **per** 是“經手”的意思。

(G) **WA/BKY** 是指這封信係 **WA** (王愛利) 念出來給 **BKY** (他的速記打字員的姓名的第一個字母) 打的, 所以須這樣者, 因為遇有重要的事情發生, 可以看出該信是誰念的是誰打的, 以便討論責任問題。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	investigate	investigated	investigated
	establish	established	established
	assure	assured	assured

單數	複數	單數	複數
proprietor	proprietors	corporation	corporations
Mr	Messrs.	establishment	establishments
service	services	consideration	considerations
honour	honours	payment	payments
commission agent		commission agents	
import (export) house		import (export) houses	
export (import) company		export (import) companies	
business house		business houses	
business man		business men	

【造句】 云謂詞用現在時制受事態：

- (1) teach, (2) understand, (3) want, (4) write,
(5) receive.

LESSON 3

Making Inquiry

Cable Address:	THE WINKLE IMPORT AND	Codes Used:
WINKLECORP	EXPORT CORP.	A.B.C. 5th Ed.,
New York	246, East 47th Street	Bentley, and
	New York, U.S.A.	Private

Reference No. WA. 1

July 25, 194____.

Mr. Wang Ai-li,
Messrs. Wang Ai-li Export Co.,
13 Kiukiang Road,
Shanghai, China.

DEAR MR. WANG:

(1) Your favour [fā'və] of the 1st, inst. [in'stənt],
has had our best attention, and, before we speak of

business, allow [əlow'] us to congratulate [kəngrät'ülät] you on the establishment of your own business.

(2) As regards [rīgār'dz] business, our present situation [sīt'üā'shən] is as follows. (3) Since the failure [fā'lyə] of the Chinese American Import and Export Co., we have been doing business with Messrs. Foch, Shaw, & Co. of your port [pōrt]. (4) Their prices are considerably [kənsid'ərəblī] lower than that of your old company, as the enclosed [īnklō'zd] statistics [stātīs'tīks] will show. (5) However, we have to open letter of credit [krəd'īt] to them, instead of payment against delivery [dīlīv'ərī] as was the terms of your old company.

(6) Since you are ready to grant [grahnt] us the same terms as your old company, we shall be glad to place our orders with you, if you can meet us on the question of price. (7) Please write us your offers [ōf'əz]. (8) If satisfactory, we shall then place a trial [trī'əl] order with you.

(9) Yours faithfully [fā'th'föölī],

The Winkle Import and Export Corp.

per *Fritz S. Lee*
(Import Dept.)

(10) FSL/YM

(11) 1 enclosure [īnklō'zhə]

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. favour [fā'və]: (在商業尺牘中) 尊爾, 惠書。 [在 inst.]
 instant [īn'stənt]: 本月。(簡 has had: 已得到。
 allow [əlow']: 准許。
 congratulate [kəngrät'ülät],</p> | <p>或 kōn-]: 賀, 恭祝。
 2. regard [rīgār'd]: 關涉, 關係。——as regards: 關於, 至於。
 present [prəz'n(t)]: 現在的。
 situation [sīt'üā'shən]: 情形, as follows: 如下。 [情境。</p> |
|---|--|

3. **failure** [fá'lyə 或 fá'lūr]: 失敗, 倒閉。
import and export company: 進出口公司。
port [pɔ:t]: 港口。
4. **considerably** [kənsɪd'əʊəbli, -drəbli, 或 kən-]: 頗, 甚。
enclose [ɪnklɔ:'z]: 包入, 封入。
statistics [stə'tɪs'tɪks]: 統計。
5. **credit** [kréd'ɪt]: 信用; (轉爲) 財源上的通融力。—— *letter of credit*: 許可通融書; 許可抵押提款證。
against [ə'gá'nst]: 相對。
delivery [dɪlɪv'ərɪ, -lɪv'rɪ]: 交貨, 領貨。—— *payment against delivery*: 付款取貨, 收款交貨。
6. **grant** [grahnt]: 許可, 允許。
order [ɔ:'dɔ:]: 定貨; 定貨單。—— *place an order with you*: 向尊處定貨。
meet [mi:t]: 相合; 接頭。
7. **offer** [ɔf'ə]: 供獻 (轉爲) 出價。
8. **trial** [tri'əl]: 試探。—— *trial order*: 試辦的定貨單。
9. **faithfully** [fá'fhfúli, 或 -fi]: 忠誠地。—— *Yours faithfully*, 商業信札上通常的結尾語, 並無什麼特別的意義。
11. **enclosure** [ɪnklɔ:'zə]: 包圍 (信札中的) 附件。

講 義

- (A) *favour* 當“尊函”用, 只限於商界的信札。
- (B) *instant* 之簡寫作 *inst.*, 可算是標準的寫法。
- (C) *as regards, as follows*, 都是簡句, 全句本來是 *as it regards, as it follows*, 而 *it* 都是“插用的”, 並沒有什麼意義在裏頭。 [詞。]
- (D) 注意 *trial* 是名詞, 並不是形容詞, *trial order* 是兩個名詞合成一個名詞。
- (E) *1 enclosure*, 註明須有一種文件附在此信中, 意即“附件一”。
- (F) *statistics* 只有這一式, 通常作複數用, 但作“統計學”解時則爲單數。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	allow	allowed	allowed
	enclose	enclosed	enclosed
	grant	granted	granted
	meet	met	met

單數	複數	單數	複數
favour	favours	situation	situations
port	ports	failure	failures
delivery	deliveries	order	orders
offer	offers	enclosure	enclosures
business	—	statistics (統計學)	statistics

【造句】 用將來時制受事態：

(1) affect, (2) agree, (3) apply, (4) assert, (5) awaken.

LESSON 4

Replying the Inquiry

Proprietor
&
Manager
WANG AI-LI

WANG AI-LI EXPORT CO.
13 Kiukiang Road
Shanghai, China

Cable Address:
WALEX, or 11593
Shanghai
Codes Used:
A.B.C. 6th Ed.
and Private

Reference No. AW. 2

Aug. 14, 194.....

Messrs. Winkle Import & Export Corp.,
243, East 47th Street,
New York, N.Y., U.S.A.

DEAR SIR:

(1) I have for acknowledgement [ək'nɒl'ɪjmənt] the receipt [rɪsɪ't] of your favour dated [dæ'tɪd] the 25th, ult. [ʊl'tɪmə]. (2) I wish to thank you for your spirit [spɪr'ɪt] of cooperation [kə'ɒp'ərə'shən] and will do my best to cooperate with you.

(3) After going over the prices of Messrs. Fitch, Shaw, & Co., I found that their prices, although considerably lower than that of the Chinese American Import & Export Co., are by no means [mōnz] the lowest prices obtainable [əbtā'nəbl] in the market a few months ago. (4) On the average [äv'ərɪj], I can allow you a six and half per cent [pəsənt/] rebate [rībā't] on their prices. (5) These prices are subject to a further [fūr'dhə] discount [dīs'kownt] of two per cent, if your order exceeds [iksō'dz] three thousand dollars gold.

(6) Let me assure you that they are the lowest prices obtainable at present. (7) In the future [fū'chə] it may be a little higher or lower, according to the market conditions. (8) However, be assured that you will always be given a fair treatment [trō'tmənt].

(9) Hoping to be favoured with an order from you soon,

I am,

Yours faithfully,

Wang Ai-li Export Co.

per Wang Ai-li
(Manager)

(10) WA/BKY

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. acknowledgement [ək'nɒl'ɪj-mənt]: 承認。</p> <p>receipt [rɪsɪ't]: 接收; 收條。</p> <p>date [dāt]: 載明日期。(名詞)</p> <p>ultimo [ul'timō]: 上月。(簡寫)</p> <p>2. spirit [spɪ'rɪt]: 精神。[ult.]</p> | <p>cooperation [kō-ōp'ərā'shən, 或 -sən]: 合作。(名詞)</p> <p>3. means [mēnz]: 方法, 根據。——
<i>by no means</i>: (毫無模樣), 決不, 決非。 [到的。]</p> <p>obtainable [əbtā'nəbl]: 可得</p> |
|---|---|

4. **average** [ʌv'əri], 或 ʌv'ri]: 平均。—— *on the average*: 以平均計算。
per cent [pə'sɛnt]: 百分比。
rebate [ri'bæt]: 減少; 折扣。
5. **subject** [sʌb'dʒɪkt]: 受限制的。
 —— *subject to*: 受限制於～。
- further** [fɜr'dhə]: 更進一層的。
discount [dis'kaʊnt]: 折扣。
exceed [iksəd, 或 ɛk-]: 超過。
dollar gold, 或 *gold dollar*: 美金, 金元。
7. **future** [fju'eə]: 將來。
8. **treatment** [tri'tmənt]: 待遇。

講 義

(A) 第 3 句 = “(我有關於承認)所須承認者, [我有] 接到你(被載) 上月廿五日的信”, 即“接奉上月廿五日惠書, 誦悉一切”。

(B) *nitime* 之簡作 *nt*, 如 *instant* 之簡作 *inst*, 可算是標準的寫法。

(C) 嚴格地講, *per cent* 之末應有點號, 如 *per cent.*, 因為這 *cent* 一字是 *centime* 之簡; 但現在還是於字末不加點號的人多。

(D) *discount* 與 *rebate* 同義。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	date	dated	dated
	exceed	exceeded	exceeded

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
acknowledge-	acknowledge-	receipt	receipts
ment	ments	spirit	spirits
cooperation	cooperations	means	means
average	averages	rebate	rebates
discount	discounts	treatment	treatments

【造句】 用過去時制受動態:

(1) bite, (2) break, (3) brush, (4) build, (5) choose.

LESSON 5

A Horse, an Ox, a Dog and a Man

(1) It was in the mid-winter [mīd'wīn'tə], and the weather was especially [ispěsh'əli] severe [sīvēi'] that winter. (2) A horse [hōrs], an ox, and a dog were nearly frozen to death. (3) Just as they stood shivering [shīv'ərīŋ], a man passed by. (4) They at once begged Man to save them.

(5) Man was kind, he took them home and built fire for them. (6) He gave oats [ōts] to Horse, hay [hā] to Ox, and meat to Dog. (7) These three animals [ān'īməlz] were very grateful [grā'tifōl] to him and agreed to help him, each in a certain period [pēr'jəd] of his life.

(8) Horse took Man's first years, Ox took the middle part of Man's life, while Dog agreed to help him at the end of his life. (9) Thus, when Man is young, he acts quickly [kwīk'lī] and gets angry quickly, like a horse. (10) When he is of middle age, he works hard and steadily [stēd'īli], he toils [toilz] quietly, like an ox. (11) At old age, he is faithful [fā'lhfōl] and kind, although he is, at times, hard to please, like a dog.

12. Do you know that there are two men in this story?
13. No, I don't know, please tell me about them.
14. First, there was the man who helped the three animals, he must be some one in particular; then there was the man whom the three animals helped, he is man in general.

15. Ah, I see now.
16. Do you think it true that man has, in the three periods of his life, something similar to what we see in the three animals?
17. Yes, there is something in it.
18. The story must be true then.
19. Well, that's a very poor way of arguing [aŕ'gūing].

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. mid-winter [mɪd'wɪn'tə]: 隆冬時期。 [尤其, especially [ɪspəʃ'əli]: 特別, severe [sɪvə'/: 嚴厲。 | period [pə'riəd]: 時期。 |
| 2. horse [hɔ:s]: 馬。 | 9. quickly [kwɪk'li]: 迅速地, get angry 動怒。 |
| 3. shiver [ʃɪvə'/: 戰慄。 pass by: 從附近經過。 | 10. mildle age : 中年時期。 steadily [stɛd'ɪli]: 穩固地, 繼續不停的。 |
| 5. build fire : 生火。 | toil [tɔɪl]: 辛苦地工作。 |
| 6. oat [ot]: 雀麥。 hay [hɑ:]: 乾草。 | 11. old age : 老年時期。 faithful [fɑ'tʃfʊl, 或 -fl]: 忠誠的。 |
| 7. animal [æn'ɪməl]: 動物, grateful [grɑ'tʃʊl, -fl]: 感激。 | 19. poor [pʊə]: 卑劣的。 argue [aŕ'gū]: 辯論。 |

講 義

(A) 第 5 句 he took them home = he took them to his home.

(B) 第 14 句 some one in particular = “某一個人”; man in general = “普通的人”。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 1—5):

1. A commission agent is one who tries to get commissions (委託) to buy goods for others who are in other

- places and he gets his commission(佣金) for doing this.
2. An exporter buys goods from manufacturers or business houses of the city or port where he is and sells them to business men or business houses in other ports or cities.
 3. An importer buys goods from exporters of other cities or ports.
 4. In addition to the name and address of his firm, a business man usually also prints in the letter-head his telegraphic or cable address and the code or codes which he uses.
 5. If there are many departments in that particular business house, each department usually has its name printed in the letter-head too.
 6. In the letter-head, there is sometimes also the reference number.
 7. At the end of a business letter, one usually puts the first letters of the names of the writer and the stenographer of the letter, so that if anything goes wrong, one can always tell who wrote the letter.
 8. If there are enclosures, one usually puts down "x encl." below this line, 1, 2, or 3, etc. is put in place of x depending on the number of enclosures that go with the letter.
 9. One will establish his business only after carefully investigating the conditions and after due consideration, if he is a good business man.
 10. Importers, exporters, and commission agents usually do their business by mail, or letters.

11. In these letters they usually talk about the prices, the terms of payment, the quality of goods, satisfactory service, spirit of cooperation, good connections, placing a trial order, rebate or discount, etc.
12. Sometimes one pays by D P, that is, delivery of goods against payment, but sometimes one has to open letter of credit to the exporters.
13. The complimentary close of a business letter usually is "Yours faithfully,".
14. Here are the abbreviations of words that are often used in business letters: *inst.* for "instant"; *ult.* for "ultimo"; *encl.* for "enclosure"; *D P* for "payment against delivery"; and there are a few more, which we shall learn later.

15. We say this is a severe winter, or the weather is severe this winter, but we don't say this is a severe summer.
16. Once a man saved a horse, an ox, and a dog from shivering in a forest.
17. He took them home and built them fire, he also gave them food.
18. He gave oats to the horse, hay to the ox, and meat to the dog.
19. They were all very grateful to him and each agreed to help a certain part of his life.
20. So a man now acts quickly and gets angry quickly, like a horse, when he is young; when he is in his middle age, he works hard and steadily, he toils quietly, like an ox; and when he is old he is faithful and kind, although sometimes hard to please, like a dog.

LESSON 6

The Ancient Greeks (I)

(1) On the northeastern [nōr'th-ē'stən] coast [kōst] of the Mediterranean Sea [mēd'ītērā'nyən sē], there is a peninsula [pīnīn'sūlə]. (2) This peninsula is Greece [grōs]. (3) The climate [kli'mīt] there is almost [aw'l-mōst] ideal [idī'əl], it is neither too cold nor too hot, like that along the coast of South China. (4) People can walk about in the open the whole year round.

(5) The ancient [ā'nshənt] Greeks [grōks] were a wonderful [wūn'dəfōōl] people. (6) They led a simple and beautiful life. (7) Dressed in simple gowns, they walked about in the open to enjoy the beauty [bū'ti] of nature [nā'chə]. (8) They would stroll [strōl] out to watch the beautiful hills [hīlz] and valleys [vāl'iz] and their fields [fōldz]. (9) Sometimes they would walk to the seashore [sē'shōr'] to watch and listen to the sounds of the waves [wāvz] of the Mediterranean Sea.

10. How did the ancient Greeks live?
11. They led a simple and beautiful life.
12. Do you like to live in Greece?
13. Well, I can't say, as I don't know how things go in that country at present.
14. I mean do you like to live in a country with climate like that of Greece?
15. Yes, I do, I like to live in such a place.
16. Then come to South China.

17. I will try to do so some time in the future.
 18. Do you enjoy seeing the waves of the sea from the seashore?
 19. Yes, I do.
 20. And how do you like the hills and valleys?
 21. I like them too.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. northeastern [nɔɪ'th-ə'st-ən]: 東北的。
 coast [kɔɪst]: 海岸, 海邊。
 <i>Mediterranean Sea</i> [mɛd'ɪ-tɔrə'nyən sə]: 地中海。
 peninsula [pɛ'nɪn'sulə]: 半島。</p> <p>2. Greece [grɛs]: 希臘。</p> <p>3. climate [kli'maɪt]: 氣候。
 almost [əw'lmɔɪst, 或 əl-, 又 -mɔɪst 或讀 mɔɪst]: 幾乎。
 ideal [ɪ'diəl, 或 ɪdɛ'əl, 又 ə 音不讀亦可]: 完美的; 理想的; 模範。</p> <p>4. <i>the open</i>: 空曠之地。 [的,]</p> <p>5. ancient [ə'nʃənt]: 古代的。</p> | <p>Greek [grɛk]: 希臘人。
 wonderful [wʌn'dəfʊl, 或 -ɪl]: 可異的, 可驚的。</p> <p>6. <i>lead ~ life</i>: 過某種的生活。</p> <p>7. beauty [bju:ti]: 美, —— <i>beauty of nature</i>: 自然之美。</p> <p>8. stroll [strɔɪl]: 散步, 慢行。
 watch [wɔ:ʃ]: 觀看。(去謂詞)
 hill [hɪl]: 小山。
 valley [vælɪ]: 山谷。
 field [fi:ld]: 平地, 田園。</p> <p>9. seashore [sɛ'shɔ:ʃ]: 海岸, 海邊。
 wave [weɪv]: 波浪。 [邊,]</p> <p>13. country [kʌn'tri]: 地方。</p> |
|---|--|

講 義

(A) seashore 與 coast 雖同作“海岸”, “海邊”解, 但仍有這個分別: seashore 指海邊的陸岸, coast 指沿海之地。

(B) climate = “氣候”, 係泛指某地之氣候; weather = “天氣”, 則指某地某時氣候之狀態。

(C) 第 19, 20, 21 三句都是簡句, 與第 18 句有連帶的關係。

練 習

【背誦】 現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
shiver	shivered	shivered

toil	toiled	toiled
argue	argued	argued
lead	led	led
stroll	strolled	strolled
watch	watched	watched

單數	複數	單數	複數
horse	horses	oat	oats
hay	hays	period	periods
animal	animals	coast	coasts
peninsula	peninsulas	climate	climates
life	lives	Greek	Greeks
beauty	beauties	hill	hills
valley	valleys	field	fields
seashore	seashores	wave	waves

【造句】 用下列云謂詞造成將來時制受動態的句子：

(1) brush, (2) choose, (3) classify, (4) change, (5) comb.

【畫綫圖】 分析第 19, 20 兩句。

LESSON 7

The Ancient Greeks (II)

(1) The Greeks also learned to play many kinds of games [gāmz], such as running, wrestling [rēs/līng], shooting [shōō/tīng], gymnastics [jīmnās/tīks], etc. (2) They were a strong people, as their body was well developed [dīvēl'əpt]. (3) They were great fighters [fī'təz] too.

(4) As they had strong and healthy [hěl'thì] body, they also had clear and imaginative [ímāj'ínatīv] mind. (5) They could think not only clearly but also imaginatively [ímāj'ínatīvlì]. (6) With clear thinking and wonderful imagination [ímāj'ínā'shən], they created [krīā'tìd] many beautiful things. (7) Among them were wonderful stories of their gods [gōdz], beautiful temples [tēm/plz] to worship [wēr'shīp] their gods in, wonderfully lifelike [lī/flīk] statues, beautiful poems and plays. (8) Theirs [dhārz] was a beautiful language too. (9) They were also great lovers [lūv'əz] of music [mū'zīk] and great musicians [mūzīsh'ənz].

(10) Their children had a great time too, listening to their bards [bārdz] singing stories in songs. (11) They sang songs about their gods and heroes [hēr'ōz], songs which told stories of man's bravery [brā'vərì] in war [wōr], and woman's faithfulness [fā'thōōlnìs] in love. (12) Some of these stories we shall study later.

13. Do you like to live with these ancient Greeks?
14. Why, of course. Who won't like to live with them?
But let me ask you one question: did they ever work?
15. Of course, they did, but most of their work were done by their slaves [slāvz].
16. Don't you think our temples are beautiful too?
17. Yes, some of them, but some are not beautiful at all.
18. And what do you think of our bards today?
19. Most of them are terrible.
20. Do you like music?
21. Oh, yes, I am awfully fond of it.

22. In what way do you like best to have stories told, in songs, in poems, in plays, or just as stories?
23. That's hard to say.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. game [gām]: 遊戲。 [角力, wrestle [rɒsəl, w, t, ə 若無音]: 射, 弓箭。
 shoot [ʃu:t]: 射, 弓箭。
 gymnastics [jɪmnəstɪks]: 打拳, 體操。</p> <p>2. develop [dɪvəlop]: 發達。</p> <p>3. fighter [fɪtə]: 戰士。 [的。</p> <p>4. healthy [hɜ:li]: 強壯的, 健康
 imaginative [ɪmæʃnətɪv]: 幻想的, 想像的, 富於想像力的。</p> <p>5. imaginatively [ɪmæʃnətɪvli]: 富於或善於運用想像力地。</p> <p>6. imagination [ɪmæʃnəʃən, 或 -ʃən]: 想像力。 [造, create [kri:ʃt, 或 krēʃt]: 創</p> <p>7. god [gɔ:d]: 神。
 temple [tɛmpl]: 廟宇。</p> | <p>worship [wɔ:ʃɪp]: 拜, 事奉。
 life-like [li:fli:k]: 如生的。
 play [plā]: 戲劇。(名詞)</p> <p>8. theirs [ðə:z]: 他們的。</p> <p>9. lover [lʌvə]: 愛好~的人。
 music [mju:zɪk]: 音樂。 [家, musician [mju:zɪʃən]: 音樂</p> <p>10. had a great time: 快樂, 樂哉。
 bard [bɑ:d]: 唱歌的詩人。</p> <p>11. hero [hērə]: 英雄。
 bravery [brə:vərɪ, 或 brə:vri]: 勇敢。</p> <p>war [wɔ:]: 戰爭。
 faithfulness [fə:θfʊlnəs]: 忠貞不渝, 忠心。</p> <p>14. ever [ɛvə]: 嘗。</p> <p>15. slave [slāv]: 奴隸。</p> |
|---|--|

講 義

(A) **gymnastics** = “打拳”; **boxing** [bɔ:k/sɪŋ] = “假相打”; **wrestling** = “角力”, 即兩人角力看誰被誰壓倒在地, 過一定的時間, 大約十秒或二十秒鐘。

(B) 第 2 句 **their body** 似乎不合乎文法, 但在這裏 **body** 是他們一個人的身體之總稱, 所以用單數。

練 習

【背誦】 現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
wrestle	wrestled	wrestled

shoot		shot		shot
develop		developed		developed
create		created		created
worship		worshipped		worshipped
單數	複數	單數	複數	
country	countries	game	games	
fighter	fighters	imagination	imagination	
god	gods	temple	temples	
play	plays	lover	lovers	
music	—	musician	musicians	
bard	bards	hero	heroes	
war	wars	slave	slaves	

【造句】 (1) ever so, (2) engagement, (3) yourself, (4) fly, (5) for good.

LESSON 8

The Romans

(1) We have seen that the Greeks were great thinkers [thĩng'kəz], poets [pō'its], artists [ār'tĩsts], architects [ār'kĩtēkts], athletes [āth'lōts], etc. (2) The Romans [rō'mənz] were great fighters and organizers [ōr'gənīzəz]. (3) They conquered [kōng'kəd] and ruled [rōld] first Italy, then most of the land [lānd] around the Mediterranean Sea.

(4) They became civilized [siv'ilīzd] later than the Greeks, and borrowed many things from them. (5) The

Romans had, to be sure, myths [mīths] of their own, but soon these myths became identified [iděn'tífid] with those of the Greeks. (6) That is why some of the gods of the West had characteristics [kār'iktərīs'tīks] which do not agree. (7) For instance, a satyr has, according to the Greeks, horse's [hōr'sīz] ears and tail [tāl]; but he has, according to the Romans, goat's [gōts] ears, horns [hōrnz], legs, and tail.

(8) The Greeks and the Romans were civilized long before the modern [mōd'ən] European nations. (9) These nations, England included [ĩnkloo'did], started with the civilizations [siv'ilizā'shənz] of the Greeks and Romans, and the myths of these two peoples form a part of the literatures [lít'ərīchəz] of all the modern European nations. (10) This is why we have to study them.

(11) But the English are a Teutonic [tütōn'ik] people, and their myths, of course, have a place in their literature too. (12) This we shall see in the names of the days of the week, which we shall study in the next lesson.

13. Who were the Romans?
14. The Romans were the citizens [sīt'īznz] of Rome [rōm], a city in Italy.
15. Were they as great artists, poets, thinkers, architects, etc. as the Greeks?
16. No, they were not as great, but they were great fighters and organizers.
17. Who became civilized first, the Greeks or the Romans?
18. The Greeks of course, but they were the first two civilized peoples of Europe.

19. Why do we have to study their myths?
 20. Because England, as well as other modern European nations, started with their civilizations, and their myths form a part of the English literature.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. thinker [thĩng/kə]: 思想者, 思想家。 [家,]
 poet [pō'it, 或 pō'it]: 詩人, 詩
 artist [ɑr'tĩst]: 美術家。
 architect [ɑr'kĩtəkt, 注意 ch
 讀如 k]: 建築師。
 athlete [ɑth'lət]: 運動家。
 2. Roman [rō'mən]: 羅馬人。
 organizer [ɔr'genɪzə]: 組織
 者。 [k 音]: 征服。
 3. conquer [kɔng'kə, 注意 qu 讀
 ruf [rōol]: 管理。
 land [lænd]: 土地。
 4. civilize [sĩv'ĩliz]: 開化。
 5. to be sure: 當然的。
 myth [mĩth]: 神怪人物, 神話。</p> | <p>identify [ĩdɛn'tifi]: 視爲同一。
 6. the West: 西洋, 歐西。
 characteristic [kɑr'ĩktərĩs'tĩk, 或 -trĩs'tĩk]: 特徵。
 7. tail [tɑl]: 尾巴。
 goat [gōt]: 山羊。
 horn [hɔrn]: 角。 [登"]。
 8. modern [mɔd'ən]: 現代的, "摩
 9. include [ĩnklō'd]: 包括。
 civilization [sĩv'ĩlɪzə'shən]:
 文化, 文明。
 literature [lĩt'ərɪchə, 或
 lĩv'ri-]: 文學。 [的]。
 11. Teutonic [tūtɔn'ĩk]: 條頓民族
 14. citizen [sĩv'ɪzən]: 市民; 公民。
 Rome [rōm]: 羅馬(城名)。</p> |
|---|--|

講 義

(A) **civilize** 與 **civilization** 的 z 或拼作 s, 但是 z 音與讀音相同, 所以大半的字典都以 z 爲標準。

(B) **civilization** 美國人讀作 [sĩv'ĩlɪzə'shən]。

(C) “條頓民族”(the Teutons) 乃北歐的民族, 德, 英, 丹麥, 瑞典, 挪威諸國人都是。

(D) **citizen** 原爲“市民”, 但照現在的用法則指“公民, 國民”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	conquer	conquered	conquered
	rule	ruled	ruled
	civilize	civilized	civilized
	identify	identified	identified
	include	included	included

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
thinker	thinkers	poet	poets
artist	artists	architect	architects
athlete	athletes	Roman	Romans
organizer	organizers	land	lands
myth	myths	literature	literatures
goat	goats	civilization	civilizations
tail	tails	citizen	citizens
horn	horns	characteristic	characteristics

【造句】 (1) who, (2) which, (3) what, (4) whose, (5) whom.

LESSON 9

The Meaning of the Days of the Week

(1) Do you know why the days of the week are so named? (2) Each day is named after some thing or god in honour of that thing or god.

(3) The first day of the week was named after sun, hence Sunday; and the second day, Monday, is the day of moon.

(4) Tuesday is Tiw's [tīz] day, i.e. the day named after the Teutonic god of war, Tiw. (5) Wednesday is Woden's [wō'dnz] day. (6) Woden, or Odin [ō'dīn], was the god of heaven [hēv'n] in Teutonic mythology [mīthōl'əjī]. (7) Thursday is Thor's [thōrz] day. (8) Thor, according to the Teutonic mythology, was the god of thunder [thūn'də]. (9) Friday is the day of Frigg [frīg'ə], wife of Odin and goddess [gōd'is] of heaven.

(10) Saturday is the day named after Saturn [sāt'ūr̄n], god of agriculture [āg'rīkūlchə] in Roman mythology. (11) But he was the father of Zeus [zūs], god of heaven, in Greek mythology.

STUDENT: (12) What do you mean by this phrase, *in honour of*?

TEACHER: (13) When you try to honour some one by doing something, then that something is done *in honour of him*, or *in his honour*.

STUDENT: (14) Was Wednesday, the day named after Odin, for instance, named in his honour?

TEACHER: (15) Yes, quite right, so were the other days named after gods or things. (16) The Europeans sometimes name their sons or daughters after their friends or relatives, in order to honour them.

STUDENT: (17) And after their fathers and grand-fathers too?

TEACHER: (18) Yes, and that too.

STUDENT: (19) Who was the god of thunder in the Greek mythology?

TEACHER: (20) Zeus.

STUDENT: (21) And the goddess of heaven?

TEACHER: (22) Hera [hē'rō], the wife of Zeus.

STUDENT: (23) And the god of war?

TEACHER: (24) Ares [ā'rōz], but when we want to speak of the god of war today, we usually say Mars [mārz], the Roman god of war.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. name [nām]: 命名。(云謂詞) | 8. thunder [thūn/də]: 雷。 |
| 2. honour [ɔn'ə]: 尊敬, 表示尊敬。
— <i>in honour of</i> : 以示尊敬某~。 | 9. Frigga [frīg'ə]: Odin 的妻。
goddess [gɔd'is]: 女神。 |
| 3. name after : 從某人之名而名之。 | 10. Saturn [sāt'ūrŋ, 或 sāt'an]:
羅馬的管理豐年或饑饉的神: 希臘
的“玉皇上帝之父”。 [業。
agriculture [əgr'ikŭlchə]: 農 |
| 4. Tiw [ti]: 條頓民族的戰神。 | 11. Zeus [zūs]: 希臘的“玉皇上帝”。 |
| 5. Woden [wɔ'dn]: 條頓民族的
“玉皇上帝”。 | 16. relative [rəl'atīv]: 親戚。 |
| 6. Odin [ɔ'dīn]: 同上。
heaven [hēv'n]: 天。
mythology [mīthɔ'ləj]: 神話。 | 22. Hera [hē'rō]: Zeus 的妻。 |
| 7. Thor [thɔr]: 條頓民族的“雷
公”。 | 24. Ares [ā'rōz]: 希臘的戰神。
Mars [mārz]: 羅馬的戰神。 |

講 義

(A) 第 11 句的 god of heaven 乃重述 Zeus, 非重述 father of Zeus。

(B) 第 14 句的兩個 named 在句的構造法上是這樣的: 第一個是過去分詞當作形容詞用以形容 day; 但是第二個 named 卻是與 was 合為該句的敘述的云謂詞短語。

(C) Frigga 或作 Frig [frīg], 或作 Freya [frē'ə]。

(D) 注意 Hera 讀 [hē'rō], 非 [hē'rə]。

(E) 歐英的人往往借用別人的名字為兒女取名, 以表示紀念不忘的意思。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	name	named	named
	honour	honoured	honoured

單數	複數	單數	複數
heaven	heavens	mythology	mythologies
thunder	thunders	goddess	goddesses
relative	relatives	Sunday	Sundays

【造句】 下列云謂詞與 have 同用，各造一詢問句：

(1) do, (2) have, (3) put, (4) drink, (5) begin.

LESSON 10

Elliptical Sentences

(1) We have seen that many sentences have certain parts omitted or understood. (2) Such sentences are called **elliptical** [ĭlĭp'tĭkəl] **sentences**. (3) We shall review [rĭvū'] the **elliptical sentences** that we have already known, and study some more which are new to us. (4) The parts that are understood are put in parentheses [pərĕn'thĭsēz].

(5) (You) **Take it for me, please.** (6) (I) **Thank you.**
 (7) **I went to your brother's (house).** (8) **He bought it at C. H. Wong's (shop).**

(9) You may take all (that) you can (take). (10) He is as tall as I (am tall). (11) I like you better than (I like) her. (12) Who painted this picture?—C. Y. Chen (painted this picture). (13) I believe it (to be) best for us to start our business at once.

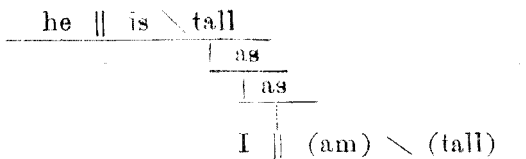
(14) (You) Don't eat when (you are) angry. (15) Though (we are) tired [tīrd], (you) let's march [mārch] on. (16) It's a good news, if (it is) true. (17) Please come as soon as (it is) possible [pɔ̃s/ɪbl]. (18) (I am) Yours sincerely. (19) Did you read that book?—Yes, I did (read it), or Yes, (I read it). (20) What did you get out of it?—(I got) Nothing (out of it).

(21) I know (that) you are a good man. (22) He likes this picture (which) you painted. (23) What do you think of the man (whom) you met last night? (24) I like things (which are) made in Germany.

(25) I have studied five lessons, (and) you (have studied) only three (lessons). (26) I find it (to be) easy, and you (find it to be) hard. (27) I study science [sī'əns], (and) you (study) arts [ārts].

(28) In diagramming elliptical sentences, we have to supply the parts (which are) understood.

(10)



(11)

I || like | you
 | better
 | than

 (I) || (like) | her

(12)

C.-Y.-Chen || (painted) | (picture)
 | (this)

(13)

it || 's \ news
 | if | good
 | a

 (it) || (is) \ true

(20)

(I) || (got) | nothing
 | (out-of) | (it)

(23)

you || do-think | what
 | of | man
 | the

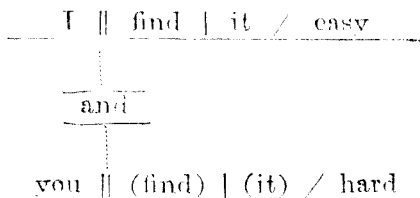
 you || met | (whom)
 | last-night

(24)

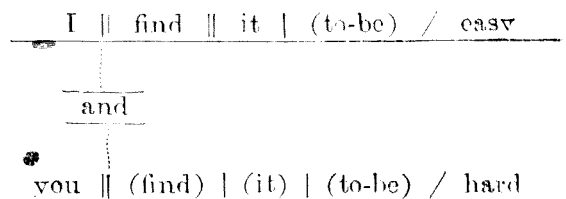
I || like | things

 (which) || (are)-made
 | in | Germany

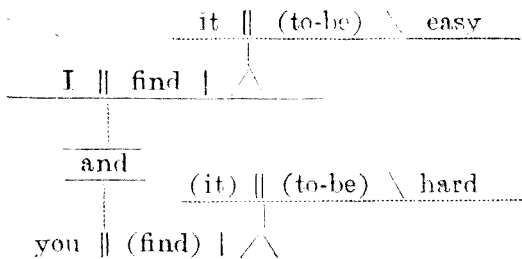
(26) [A]



[B]



[C]



生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>2. elliptical [i'lipt/'tɪkəl, 或 -kl]: 省略的。</p> <p>3. review [ri'vi:]: 溫習。</p> <p>4. parenthesis [pə'ren'thɪsɪz]: 括弧。(複數 parentheses [pə'ren'thɪsɪz])</p> | <p>15. tire [tɪr]: 使疲乏。——<i>tired</i>: 疲</p> <p>march [mɑ:tʃ]: 進行。[乏的。</p> <p>17. possible [i'ɒs'ɪbl]: 可能的。</p> <p>27. science [saɪ'əns]: 科學。</p> <p>art [ɑ:t]: 美術, 藝術。——<i>arts</i> [ɑ:ts]: 文藝。</p> |
|---|---|

講 義

(A) 第 26 句有三種圖解法,是因爲對於這句的構造可以有兩種解釋: A, B 兩綫圖同一解釋,以 it 爲 find 的賓語,以 easy 或 hard 爲賓語補足語形容着 it,所差者即在綫圖 B 將連接 it 與 easy 或 hard 的那個云謂詞補出;綫圖 C 則把 it to be easy 與 it to be hard 當做特種的子句,而全子句當做 find 的賓語。

(B) 第 24 句的 made in Germany 是一個極普通的成語,因此,如果把它們用連字號連起來 (made-in-Germany) 做一個短語,也未嘗不可。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 6—10):

1. Greece is a peninsula on the northeastern coast of the Mediterranean Sea.
2. The climate there is almost ideal, and people, dressed in simple gowns, can walk in the open the whole year round.
3. The ancient Greeks were wonderful artists, architects, thinkers, poets, musicians, etc.
4. They would enjoy themselves strolling in the field, watching the beauty of the hills and valleys, or watching and listening to the waves of the sea from the seashore.
5. They had also many kinds of games, such as running, wrestling, gymnastics, shooting, etc., to enjoy themselves.
6. Sometimes they would enjoy themselves in songs and plays, songs and plays telling stories about their gods and heroes, stories of man's bravery in war and woman's faithfulness in love.

7. Their children also had great times in the games and songs and stories.
8. Most of their work were done by their slaves.
9. Although the Greeks were good athletes and good fighters, the Romans were still better fighters, in addition to being great organizers.
10. They became civilized later than the Greeks and borrowed many things from them, their myths also became identified with the Greek myths.
11. All the modern European nations started with the civilizations of the Greeks and Romans in addition to that of their own, that is why we find Greek and Roman myths in their literatures.
12. Sunday and Monday were named after sun and moon in their honour respectively.
13. Tuesday is Tiw's day; Wednesday, Woden's or Odin's day; Thursday, Thor's day; Friday, Frigga's day; and Saturday, Saturn's day. These days are named in honour of these gods and goddesses.
14. Saturn was, in Greek mythology, the father of Zeus, who was the god of heaven; but, in the Roman mythology, he was the god of agriculture.
15. All the others were Teutonic gods. Tiw was the Teutonic god of war; Odin, or Woden, the Teutonic god of heaven; Thor, the Teutonic god of thunder; and Frigga, wife of Odin and goddess of heaven.
16. Zeus was also the god of thunder in the Greek mythology, and his wife, the goddess of heaven, was Hera.
17. The Roman god of war was Mars, while that of the Greeks was Ares

18. Parts of sentences may be omitted provided what we mean is very clear.
19. When a sentence has some of its parts omitted or understood, the sentence is called an **elliptical sentence**.
20. The parts of **elliptical sentences** which are understood may be the **subject**, the **predicate**, or both, **complements**, **modifiers**, or some **words which serve to connect other words**.
21. In diagramming an elliptical sentence, however, we have to supply the part or parts which are omitted or understood.
22. The part or parts thus supplied should be put in parentheses.
23. But we must remember that, though such part or parts as are omitted in an elliptical sentence have to be supplied in diagrams, it never means that an elliptical sentence is not a whole sentence, for it expresses a complete thought all the same.

* * *

LESSON 11

Inflections of Nouns and Pronouns

(1) We have seen the changes of **word forms** due to **persons and cases**, e. g., *I, me, you, he, him, she, her*, etc.

(2) These changes are called **inflections** [ɪnfɛlɛkʹʃənz] in grammar. (3) Words are mere reflections [rɪflɛkʹʃənz] of the reality [rɪəlʹɪtɪ], and **inflections** are made to reflect [rɪflɛktʹ] the distinctions in the reality. (4) Let us give

a brief [brɛf] survey [sɛr/vā] here of these distinctions.

(5) We have seen that there are three **persons**, the **first**, the **second**, and the **third persons**, and two **cases**, the **nominative** and the **objective cases**; but there is one more **case**, the **possessive** [pɔzɛs'iv] **case**, to show ownership [ɔ'nɛshɪp]; but **nouns** and **pronouns** in this case really are **adjectives** in their use. (6) Now let us study the **number** and **gender** [jɛn'də].

(7) **Number** is the **inflection** of **nouns** and **pronouns** to help us understand whether one or more than one object is meant. (8) When one is meant, we use a **singular** [sɪŋg'gūlə] **noun** or **pronoun**, and when more than one is meant, we use a **plural** [plʊr'əl] **noun** or **pronoun**.

(9) But the force of **number** does not end here. (10) When we use a **singular noun** or **pronoun** as **subject**, we must use a **singular verb**; and when the **subject** of a sentence is **plural**, we must use a **plural verb**.

(11) **Number** also influences two **adjectives**, *this* and *that*, their plurals are *these* and *those*.

(12) Most of the living things have two sexes [sɛk's-iz], the **male** [māl] and the **female** [fē'māl]. (13) But the lifeless [li'flɪs] objects don't have this distinction. (14) This gives us three **genders**: the **masculine** [mah'skūlɪn] **gender** for the *male*, the **feminine** [fēm'ɪnɪn] **gender** for the *female*, and the **neuter** [nū'tə] **gender** for the *lifeless* and *sexless* [sɛks'flɪs] *objects*. (15) But some **nouns** and **pronouns** may be used for both **masculine** and **feminine genders**. (16) Such **nouns** and **pronouns** are said to be in the **common gender**.

生 字

2. **inflection** [ɪnflɒk'shən]: 字形的變化。
3. **reflection** [rɪflɒk'shən]: 反射, 反照。(名詞)
reality [rɪəl'ɪtɪ, 或 rēəl'ɪtɪ]: 實在, 實在的東西。〔(云謂詞)
reflect [rɪflɒc't]: 反照, 反射。
4. **brief** [brɪf]: 簡單的, 簡短的。
survey [sɛr'vā, 或 sɛr'vā]: 瞰視。
5. **possessive** [pɒzə'sɪv]: 所有的。
 ——*possessive case*: 所有格。
ownership [ɔ'nəʃɪp]: 所有權, 主權。
6. **gender** [dʒɛn'də]: 文法的性別。
7. *is meant*: 是所指的。
8. **singular** [sɪŋ'gʊlə]: 單數的。 ——*singular number*: 單數。
12. **sex** [sɒks]: 性, 性別。 ——*two sexes*: 兩性。
male [mə]: 男性, 雄性, 牡性。
female [fē'māl]: 女性, 雌性, 牝性。
13. **lifeless** [lɪ'flɪs]: 無生命的。
14. **masculine** [mæ'skʊlɪn]: 陽性的。 ——*masculine gender*: 陽性的。
feminine [fē'mɪnɪn]: 陰性的。 ——*feminine gender*: 陰性的。
neuter [nū'trɔɪ]: 中立的。 ——*neuter gender*: 中性。
sexless [sɒks'lɪs]: 不分性別的。
16. *common gender*: 通性。

講 義

- (A) 本課與下課是總述字形變化的大要, 至於語式變化須待以後再講。
- (B) 形容詞中只有 *this* 與 *that* 有單數與複數之分, 其餘的都沒有。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	review	reviewed	reviewed
	tire (罕用)	tired	tired
	march	marched [-cht]	marched
	reflect	reflected	reflected

單數	複數	單數	複數
parenthesis (罕用)	parentheses	shop	shops
science	sciences	art	arts
inflection	inflections	reflection	reflections
reality	realities	survey	surveys
gender	genders	sex	sexes
male	males	female	females

【造句】 用 be 與下列諸云謂詞各造一句：

- (1) apply, (2) bite, (3) choose, (4) concern, (5) consist.

【畫綫圖】

- (1) I believe it best for us to start our business at once.
 (2) She bought them at T. Y. Chen's.
 (3) In diagramming elliptical sentences, we have to supply the parts understood.

LESSON 12

Inflections of Verbs, Adverbs and Adjectives

(1) **Inflections of verbs** are also called **conjugations** [kǒn'jōōgā'shənz]. (2) That **verbs** are **inflected** [ínflĕk't-îd] or **conjugated** [kǒn'jōōgātîd] to show the difference in **person and number**—e.g., *I am, you are, he is, they work, it*

works, she has, we have, he does, you do, etc.—we have already seen. (3) But **verbs** are also **conjugated** to show the difference in **tense** [těns], **voice** [vois] and **mood** [mōōd].

(4) There are three **tenses** to indicate [ĭn'dĭkāt] the *three divisions* [dĭvĭzh'ōnz] of *time*: **past**, **present** and **future**. (5) Each **tense** has four forms, the **simple**, the **continuous** [kōntĭn'ūōs], the **perfect** [pĕr'fĭkt], and the **perfect continuous**.

(6) There are two **voices**: the **active** [āk'tĭv] and the **passive** [pās'ĭv]. (7) When the **subject** of a sentence is the *doer* [dōō'ō] of an *action*, we use a verb in the **active voice**. (8) But when the **subject** is the *receiver of an action*, we use a verb in the **passive voice**.

(9) There are three **moods**. (10) A verb in the **indicative mood** [ĭndĭk'ōtĭv mōōd], merely states a *fact*. (11) A verb in the **imperative mood** [ĭmpĕr'ōtĭv mōōd] makes a *command* or *request*. (12) A verb in the **subjunctive mood** [sōbjŭngk'tĭv mōōd] states a *thought* as distinguished from *fact*.

(13) Some **adjectives** and **adverbs** are *inflected* to show the **degree** [dĭgrō'] of **comparison** [kōmpār'ĭsn]. (14) There are three **degrees** of **comparison**: the **positive degree** [pōz'ōtĭv dĭgrō'], the **comparative degree** [kōmpār'ōtĭv dĭgrō'], and the **superlative degree** [sŭpĕr'ōtĭv dĭgrō'].

(15) The other three parts of speech—**preposition**, **conjunction**, and **interjection**—are *not inflected*.

(16) Here is a table of the **inflections** of the five **parts of speech**.

PART OF SPEECH	CASE	GENDER	NUMBER	PERSON	COMPARISON	
NOUN	Nominative Possessive Objective	Masculine Feminine Neuter Common	Singular Plural			
PRONOUN	<i>same</i>	<i>same</i>	<i>same</i>	1st 2nd 3rd		
ADJECTIVE			<i>same</i> (this, these; that, those) (Possessive Adjectives)	<i>same</i>	Positive Comparative Superlative	
ADVERB					<i>same</i>	
VERB	TENSE	FORM OF TENSE			VOICE	MOOD
	Past Present Future	Simple Perfect Continuous Perfect Continuous	<i>same</i>	<i>same</i>	Active Passive	Indicative Imperative Subjunctive

生 字

1. **conjugation** [kɔ̃n'jɔ̃gãʰ-shən]: 云謂詞字形之變化。
2. **inflect** [ɪnflɛktʰ]: 變化字形。
conjugate [kɔ̃n'jɔ̃gãt]: 變化云謂詞的字形。
3. **tense** [tɛns]: 時制。
voice [vois]: 語態。
mood [moo]: 語氣, 說法。
4. **indicate** [ɪn'dɪkãt]: 指明。
division [dɪvɪzɪh'ɔ̃n]: 部份。
5. **simple** [sɪm'pl]: 單純的; 單純式。——*simple tense*: 單純式的時制。
continuous [kɔ̃ntɪu'ũos]: 連續的; 連續式。
perfect [pɛr'fɪkt, 或 -fɛkt]: 完成的; 完成式。——*perfect tense*: 完了時制。
perfect continuous: 完成繼續式。
6. **active** [ãk'tɪv]: 主動的。
passive [pãs'ɪv]: 受動的, 被動的。
7. **doer** [doo'o, 或 doo'o]: 做事的
active voice: 主動態。 [人,
8. *passive voice*: 受動態, 被動態。
10. **indicative** [ɪndɪk'ɔ̃tɪv]: 指明的。——*indicative mood*: 直述語氣, 直述法。
11. **imperative** [ɪmpɛr'ɔ̃tɪv]: 命令的。——*imperative mood*: 命令語氣, 命令法。
12. **subjunctive** [sɔ̃bjũngk'tɪv, 或於 ig 之後省去 k 的呼氣]: 接續的。——*subjunctive mood*: 接續法, 假定的語氣。
13. **degree** [dɪgri:]: 度數, 度, 級。
comparison [kɔ̃mpãr'ɪsn]: 比較。——*degree of comparison*: 比較的等級。
14. **positive** [pɔ̃zɪ'tɪv, 或 pɔ̃z-tɪv]: 明確的, 原級的。——*positive degree*: 原級。
comparative [kɔ̃mpãr'ɔ̃tɪv]: 比較的, 較級的。——*comparative degree*: 較級。
superlative [sũpɛr'ɔ̃tɪv]: 最高的, 最級的。——*superlative degree*: 最級。

講 義

(A) 第 2 句自 *that* 至 *etc.* 是一個子句, 是 *have seen* 的賓語。

(B) 第 12 句 *as distinguished from fact* 的 *as* 是“連續代名詞”, 就是同時為連續詞與代名詞而為 (*is*) *distinguished* 的主語。全子句可譯為“那與事實有差別的”, 這子句是當形容詞用以形容 (*thought* (思想) 的。

(C) *perfect continuous* 一式不常用, 例如 *I have been doing it.*

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	inflect	inflected	inflected
	conjugate	conjugated	conjugated
	indicate	indicated	indicated
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
conjugation	conjugations	tense	tenses
voice	voices	mood	moods
division	divisions	doer	doers
degree	degrees	comparison	comparisons

【造句】 passive voice, present continuous tense 一句。

又, passive voice, present perfect tense 一句。

【畫綫圖】 分析本課第 2 句。

LESSON 13

Is So-and-So Getting Better?

TEACHER: (1) Tso-jen, is Yu-lin getting better, or is he still having fever [fə'və]?

TSO-JEN: (2) Yes, he still has fever regularly [rɛŋ'uləlɪ] and his doctor [dɔk'tɔ] said that it might be typhoid [tɪ'fɔɪd] fever.

TEACHER: (3) It will be too bad, if he gets it. (4) Typhoid is a very tedious [tɪ'diəs] disease [dɪzə'z]. (5) If he gets it, that means he can't come to class any more this term [tɜm]. (6) And what about your brother, Teh-yin?

TEH-YIN: (7) Last night he felt chilly [chĩl'ĩ] first and after that he had fever. (8) We believe he must have got malaria [məlar'ĩə].

TEACHER: (9) Let's hope it's malaria and nothing worse. (10) And Ching-lin, what has he got?

JU-LIN: (11) My brother over-ate [ō'vorā't] himself yesterday noon, and the indigestion [ĩn'dijēs'chən] caused [kawzd] him terrible stomach-ache last night, so he can't come to class this morning.

TEACHER: (12) Oh, you are back already, Ju-lin, how's your cough [kawf]?

JU-LIN: (13) Thanks, I am well now.

TEACHER: (14) And what trouble has Chung-ming?

CHI-KUN: (15) He had constipation [kõn'stĩpā'shən] for several days, and fever last night, so the doctor advised him to stay at home and take some laxative [lǎk'sətĩv].

TEACHER: (16) It's good to have a thorough [thũr'ə] cleaning [klõ'nĩng] of your system once in a while. (17) Chi-ming, what about your younger brother Tsu-ming?

CHI-MING: (18) I don't know what he's got. (19) He was still all right this morning, but after breakfast suddenly [sũd'nli] he vomited [võm'ĩtĩd].

TEACHER: (20) He must have taken something wrong [rõng].

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. fever [fõ'və]: 熱病, 熱。</p> <p>2. regularly [rõg'ũlũli]: 有恆地, 依一定的時間地。</p> <p>doctor [dõk'tõ]: 醫生。</p> | <p>typhoid [tĩ'fõid]: 腸熱症的。</p> <p>——<i>typhoid fever</i>: 腸熱症。</p> <p>3. tedious [tõ'dĩəs]: 煩厭的。</p> <p>disease [dĩzõ'z]: 病症。</p> |
|--|--|

5. **term** [tɜ:m]: 學期。
7. **chilly** [ˈtʃɪli]: 寒冷的。
8. **malaria** [məˈlɛəriːə]: 寒熱症, 瘧疾。
11. **over-eat** [ˈoʊvərˈi:t]: 食得太多。
(過去時制 **over-ate** [ˈoʊvərˈeɪt],
過去分詞 **over-eaten** [ˈoʊvərˈeɪtən])
indigestion [ɪnˈdɪdʒəsʰən, 美國人讀 ɪnˈdɪdʒəsʰən]: 不消化。
cause [kɔ:wz]: 致使, 使惹起。
12. **are back**: 回來了。
- cough** [kɔ:f, 或 kɔ:f]: 咳嗽。
15. **constipation** [kɒnˈstɪpəˈʃən]: 便秘。
- laxative** [læksəˈtɪv]: 瀉藥。
16. **thorough** [ˈθʊrə]: 徹底的。
clean [klɛn]: 使清潔, 蕩滌。
once in a while: 不久一次。
19. **suddenly** [sʌdˈnli]: 忽然地。
vomit [vɒmɪt]: 吐, 嘔吐。

講 義

(A) 第 4 句的 typhoid 當然是 typhoid fever 之節。

(B) over-eat 之後必須有含着 self 的代名詞, over-eats himself = eats more than what is good for him.

(C) 第 16 句中的 system 乃指排泄系;所謂“清理排泄系”,即大便也。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	over-eat	over-ate	over-eaten
	cause	caused	caused
	clean	cleaned	cleaned
	vomit	vomited	vomited
	單 數	複 數	單 數
	fever	fevers	複 數
	doctor	doctors	laxative
	disease	diseases	laxatives
	term	terms	system
	cough	coughs [-fs]	system
			systems
			malaria
			indigestion
			constipation
			(無)

【造句】 perfect continuous tense 二句。

【畫綫圖】 分析本課第 15 句。

LESSON 14

We are Glad to See you Back Again

A: (1) Hello, good morning. (2) We are glad to see you back again.

B: (3) Good morning, good morning to you all. (4) Well, I am glad to be back among old chums [chŭmz] again.

C: (5) How did you spend your vacation [vokā'shən]?

B: (6) We went to the country for a change.

A: (7) Didn't you miss all the excitements [iksī't-mənts] of modern city life?

B: (8) That is exactly [igzäkt'lî] the thing that I tried to escape from.

D: (9) But didn't you find it rather inconvenient [in'kənvō'nyənt] at times?

B: (10) Yes, in the first few days, but one soon got used to it. (11) And then there always is, in the country, no such noise [noiz] as that from the street, instead you have the chirpings [chîr'pîngz] of birds, you have the mooings [moo'îngz] of cows [kowz], etc. (12) Further, there are no such long shadows [shäd'ōz] from tall buildings, you have plenty of sunshine always.

A: (13) But there are no cars [kârz], and you have to go on foot for any distance.

B: (14) That's exactly what I like. (15) I always take a walk whenever possible. (16) You know during the week-ends, I often take my children for a walk in the

out-kirts [ow't-skîrts] of the city, where the city merges [mêr'jiz] into the country.

C: (17) Didn't you get tired of it at the end of a month?

B: (18) No, it's just enough, maybe [mā'hē] I shall get tired of it at the end of two or three months. (19) For there are, of course, inconveniences [in'kɔnvə'ny-ənsiz], which, I must confess [kɔnfēs'], have begun to tell on me when I left the place.

C: (20) What are they, for instance?

B: (21) There were many things which I needed and which I could not get, such as, books, ink, etc., and I had a fine time in getting a piece of toilet soap there. (22) I tried all the shops in three villages, but I couldn't get a single piece of decent [dē'snt] toilet soap! (23) The problem [prɔb'lēm] of bath is also very trying, but fortunately [fɔr'chɔnətli] it was summer and I often went to the river [rɪv'ə] to take a bath.

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. chum [chūm]: 同室生, 摯友。 | |
| 5. vacation [və'kə'shən]: 假期。 | 11. noise [noiz]: 聲音。 |
| 6. <i>for a change</i> : 以變換環境。 | chirp [chɪp]: 鳥叫。—— <i>chirping</i> [chɪ'pɪŋ]: 鳥叫的聲音。 |
| 7. miss [mɪs]: 因為無~而感覺不便或不安。 | moo [mū]: 牛叫。—— <i>mooing</i> : 牛叫的聲音。 |
| excitement [ɪksɪ'tɪ.ənt, ɔk-]: 興奮的事情。 | cow [kəʊ]: 母牛。 |
| 8. exactly [ɪgzək'tli, 或 ɔg-, 或 zək'tli]: 恰恰。 | 12. shadow [shə'dəʊ]: 影子。 |
| 9. inconvenient [ɪn'kɔnvə'ny-ənt]: 不方便。 | 13. car [kɑ:]: 車。
<i>on foot</i> : 步行。 [處, |
| | 16. outskirt [ow't-skɪrt]: 近郊外 |

- merge** [mɛrʒ]: 併合, 混入。
17. *got tired of it*: 對於它發生厭倦。
18. **maybe** [mā/bē]: 或許。
19. **inconvenience** [ɪn'kɒnvəni-nyəns]: 不方便的地方。
- confess** [kən'fɛs]: 承認。
- tell on*: 對於~有不良的效果。
21. *fine time*: (美好的時間), 有趣的經驗。(反語)
- toilet soap*: 香皂(洗面洗身用的)。
22. **decent** [dɛ'sɛnt]: 適當的, 過得去的。
23. **problem** [prɒb'lɒm, 或 -ləm]: 「問題。」
- try** [tri]: 使疲勞。——*trying*: 很使人不適意的。
- fortunately** [fɔ'rtʃənɪtli]: 幸, 好運道地。
- river** [rɪv'ə]: 河, 江, 溪。

講 義

(A) 如從前說過, *instead* 不是名詞, 是狀詞; 在第 11 句中, 它形容着名詞 *have*, 但是句中有一部分的意思沒有完全寫出, 如果要完全說出, 須用 *instead of that*, 而 *that* 乃指 *such noise as that from the street*。

(B) 第 21 句的 *fine time* 乃是反語, 真正的意義與字面上的意義恰相反。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	miss	missed [-st]	missed
	chirp	chirped [-pt]	chirped
	moo	mooed	mooed
	merge	merged	merged
	confess	confessed [-st]	confessed
	try	tried	tried
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
chum	chums	cow	cows
vacation	vacations	shadow	shadows
excitement	excitements	outskirt	outskirts
noise	noises	inconvenience	inconveniences

chirp	chirps	problem	problems
chirping	chirpings	river	rivers

【造句】 perfect continuous tense 三句。

LESSON 15

Mr. D— Wants to Take us to a Show Tonight

D: (1) Well, at any rate, you've come back to civilization. (2) Didn't you miss the movies [mōō'vīz], and would you not let me take you and your wife to a wonderful love story tonight?

B: (3) Tonight? No, we haven't got settled [sēt'ld] down yet. (4) Besides, I don't quite care for love stories.

D: (5) But this is an exceptionally [iksēp'shnəlī] good one, and tonight is the last night. (6) In fact, last night was the last night, but the theater [thī'ətə] manager saw the possibility [pōs'əbīlītī] of having another night with the theater packed [pakt], so he put up a notice that "by popular [pōp'ulə] request" it will be shown for another night.

B: (7) If that's the case, we will go, thanks very much.

A: (8) And you will have to go with me to a tennis [tēn'īs] match this Saturday afternoon. (9) Your wife will, I am sure, accept [əksēpt] my invitation [īn'vītā'shən], because she is a good tennis player [plā'ə] herself.

B: (10) Well, I have to telephone [tēl'ifōn] her first, because she might have another engagement. . . . (11)

Hullo, is this A-nien? (12) Ask the mistress [mɪs'trɪs] to come to the phone [fōn]. . . . (13) Is that you? (14) Well, Mr. D— wants to take us to a show tonight. . . . (15) Well, I said the same thing to him, I told him that we haven't got settled down yet, but he said that it is exceptionally good. (16) It was supposed to have been finished last night, but they have decided [dɪsɪ'dɪd] to show it one more night, and it will be the last night tonight. (17) Oh, then that is settled, we'll go tonight. . . . (18) Yes, I have already thanked him. . . . (19) Wait, one more invitation. (20) Mr. A— asks us to go to a tennis match this Saturday afternoon. . . . (21) You are free, not engaged, that is good, then we accept his invitation too. (22) Yes, yes, is there anything else? (23) No, nothing more, that's all, good-bye. (24) Thanks awfully, Mr. A—.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. at any rate: (以任何的率計), 無論如何。</p> | <p>popular [pɒp'ʊlə]: 公衆的。——
<i>by popular request</i>: 由於公衆的請求。
[(名詞)]</p> |
| <p>2. movies [mʊv'vɪz]: 電影。
<i>love story</i>: 愛情小說, 愛情故事。</p> | <p>8. tennis [tɛn'ɪs]: 網球。——
<i>tennis match</i>: 網球比賽。</p> |
| <p>3. settle [sɛt'l]: 安身, 安定。——
<i>settle down</i>: 安定。</p> | <p>9. accept [əksəpt']: 接受。[請。
invitation [ɪn'vɪtə'shən]: 邀
player [plɛ'ɔ]: 運動員。</p> |
| <p>5. exceptionally [ɪksəp'shənə-
li, 或把第一個 ə 省去]: 例外地。
<i>the last night</i>: 末一夜。</p> | <p>10. telephone [tɛl'ɪfōn]: 電話; 打
電話。(名詞或云謂詞)</p> |
| <p>6. theater [thɪ'ətə]: 戲院。——
<i>theater manager</i>: 戲院經理。
possibility [pɒs'əbɪlɪ'ti]: 可
能性。
pack [pæk]: 充塞, 擁擠。——
<i>theater packed</i>: 戲院客滿。</p> | <p>12. mistress [mɪs'trɪs]: 主婦。
phone, 或 'phone [fōn]: tele-
phone 之簡。</p> |
| | <p>16. decide [dɪsɪ'd]: 解決。</p> |

講義

(A) 第 1 句的 civilization 指現代的文化,如電燈,摩托車,報紙等等而言。

(B) 第 6 句中的第一個 last night 是“昨天晚上”,第二個 last night 有 the 字冠在前面,是“末一夜”,此下的 the last night 義同。

(C) 第 6 句的 the theater packed = “那戲院被擁擠”,即“客滿”。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 11—15)

1. Words are mere reflections of the reality, and **inflections**, or the changes of word forms, are made to reflect the distinctions in the reality.
2. Three parts of speech in English do not have **inflection**; they are **conjunction**, **preposition**, and **interjection**.
3. Here are the **inflections** which we find in English: **case**, **number**, **gender**, **person**, **degree of comparison**, **tense** and **form of tense**, **voice**, and **mood**.
4. There are three **cases**: the **nominative**, the **possessive**, and the **objective**.
5. There are four **genders**: the **masculine**, the **feminine**, the **neuter**, and the **common genders**.
6. There are two **numbers**: the **singular** and the **plural**.
7. There are three **persons**: the **first**, the **second**, and the **third**.
8. There are three **degrees of comparison**: the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative degrees**.
9. There are three **tenses**: **past**, **present** and **future**; and each **tense** has four **forms**: the **simple**, the **perfect**, the **continuous**, and the **perfect continuous**.
10. There are two **voices**: the **active** and the **passive**.

-
11. There are three moods: the **indicative**, the **imperative**, and the **subjunctive**.
 12. **Nouns** are inflected to show **number**, **gender**, and **case**.
 13. **Pronouns** are inflected to show all these three as well as **person**.
 14. **Adjectives** are inflected to show **number**, **person**, and **degree of comparison**.
 15. **Adverbs** are inflected to show the **degree of comparison**.
 16. **Verbs** are inflected to show the **tense** and **form of tense**, **number**, **person**, **voice**, and **mood**.

 17. Here are a few of the common diseases: malaria, cough, indigestion, stomach-ache, typhoid fever, constipation.
 18. It's good to take some laxative and have a thorough cleaning of your system, once in a while.
 19. If you want me to regard your absence as excused absence, you will have to ask your doctor to write me a note.
 20. Yes, sir, that can be done.
 21. Oh, how I get tired of all these excitements of the modern city life!
 22. But I find them very interesting.
 23. I always prefer sunshine to long shadows, the chirpings of birds and the mooings of cows to the noise of the street.
 24. So do I, but I still find city life very interesting. If you want to go to any place, you can take cars, and you can get almost anything you like. There are movies and shows and games and matches of all kinds.

25. Is he a good football player?
 26. No, he is not, he is a good tennis player.
 27. May I use your telephone? I want to phone to your nephew.
 28. Can you not go to the show with me? I heard that it is a very nice show, the theater was packed last night. It must be exceptionally good.
 29. I find it rather trying to go to the show when the theater is packed.

* * *

LESSON 16

Four Kinds of Pronouns

(1) There are four kinds of **pronouns**: the **interrogative**, the **relative**, the **demonstrative** [dīmōns'trətīv], and the **personal** [pēr'snl] pronouns. (2) We have already learned something about the **interrogative**, **personal**, and **relative pronouns**. (3) We shall study in this lesson the **demonstrative pronouns** and more about the **personal pronouns**.

(4) There are only two **demonstrative pronouns**: *this* and *that*. (5) They point out things without naming them; for instance, when I say "*This is good and that is not good*", I merely point out some things without naming them. (6) That is why they are so called. (7) They have only **inflection** to show their **number**, and their plurals are *these* and *those* respectively.

(8) The **personal pronouns** are used instead of the names of some persons or things. (9) They are inflected to show the **number**, **person**, **gender**, and **case**. (10) The

one who speaks is said to be in the **first person**, the person to whom the **first person** speaks is said to be in the **second person**, while the person *of* or *about* whom the **first person** speaks is said to be in the **third person**. (11) When a word represents *only one object*, it is said to be in the **singular number**, and when it represents *more than one*, it is said to be in the **plural number**. (12) We shall make a table below to show the **number**, **person**, and **gender** of the **personal pronouns**. (13) The letters [let'əz] in the brackets [brāk'its] that follow the **pronouns**--viz. [c], [m], [f], and [n]--show whether the **pronouns** which precede them are in the **common**, **masculine**, **feminine**, or **neuter gender** respectively.

	Singular Number	Plural Number
FIRST PERSON	<i>I</i> [c]	<i>we</i> [c]
SECOND PERSON	<i>you</i> [c]	<i>you</i> [c]
THIRD PERSON	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{he} \text{ [m]} \\ \textit{she} \text{ [f]} \\ \textit{it} \text{ [n]} \end{array} \right.$	<i>they</i> [c]

(14) It will be seen that only a **pronoun** in the **third person singular number** has **gender** to tell whether the real person or object is male, female, or sexless. (15) All the other **personal pronouns** are in the **common gender**, i.e. they may be used no matter whether the real objects are male, female, or sexless.

生 字

1. **demonstrative** [dīmōn'strə-tiv]: 指示的。—*demonstrative*

pronoun: 指示代名詞。

personal [pér'snl]: 屬人的。

- personal pronoun*: 人稱代 []。
11. *letter* [lɛt/ə]: 字母。 [名詞。 14. *object* [ɔb/ʤikt]: 物, 東西。
- brackets* [bræk/ɪts]: 方括弧, 即 15. *no matter*: 無論, 不論。

講 義

(A) 第 1 句的 *the interrogative, the relative, the demonstrative*, 與 *the personal*, 諸形容詞共同形容着承一個 *pronouns* 字。又, 第 12 句的 *of the personal pronouns* 是一個形容詞短語共同形容着 *number, person* 與 *gender* 諸名詞。

(B) *parentheses* 與 *brackets* 同是“括弧”, 在泛指一般的括弧時, 常用 *parentheses*, 但須分別指明時, *parentheses* 是“圓括弧”, 即 (), *brackets* 是“方括弧”, 即 []。

(C) *object* 雖只譯為“物”, 但可以指“人”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	settle	settled	settled
	pack	packed	packed
	show	showed	showed, or shown
	accept	accepted	accepted
	telephone	telephoned	telephoned
	phone	phoned	phoned
	decide	decided	decided

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
theater	theaters	possibility	possibilities
show	shows	movie	movies
invitation	invitations	player	players
telephone	telephones	mistress	mistresses
object	objects	bracket (罕用)	brackets

【造句】 把下列各謂詞用過去連續式各造一句：

- (1) entitle, (2) give, (3) grumble, (4) gurgle,
(5) hide, (6) hope.

LESSON 17

The Conjugation of Verbs: Number and Person

(1) We shall now study how the **number** and **person** affect [əfɛkt/] the **conjugation** of verbs. (2) When a **verb** is **not conjugated**, it is called an **infinitive** [ɪnfɪn'ɪtɪv], and it is usually preceded by *to*, which is called the **sign of infinitive**. (3) When it is **conjugated**, it becomes a **finite** [fɪ'nɪt] **verb**. (4) Here are the **conjugations** of four representative [rɛp'rɪzɛn'tatɪv] verbs to show the influence of **number** and **person**:

Verb "to be"

<i>I am</i>	<i>We are</i>
<i>You are</i>	<i>You are</i>
<i>He is</i> } <i>She is</i> } <i>It is</i> }	<i>They are</i>

Verb "to have"

<i>I have</i>	<i>We have</i>
<i>You 'ave</i>	<i>You have</i>
<i>He has</i> } <i>She has</i> } <i>It has</i> }	<i>They have</i>

Verb "to love"

<i>I love</i>	<i>We love</i>
<i>You love</i>	<i>You love</i>
<i>He loves</i> } <i>She loves</i> } <i>It loves</i> }	<i>They love</i>

Verb "to wish"

<i>I wish</i>	<i>We wish</i>
<i>You wish</i>	<i>You wish</i>
<i>He wishes</i> } <i>She wishes</i> } <i>It wishes</i> }	<i>They wish</i>

(5) It will be seen from the above that all the **three persons** in the **plural number** have the same **verb form**; and this **verb form** is the same as the **infinitive**, except in the case of *verb* "to be." (6) In the case of **singular number**, however, the difference in **person** does make a difference in the **verb form**. (7) In the case of *verb* "to be," there are **three forms** for the **three persons**. (8) In all the other **verbs**, the **first** and the **second persons** have the same form as the **infinitive**, while the **third person** has a different form. (9) *Verb* "to have" changes the **ending** [ɒn/dɪŋ] *ve* into *s*; *verb* "to love" adds *s* to its **ending**; and *verb* "to wish" adds *es* to its **ending**.

(10) This *s*, or *es*, which we add to a **verb** to show that it belongs to the **third person** and **singular number**, is called the **personal ending of the verb**. (11) Here is the rule for adding the **personal ending**, *s* or *es*, to **verbs** of the **third person** and **singular number**:—(12) To a **verb** which ends in *s*, *x*, *ch*, or *sh*, we add *es*, OTHERWISE [ʊðlɪ'əwɪz], we add only *s*. (13) *Verbs* "to do" and "to go" also have *es* for their **personal endings**. (14) Some **verbs** go with out any **personal ending**; for instance, *will*, *shall*, *may*, *might*, *must*, etc.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. affect [ə'fɛkt/]: 影響。</p> <p>2. infinitive [ɪnɪfɪ'tɪv]: 無定限的,無限式云謂詞。(注意作第二義解時不可加 <i>verb</i> 一字)</p> <p>sign [saɪn]: 記號。——<i>sign of infinitive</i>: 無限式云謂詞的記號。</p> <p>3. finite [fɪ'nɪtɪv]: 有定限的。——</p> | <p><i>finite verb</i>: 有限式云謂詞。</p> <p>4. representative [rɛp'rɪzɛntətɪv]: 代表的,很是爲代表的。</p> <p>9. ending [ɛn'dɪŋ]: 結尾,字末。</p> <p>10. personal ending: 人稱字末。</p> <p>12. otherwise [ʊðlɪ'əwɪz]: 否則, 反是。</p> |
|--|---|

講 義

(A) 云謂詞字形的變化是受數目,人稱,時制等等的影響或可說被限定,所以字形已經變化的云謂詞叫有限式云謂詞,字形未經變化的云謂詞叫無限式云謂詞。

(B) 注意:“有限式云謂詞”= finite verb; “無限式云謂詞”= infinitive, 非 infinitive verb。

練 習

【背誦】 現在時制 過去時制 過去分詞
affect affected affected

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
sign	signs	infinitive	infinitives
ending	endings	finite verb	finite verbs

【造句】 云謂詞都用將來連續式,主語三人稱都用:

- (1) incline, (2) introduce, (3) notice, (4) observe,
(5) omit.

LESSON 18

The Inflection of Nouns: Number

(1) We said that **nouns are not inflected** to indicate the **person**; this is so, because all **nouns** are in the **third person**, that is, they all denote the **person we speak of**.

(2) However, when a noun is used in **apposition with a personal pronoun in the first or second person**, it is in the **same person as the pronoun**.

(3) Nouns are in the singular number until we add something to make them plural. (4) We form the plurals of nouns in the following ways:

- (a) We add *s* to the singular noun, except in the following cases:
- (b) When a noun ends in *s*, *x*, *ch*, or *sh*, we add *es*;
- (c) When a noun ends in *y*, and the *y* is preceded by a consonant [kǒn'sonant] (i.e. any letter except *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, and *u*), we change *y* into *i*, and then add *es*; but when the noun ends in *y* and the *y* is preceded by a vowel [vow'ol] (that is, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, or *u*), we simply add *s* to it;
- (d) When a noun ends in *j* or *fe*, we sometimes change the *f* or *fe* into *ve* and then add *s*, and sometimes simply add *s*;
- (e) When a noun ends in *o*, we sometimes add *s* and sometimes add *es*; and
- (f) The irregular way of forming the plurals.

(5) Here is a table of the examples of how we form plurals out of singular nouns.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
(a) bird, leg, house, cat;	birds, legs, houses, cats.
(b) mass, fox, church, wish;	masses, foxes, churches, wishes.
(c) boy, monkey, baby, story;	boys, monkeys, babies, stories.
(d) safe, roof, wife, leaf;	safes, roofs, wives, leaves.
(e) bamboo, curio , hero, potato;	bamboos, curios , heroes, potatoes.
(f) ox, tooth, man;	oxen, teeth, men.

(6) The **number and person of a noun** affect the **conjugation of a verb** in the same way as the **person and number of a pronoun**.

生 字

4. **plural** [pluor'əl]: 複數式; 複數式的字。
 4c. **consonant** [kɔn'sonənt]: 輔音。
vowel [vow'əl]: 元音。 [音。
 5b. **mass** [mäs]: 一堆(的東西)。
 5d. **safe** [sāf]: 錢櫃, 保險箱。
 5e. **curio** [kür'io]: 古玩。
 6. *in the same way as*: 與~同樣。

講 義

- (A) **plural** 平常是個形容詞, 但亦可當名詞用, 只須在其前加一 **the** 字。
 (B) 如我們在第一冊中學過, 元音不只 a, e, i, o, u, 輔音也不只 a, e, i, o, u 以外的字母所代表的; 不過在此處所講的乃是字母的元音與輔音。
 (C) 第 6 句實在大可不必講, 因為云謂詞字形的變化只依單數複數與人稱之不同而變, 初不問其主語之爲名詞或代名詞也。

練 習

【背誦】	單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
	plural	plurals	consonant	consonants
	vowel	vowels	mass	masses
	safe	safes	curio	curios

【造句】 云謂詞用現在連續式, 主語三人稱都用:

- (1) invite, (2) pave, (3) produce, (4) promise,
 (5) refer, (6) release, (7) rub, (8) save.

LESSON 19

How Cronus Overthrew Uranus

(1) According to the Greeks, there was chaos [kā'ōs] in the beginning. (2) From the chaos sprang [spræŋg]

Ge [jē], who was the personification [pêrsǒn/'ifīkā'shən] of earth [êrth]. (3) She bore [bôr] two sons, Uranus [ūr'ənos], who was the personification of heaven, and Pontus [pǒn'təs], who was the personification of sea.

(4) By Uranus she bore thirteen unusually [ŭnū'-shōōlī] big and strong children, known as the Titans [tī'tənz]. (5) Uranus did not like them and imprisoned [īmprīz'nd] them in Tartarus [tār'tərəs], but Ge made a big sickle [sīk'l] for their youngest son, Cronus [krō'nəs]. (6) With the sickle Cronus killed Uranus, whose blood [blūd] dropped to the earth, and whose limbs [līnz] dropped to the sea. (7) Out of these drops [drōps] of his blood sprang several Gigantes [jīgān'tīs] or giants [jī'ənts], and out of the foams [fōmz] around his limbs sprang Aphrodite [ăf'rōdī'tī], or Venus [vē'nəs], the goddess of love and beauty.

(8) Cronus then took the place of Uranus as the ruler [rōō'lə] of heaven and earth. (9) He married his sister, Rhea [rīə], and they bore many children. (10) Their children, too, revolted [rīvō'ltīd] against him.

11. What is chaos?
12. Chaos is a condition in which matter is without form.
13. And what is personification?
14. Personification is the act of regarding some lifeless object as a person.
15. I heard the other day some one speaking of a man as a Titan, how is that?
16. Because the Titans were strong and powerful [pov'ə-fōōl], we sometimes compare a strong and powerful man to a Titan.

17. And what is a giant?
18. A giant is also a very big and strong man, like the Titans, but the name Titans is applied to only the children of Ge and Uranus.
19. What would a Chinese of the old school [skōōl] think of a son who revolted against his father and dethroned [dīthrō'nd] him?
20. A most terrible person, of course.
21. And what do you think of Cronus revolting against his father and his sons revolting against him?
22. A most interesting story.

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. chaos [kā'ōs, 或 kē'ōs]: 渾沌。 2. spring [sprɪŋ]: 跳。(過去時制 sprang [sprɪŋ], 過去分詞 sprung [sprɪŋ]) personification [pɛr'sɒn/ɪfɪ-kə'shən]: 擬人法, 人格化。 earth [ɛrθ]: 大地, 地球; 泥土。 3. bear [bɛr]: 生。(過去時制 bore [bɔr], 過去分詞 born [bɔrn]) 4. unusually [ʌn'ju:ʒəli, ə 音不讀亦可]: 非常地。 strong [strɒŋ]: 強壯。 Titan [tɪ'tɒn]: 巨大的神;(借喻)巨大有力的人或物。 禁。 5. imprison [ɪm'prɪz'n]: 下獄, 拘 Tartarus [tɑr'tɔ:əs]: 地獄與 | <p>下的地方。</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> sickle [sɪk'l]: 鐮刀。 6. blood [blʊd]: 血。 limb [lɪm]: 手或足。—<i>the limbs</i>: 手足, 四肢。 7. drop [drɒp]: 點(點滴的點)。 giant [dʒi'ənt]: 巨人。 foam [fəʊm]: 浪花, 泡沫 8. ruler [ru:lə]: 管理者, 君王。 10. revolt [rɪvɔlt]: 造反。 16. powerful [paʊ'əfʊl, paʊr'-, 或 -l]: 有力的, 有權力的。 19. school [skōōl]: 學校;(轉為)派別。—<i>of the old school</i>: 屬於舊派的。 君)。 dethrone [dīthrō'n]: 廢(指廢 |
|--|--|

神 祇 名

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 2. Ge [jē]. 3. Uranus [ʊr'ənəs, 或 ʊr'ənūs]. Pontus [pɒn'təs]. 4. Titan [tɪ'tɒn]. 5. Cronus [krɒ'nɔ:s]. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 7. Gigantes [dʒɪgəntɪs]. Aphrodite [ə'frɔdɪ'ti]. Venus [vɛ'nəs]. 9. Rhea [riə]. |
|---|--|

講義

(A) beginning 是 begin 的現在分詞當名詞用。in the beginning 平常等於“在開始之時”，但在第 1 句中可作“太初之時”解。

(B) 注意: bear 作“生產”解釋時，過去分詞是 born, 非 borne。又“與誰生”的“與”字是用 by 一字。

(C) 20 句 a most terrible person 與第 19 句 a most interesting story 內中的 most 實等於 very 而意義較強。此字像這種的用法，不很平常，但也非罕見。

練習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	springs	sprang	sprung [sprüŋg]
	bears	bore	born
	imprisons	imprisoned	imprisoned
	revolts	revolted	revolted
	dethrones	dethroned	dethroned

單數	複數	單數	複數
school	schools	ruler	rulers
chaos	——	limb	limbs
earth	earths (作“泥土” 解時始有複數)	personification	per-onifications (罕用)

【造句】 試以下列諸字各造一複雜句:

(1) if, (2) when, (3) who, (4) that, (5) which.

LESSON 20

How Zeus Overthrew Cronus

(1) It was Zeus, also the youngest son, who led the rebellion [rībél/yon] against Cronus. (2) The war [wōr] between the Titans and Zeus' brothers continued [kən-tīn'ūd] for ten years.

(3) Now, Cronus had imprisoned several Cyclopes [sɪklə'pɛz], also Titans, in Tartarus, below the hell [hɛl]. (4) Zeus released [rɪlɛ'st] them and obtained from them the thunderbolts [θʌn'dəbɔlts], which he hurled [hɜːld] against the Titans. (5) Zeus also released three hundred-armed Gigantes and they helped him to fight against the Titans. (6) So the Titans were defeated [dɪfɛ'tɪd] and Cronus was dethroned.

(7) According to the Romans, when he was dethroned, Cronus went to Italy, where he became identified with Saturn, the Roman god of agriculture. (8) He always carried his sickle with him, and is often spoken of as Father Time.

(9) Zeus then turned against Ge, and dethroned her. (10) All the Titans were imprisoned in Tartarus, and Zeus became the supreme [sʊprɛ'm] ruler of gods and mankind [mɒŋkɪ'nd] according to the Greeks.

(11) There is a story that Cronus swallowed [swɔl'dɔ] his children right after their births [bɪθs]. (12) However, he was made to bring up the children whom he had swallowed by the cunning [kʌn'ɪŋ] Ge. (13) But in the case of Zeus, Rhea gave him a stone [stɒn] wrapped [rɒpt] in cloth; and he swallowed it, believing it to be his child!

14. Who were the Cyclopes?
15. They were one-eyed Titans, and their eyes were round and at the foreheads.
16. Do you think thunderbolts can be hurled?
17. Of course not, that was only a myth.
18. Do you think that Uranus' imprisoning the Titans and Cronus' swallowing his children have something to do with their being dethroned?

19. Yes, it may, but we don't know.
 20. Go first advised Cronus to revolt against Uranus, and then Zeus against Cronus, and she herself was de-throned by Zeus, what do you think of her?
 21. It served her right.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. rebellion [rībɪl'jən]: 造反, 反 | 9. <i>turn against</i> : 反對, 攻擊。 |
| 2. war [wɔː]: 戰爭。 [叛。 | 10. supreme [sūprə'm]: 最高的, 無 |
| continue [kəntɪ'nju]: 繼續。 | 上的。 |
| 3. Cyclopes [sɪklɒ'pɛz]: 獨目的 | mankind [mʌnki'nd]: 人類。 |
| 巨人。(注意單數為 Cyclops, 讀 | 11. swallow [swɒl'ɔː]: 吞。 |
| [sɪ'klɒps]) | <i>right after</i> ~: ~之後立刻。 |
| hell [hɛl]: 地獄。 | birth [bɜːθ]: 生產。 |
| 4. release [rɪ'liːs]: 釋放。 | 12. <i>bring up</i> : 養活。 |
| thunderbolt [θʌn'dəbɔːlt]: | cunning [kʌn'ɪŋ]: 狡猾的。 |
| hurl [hɜːl]: 擲。 [雷電。 | 13. stone [stɒn]: 石頭。 |
| 6. defeat [dɪ'fiːt]: 打敗, 擊敗。 | wrap [rʌp]: 包裹。 |
| 8. <i>is spoken of as</i> : (被說是) 說是, | 18. <i>have something to do with</i> ~: |
| <i>Father Time</i> : 同時的神。 | 與~有關係。 |

講 義

(A) 以前我們說過 *between* 一字只指“在二人或二物之間”, 在本課第 2 句, 雖然指許多人之間, 但一許多人卻是分成兩方面的, 所以仍可當作二者之間。

(B) 第 5 句的 *hundred-armed* 與第 15 句的 *one-eyed* 一類的構造頗常見。其意義等於“百臂(的)”與“獨眼(的)”。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 16—20):

1. There are four kinds of **pronouns**: the **interrogative**, the **relative**, the **demonstrative**, and the **personal pronouns**.

2. The **demonstrative pronouns** point out things without naming them, they are *this* and *that*.
3. They are inflected only to show the **number**, their plurals are *these* and *those*.
4. **Personal pronouns** are used instead of the names of some persons or things, and they are inflected to show the **gender, number, person, and case**.
5. The speaker is in the **first person**, the listener is in the **second person**, and the one about whom the **first person** speaks is in the **third person**.
6. When a **noun** or a **pronoun** indicates *one* object, it is singular; and when it indicates *more than one*, it is plural.
7. A **noun** or **pronoun** denoting a *male* is in the **masculine gender**, that denoting a *female* is in the **feminine gender**, that denoting a *sexless object* is in the **neuter gender**, and that which may be used to denote a *male, female, or sexless object* is in the **common gender**.
8. A **noun** is in the **third person**, except when it is *in apposition with a pronoun* of the **first** or **second person**.
9. A **noun** is in the **singular number** until we add something to it to make it **plural**.
10. The rules for forming **plural nouns** can be found on page 56.
11. The result of the influence of **person** and **number** in the **verb** is the **personal ending, s or es**, of the **third person singular number**.
12. When a **verb** ends in *s, x, ch, or sh*, we add *es*, otherwise we add only *s*, for the **personal ending**.
13. According to the Greeks, there was in the beginning

- chaos, and out of this chaos sprang Ge, the personification of earth, who gave birth to Uranus, the personification of heaven, and Pontus, the personification of sea.
14. By Uranus, Ge bore the thirteen Titans, whom Uranus imprisoned in Tartarus, below the hell.
 15. Ge made a big sickle for their youngest son Cronus, who killed Uranus with that sickle.
 16. Uranus' blood dropped to the earth and gave birth to the Gigantes, or giants, and his limbs dropped to the sea, and out of the foams around his limbs sprang Aphrodite, the goddess of love and beauty, whom the Romans called Venus.
 17. Cronus married Rhea, and they gave birth to many sons and daughters, whom he swallowed right after their births.
 18. But he was made to bring them up by Ge, and in the case of Zeus, their youngest son, Rhea gave him a stone wrapped in cloth, which he swallowed, believing it to be his son!
 19. When grown up, Zeus led the rebellion against Cronus, who was defeated when Zeus released the Cyclopes and the Gigantes, imprisoned by Cronus, and obtained from the Cyclopes the thunderbolts, which he hurled against the Titans.
 20. Thus Zeus became the supreme ruler of heaven and earth, gods and mankind; and Cronus carrying with him his sickle, went to Italy, where he became the god of agriculture and is now spoken of as **Father Time**.

LESSON 21

Zeus on Mount Olympus

(1) Zeus then divided the universe [ū'nīvērs] with his brothers by lot [lōt]. (2) Zeus ruled over the heaven, Poseidon [pōsi'dən], over the sea, and Hades [hā'dēz], over the hell, while the earth was to remain [rīmā'n] a common property [prōp'ətī] to them all.

(3) Zeus lived in North Greece on the top of Mount Olympus [mownt ōlīm'pōs], in the clouds, for the top of Olympus is always covered with snow and clouds. (4) It was here, too, that the gods held [hēld] their councils [kow'nslz]. (5) The ancient Greeks went there every four years to hold [hōld] a big celebration [sēl'ibrā'shən] in honour of the Olympian [ōlīm'pīən] gods. (6) The celebration consisted of literary [lī'rərī], musical [mū'zīkl], and athletic [āthlēt'īk] competitions [kōm'pītīsh'ənz]. (7) This is why we call now our “遠東運動會” the Far Eastern [ō'stən] Olympic [ōlīm'pīk] Games.

(8) We have said that the Romans identified their gods with those of the Greeks. (9) Although there remain some differences between the Roman and the Greek gods, yet such differences are not important at all, and we need not pay any attention to them. (10) We shall give below the Roman equivalents [īkwīv'olents] of the Greek gods that we have studied so far.

(11) Ge for the Romans was Tellus [tēl'əs], while Cronus was identified with Saturn as we have seen. (12) The Romans had no equivalents for Uranus and Pontus.

(13) The Roman Zeus was Jupiter [jōō'pītō] or Jove [jōv], and Jupiter's wife was Juno [jōō'nō] as Zeus' was

Hera. (14) When people swear [swār] in English, they very often swear by Jupiter, "By Jove, . . ." they would say.

(15) The Roman god of sea was Neptune [nēp'tūn].

(16) The name of the ruler of hell, Hades, has become another name for hell, so people usually call him Pluto [plōō'tō]. (17) The ancient Romans called him Dis [dīs] or Orcus [ōr'kəs].

(18) Aphrodite was, in the Roman mythology, Venus.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. universe [ū'nīvərs]: 宇宙。
lot [lōt]: 命運。——<i>by lot</i>: (由命運)抽籤。</p> | <p>6 literary [lī'torri, 或 lī'torri]: 文學的。
musical [mū'zīk]: 音樂的。
athletic [athlēt'īk]: 運動的。
competition [kōm'pī'ī h'ōn]: 比賽。</p> |
| <p>2. remain [rīmā'n]: 留存, 留爲。
common [kōm'on]: 共同的。
property [prōp'ōti]: 產業。</p> | <p>7 eastern [e'stən]: 東方的。
Olympic [ōlīm'pīk]: 屬於 Olympus 所開的運動會的。</p> |
| <p>3. mount [məunt]: 山。
Olympus [ōlīm'pəs]: 山名。</p> | <p>10. equivalent [īkwīv'ələnt]: 相等的物。</p> |
| <p>4. held [hēld]: hold 之過去時制。
council [kōw'nsī]: 會議。</p> | <p>14. swear [swār]: 立誓。(過去時制 swore [swōr], 過去分詞 sworn [swōrn]) 「方程式。By Jove: 指 Jove 發誓時的一種</p> |
| <p>5. hold [hōld]: 執, 持, 舉行, 開(會)。
celebration [sēl'ibrā'shən]: 慶祝會。
Olympian [ōlīm'pīən]: 屬於 Olympus 的。</p> | |

神 祇 名

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>2. Poseidon [pōsī'dən].
Hades [hā'dēz].</p> | <p>Juno [jōō'nō].</p> |
| <p>11. Tellus [tēl'əs].</p> | <p>15. Neptune [nēp'tūn].</p> |
| <p>13. Jupiter [jōō'pītə].
Jove [jōv].</p> | <p>16. Pluto [plōō'tō].
17. Dis [dīs].
Orcus [ōr'kəs]</p> |

講 義

(A) hold 作“開會”解釋時須與“會”字(如 council, celebration, meeting 等)合用。

(B) 注意: Olympian 是指屬於 Mount Olympus 的,例如 Olympian gods, Olympic 則幾乎專指在 Olympus 所開的或同樣的比賽的,如 Olympic games。

(C) equivalent 指人或神時乃指該人或神所佔的位置;平常指物。

(D) 如“By Jove . . .”這一類誓言,並不是真正地發誓時用的,乃一種口頭語。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	continue	continued	continued
	swallow	swallowed	swallowed
	wrap	wrapped	wrapped
	remain	remained	remained
	hold	held	held
	swear	swore [swor̄]	sworn [sworn̄]

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
rebellion	rebellions	game	games
thunderbolt	thunderbolts	war	wars
stone	stones	birth	births [-ths]
lot	lots	universe	universes(罕用)
council	councils	property	properties
competition	competitions	celebration	celebrations
mount	mounts	equivalent	equivalents

【作文】用英文敘述 Zeus 與 Cronus 之爭天位,交長不得過十句。

LESSON 22

Other Greek and Roman Gods and
Goddesses

(1) Zeus and other eleven gods and goddesses formed the twelve great gods of Olympus. (2) There was Hera, his wife, of course, and his brother Poseidon, too. (3) But his brother, Hades, was not among them. (4) Both Aphrodite and Ares were there too.

(5) There was Apollo [əpɒl'ō], the sun-god [sʌn'gɔd], or rather the god of enlightenment [ɪnlɪ'tnənt]. (6) Hermes [hɛr'mɛz] was the messenger of the gods, and he had winged [wɪŋgd] sandals [sʌn'dlɪz]. (7) He was the god of sleep and dreams [drɪmz] and of good luck [lʊk]. (8) Then there was Hephaestus [hɪfɛ'stɔs], god of fire and the metal [mɛtəl] worker among the gods.

(9) Among the goddesses, there was Athena [əθɪ'nə], the queen of the air, who always remained a virgin [vɛr'jɪn]. (10) She was the goddess of war, but she was also a patroness [pə'trɒnɪs] of useful [u'sfʊl] arts. (11) Artemis [ɑr'tɪmɪs] was Apollo's sister and a female Apollo. (12) Demeter [dɪmɛ'tɔ] was the protectress [prɒtɛk'trɪs] of agriculture and of all the fruits on earth. (13) Hestia [hɛsh'ɪə] was the goddess of hearth [hɑrθ] and domestic [dɒmɛ'stɪk] life.

(14) So here are the six gods and six goddesses of Olympus. (15) Some of them we shall study again later on. (16) We shall, however, give below the Roman names as well as the Greek names of these twelve Olympian gods and goddesses.

(D) a title de Apollo 的 Apollo 是指他的職權而言。

(E) hearth 是在壁中的火爐，此種火爐，常以地板爲爐林。此字常用以指家庭。

練 習

【背誦】

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
sun-god	sun-gods (罕用)	sandal	sandals
patroness	patronesses	dream	dreams
enlightenment	——	metal	metals
protectress	protectresses	luck	lucks
hearth	hearths [ths 或 thz]	virgin	virgins

【解答】 用英文答覆下列各問：

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) What is a virgin? | (3) What is a pygmy? |
| (2) What is a giant? | (4) What is a conductor? |

LESSON 23

Possessive Adjectives and Possessive Pronouns

(1) We shall study the case of personal pronouns in this lesson. (2) The following is a table of the three cases of these personal pronouns.

NOMINATIVE CASE:	<i>I you he she it</i>	<i>we you they</i>
POSSESSIVE CASE:	<i>my your his her its</i>	<i>our your their</i>
OBJECTIVE CASE:	<i>me you him her it</i>	<i>us you them</i>

(3) Possessive pronouns are, as we have said before, adjectives in use, and are called possessive adjectives. (4)

However, there are genuine [jǐn'ūn] **possessive pronouns**.

(5) Let us illustrate [i'əstrāt].

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE

POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| (6) He is my friend. | (7) He is a friend of <i>mine</i> . |
| (8) He is not your friend. | (9) He is not a friend of <i>yours</i> . |
| (10) That is his book. | (11) That book is <i>his</i> . |
| (12) This is her can [kǎn]. | (13) This can is <i>hers</i> [hɛrz]. |
| (14) That is its cover [kùvə]. | (15) That cover is <i>its</i> . |
| (16) This is our profit [prɔ:fɪt]. | (17) The profit is not <i>ours</i> . |
| (18) It is not their profit. | (19) The profit is not <i>theirs</i> . |

(20) **Possessive adjectives** are followed by **nouns** but **genuine possessive pronouns** are NOT. (21) *His* and *its* have the same form whether they are used as **possessive adjectives** or as **possessive pronouns**, *my* of the **possessive adjective** becomes *mine* in the **possessive pronoun**; all the rest add *s* to form **possessive pronouns** from **possessive adjectives**.

生 字

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 4. genuine [jǐn'ūn]: 真的, 非假的, 純正的。 | 12. can [kǎn]: 罐頭; 似罐頭的空盒。 |
| 5. illustrate [i'əstrāt]: 舉例說明, 例證。 | 13. hers [hɛrz]: 她的。 |
| | 14. cover [kùvə]: 蓋。(名詞) |
| | 15. profit [prɔ:fɪt]: 得利, 贏餘。 |

講 義

(A) *his* 與 *its* 在第 11, 15 句的用法, 以前雖沒有談過, 但是在字形、字音、字義上既沒有差別, 所以“生字”中不重見。

(B) 如前面說過, *can* 與 *tin* 同作“罐頭, 馬口鐵的盒子”解, 但指“罐頭”時, 有這個差別: 美國人喜用 *can* 字, 英國人喜用 *tin* 字。

(C) 第四句的 *my* of the possessive adjective 的 *of* 指稱 *mine* in the possessive pronoun 的 *in* 同義, 可譯為: “所有格形容詞中的 *my*”, “所有格代名詞中的 *mine*”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	illustrate	illustrated	illustrated
	單 數 複 數	單 數 複 數	單 數 複 數
	cover covers	profit profits	can cans

【造句】 主語都用第三人稱單數:

- (1) pay attention to (3) agree upon (5) beg for life
 (2) bear the brunt (4) as long as (6) by and by

LESSON 24

Cases of Pronouns

(1) We have seen how **pronouns** are inflected to show differences in **number, person, gender, and case**. (2) We shall study, in this lesson, the **cases of nouns**.

(3) We have already seen that it makes no difference as to the word form whether a **noun** is in the **nominative or objective case**. (4) However, a **noun** in the **possessive case** is different from the other two **cases** in form. (5) Let us take three representative examples. (6) **The dog bit off the cat's tail**. (7) **The birds' nests are beneath [bɪnə'th] the eaves [ēvz] of the house**. (8) In the first example *cat's* is a **noun** in the **possessive case**, it shows that the cat is the possessor [pəzə's/ə] or owner of the tail. (9) In the next sentence we have two examples of **nouns** in the **possessive**

case, *birds'* and *of the house, birds'* shows that the nests belong to the birds, while *of the house* shows that the caves belong to the house.

(10) We may now draw conclusions about the formation [fôrmû'shon] of the possessives. (11) Lifeless objects form their possessives by putting an *of* before it to form a prepositional phrase, called *of-phrase*, to show the ownership or possession [pôzesh'yon]. (12) Nouns denoting living things form their possessives in two ways: (A) by adding apostrophe *s* [apô's'trôfî 's] 's', when they do not end in *s*; and (B) by adding only an apostrophe ('), when they end in *s*.

(13) Possessive nouns as used in the above examples are adjectives in use, and are also called possessive adjectives. (14) But these possessive adjectives, without changing their forms, may be used as genuine possessive nouns, thus:

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

- (15) This is the *cat's* plate.
(17) These are *birds'* eggs.

POSSESSIVE NOUNS

- (16) This plate is the *cat's*.
(18) These eggs are *birds'*.

生 字

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 3. <i>as to</i> [æ'tu]: 至於,關於。 | 結論,斷論 —— draw conclusion: |
| 7. <i>beneath</i> [bî'nî'sh]: 在~之下。 | 斷論,但論理取得斷案。—— (或) |
| <i>caves</i> [éivz]: 洞。 | formation (fôrmâ'shon): 組 |
| 8. <i>possessor</i> [pôs'sô:]: 所有者, | of-phrase: 含有of字的短語。 |
| 主權人。 | possession [pôs'sesh'yon]: 所有 |
| 10. <i>draw</i> [drôw]: 取,引取。 | 權。 |
| <i>conclusion</i> [kônklû'zhon]: | 12. <i>apostrophe</i> [apô's'trô:]: 省字 |

講 義

- (A) 第 C 第 7 兩句之中有三個所有格的例,所以第 5 句中說三個例。
(B) *caves* 從前當單數用,但現在當複數用,無單數。
(C) *draw conclusion* 是一個成語, *conclusion* 常與別的去謂詞連用。

練 習

【背誦】	單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
	—	caves	possessor	possessors
	conclusion	conclusions	formation	formations
	possession	possessions	case	cases

【造句】 主語都用第三人稱單數：

- | | |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| (1) ever since | (4) in place of |
| (2) from now on | (5) mean by |
| (3) generally speaking | |

【解答】 用英文答覆：

What are the three ways to form the possessive case of nouns?

LESSON 25

“What are Little Boys Made of?”

1. What are little boys made of? (1)
- What are little boys made of? (2)
- Frogs [frɒgz] and snails [snaɪlz] and puppy dogs' (3)
- [pʊpi dɒgz] tails;
- That's what little boys are made of. (4)
2. What are little girls made of? (5)
- What are little girls made of? (6)
- Sugar and spice [spɪs] and all that's nice; (7)
- That's what little girls are made of. (8)

3. What are young men made of? (9)
 What are young men made of? (10)
 Sighs [sɪz] and leers [lɪəz] and crocodiles' tears (11)
 [krək'ɒdɪlz tɪəz];
 That's what young men are made of. (12)
4. What are young women made of? (13)
 What are young women made of? (14)
 Ribbons [rɪb'ɒnz] and laces and sweet [swɛt] (15)
 pretty faces;
 That's what young women are made of. (16)

生 字

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 3. frog [frɒg]: 蛙。 | crocodile [krək'ɒdɪl]: 鱷魚。 |
| snail [sneɪ]: 蝸牛。 | tear [tɪə]: 眼淚—— <i>crocodile's</i> |
| puppy [pʊpɪ]: 小狗。 | <i>tears</i> : 佯笑的眼。 |
| 7. spice [spɪs]: 香料。 | 10. ribbon [rɪb'ɒn]: 絲帶。 |
| 11. sigh [saɪ]: 嘆息。 | sweet [swɛt]: 甜蜜的; (形容顏 |
| leer [lɪə]: 斜視, 瞞目而視。 | 面時) 豔麗, 姣媚。 |

講 義

(A) What are little boys made of? 的 what 是 made of 的賓語, 如果是平常的答覆便須說: Little boys are made of frogs, snails and puppy dogs' tails.

(B) puppy 與 dog 重複了, 這是兒童的用語。

(C) that's 的 that 是上一行的所說的東西, 照理好像應該用複數, 但在英文中有時大可不必這樣斤斤於文法, 只意思為主。又注意, 如果嚴格地照字義講, 不應用 that, 應該用 this, 因為所指的東西與本字很相近; 但是在這種情形中用 that 是比用 this is 的時候多。

(D) 佯笑的眼, 說是鱷魚的眼, 因為在西方有這個傳說, 說鱷魚喫人或物時, 一面喫一面笑。

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 21--25)

1. Zeus then divided the universe with his brothers by lot, Zeus ruling over the heaven; Poseidon, over the sea; and Hades, over the hell.
2. Zeus and eleven other gods and goddesses lived on the top of Mount Olympus, North Greece. Both the Greek and the Roman names of these twelve great Olympian gods are given at the end of Lesson 22.
3. The ancient Greeks went to Olympus every four years to hold a big celebration in honour of their gods.
4. These celebrations consisted of literary, musical, and athletic competitions.
5. When a **noun** or **pronoun** is the **subject** of a **verb**, it is in the **nominative case**; when it is the **object** of a **verb** or a **preposition**, it is in the **objective case**; and when it is the **possessor** of some object, it is in the **possessive case**.
6. A table of the three cases of **personal pronouns** are given in Lesson 23.
7. The **possessive case** of a **noun** may be formed in one of the three ways: when the **noun** denotes a lifeless object, an *of-phrase* is formed to serve as the **possessive case**; when the **noun** denotes a living object and ends in *s*, it is formed by adding an **apostrophe** (**'**); and when the **noun** denotes a living object and does not end in *s*, it is formed by adding apostrophe *s* (**'s**).
8. **Nouns** or **pronouns** in the **possessive case** are really **possessive adjectives**, for they are **adjectives** in use.
9. When they are not followed by other **nouns** they are **genuine possessive pronouns** and **nouns**.
10. **Genuine possessive nouns** and **possessive adjectives** from

nouns have the same form, but here is a table of the possessive adjectives from pronouns and the genuine possessive pronouns:

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

my, your, his, her, its, our, their.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs.

11. Little boys like to play with "frogs and snails and puppy dog's tails", that is the reason for saying they are made of them; and the girls are sweet and nice, that is the reason for saying that they are made of "sugar and spice and all that is nice".
12. Do you think young men are made of "sighs and leers and crocodiles' tears", and young women, of "ribbons and laces and sweet pretty faces"?

* * *

LESSON 26

Tsu-Yi's Letter to His Brother

TIENTSIN,
April 12, 19.....

DEAR BROTHER

(1) Perhaps you will be surprised [səprī'zɪd] to find me writing you in English. (2) But here it is, my first English letter. (3) I have been taking the Kaiming Correspondence [kǎi'ispōn'dəns] Course, that is where I learn my English. (4) Third brother helps me, of course, but in the draft [draɪft] of this letter he made only two grammatical corrections [kə'rek'shənz].

(5) Third brother is getting on fine, but he is always busy. (6) As for myself, I am no longer the lazy boy. (7) I work hard and study hard, for I mean to get promotions. (8) Indeed, I have got one already, for my salary was, by the end of last month, increased by two dollars. (9) If I did not write you earlier, it was because I have been awfully busy last week answering the questions of my correspondence course.

(10) I must tell you something about fourth uncle. (11) He has been sick for nine days and fourth aunt has just come back. (12) No doctor knows what the trouble is, and he is not getting better. (13) Let us hope it is nothing serious [sɛr'ɪəs].

(14) Our sister in the school here is getting fatter [fāt'ə] and fatter every day, though she doesn't like it

(15) Let me stop here so that I may study.

(16) Just one more thing. (17) There are two books that I want to get, and I am sure you will get them for me. (18) You will find the names of these two books on another sheet of paper.

Your loving brother,
T'su-yi

生 字

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1 | surprise [ə'prɪz]: 使駭異。 | correction [kɔ'rek'shən]: 改正。 |
| 3 | correspondence [kɔr'ɪspɒn'dəns]: 通信。 | 10. fourth uncle: 四叔, 四伯, 或四姑丈, 姨丈, 舅父等均通用。 |
| | course [kɔrs, kɔ:rs]: 程序; (轉爲) 課程。——correspondence course: 函授的課程。 | 13. serious [sɛr'ɪəs 或 sɔ'rɪəs]: 嚴重的, 重要的。 |
| 4 | third brother: 三哥 (或三弟)。 | 14. fat [fæt]: 肥胖。——getting fatter and fatter: 越長越胖。 |
| | draft [draɪt]: 草稿。 | |

講 義

(A) 注意：這封信的標頭沒有街名與門牌號數，這是因為兄弟間已熟知彼此的住址，故不必寫出；在相熟的朋友互相知道住址的，也只寫域名就可以了。

(B) 第 1 句 *you will be surprised* (你會被使駭異) 實等於我們的“你會覺得奇怪”。

(C) 同句 *to find me writing you in English* = *to find that I am writing you in English*

(D) 注意：“用英文寫” = *write in English*.

(E) 注意：“增加二元” = *was increased by two dollars*.

(F) 第 9 句實等於“我不是臨寫信給你的是因為～”。課文中的是一種轉婉轉的說法。

(G) *getting fatter and fatter every day* 實等於 *getting fatter every day*，不過前一種的說法似乎較近於日常的習語。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	surprise	surprised	surprised

原 級	較 級	最 級
fat	fatter	fattest [-tist]

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
frog	frogs	snails	snails
puppy	puppies	spice	spices
sigh	sighs	leer	leers
crocodile	crocodiles	tear	tears
ribbon	ribbons	correction	corrections
course	courses	correspondence	correspondences
draft	drafts		(罕用)

【作文】用英文敘述 *Cat's-paw* 的故事，文長不得過十句。

LESSON 27

His Brother's Reply

SHANGHAI,

April 19, 194_____.

DEAR BROTHER,

(1) Your last letter came to me, indeed, as a surprise [səprɪ'z]. (2) I have learnt from third brother that you have been studying in the Kaiming Correspondence School, and making rapid progress [ræp'ɪd prō'grɛs] in English. (3) But I didn't know that you can write so well. (4) However, don't let this praise [prāz] spoil [spoil] you. (5) If you have made a good start [stɑ:t], that is all the more reason why you should do your best from now on.

(6) I have also learnt from third brother that you have changed a good deal. (7) And I am glad to hear that you got a promotion last month. (8) I do urge you to continue your study; and when you have finished the course you are taking now, if you feel like to continue your study, I may consult [kənsʌlt] third brother and let you go to school again. (9) But everything depends [dɪpɛndz] on you yourself. (10) We will give you only so much help as you prove [pru:v] yourself to deserve [dɪzɛr'v] it. (11) So work hard and study hard, and you need not worry about your future [fju:'tʃə].

(12) I am sending you the two books you asked me to get for you, under separate cover [kʌv'ə] by book post. (13) Please let me know if you are really interested in electricity [ɪlɛktrɪs'ɪtɪ], or you want just to know something about it. (14) If you want to get some general idea [ɪdɪ'ə] about the subject [sʌb'jɛkt], then these two

books will, I believe, be enough. (15) If, however, you really wish to take it up seriously [sǒ' rǎoslì], then let me know, and I will send you more books from time to time.

(16) I have already written one letter to fourth uncle, but please give him once more my wishes for his early recovery [rǐkǔv'orì], when you go to see him again.

Your loving brother,

T'su-hsin

生 字

- | | |
|-------------------------------|---|
| 1. surprise [soprì'z]: 奇異的事。 | 12. cover [kǔv'ò]: 封。—— <i>under separate cover</i> : 另封。 |
| 2. rapid [ráp'pì]: 快。 | <i>book post</i> : 書郵。 |
| 3. progress [pró'gròs]: 進步。 | 13. electricity [dìék' rǐs'gù]: 電。 |
| 4. praise [prāz]: 誇獎。 | <i>電學</i> 。 |
| 5. spoil [s'pòil]: 縱壞, 姑息。 | 14. idea [í'dí'ò]: 思想, 意象, 概念。 |
| 6. start [tārt]: 開端, 起首。 | <i>subject</i> [sub'jǐkt]: 題目。 |
| 7. consult [kònsult': 與~商量。 | 15. <i>take up</i> : 取起, 選取(研究)。 |
| 8. depend [dǐpǒnd': 靠, 依賴。 | <i>seriously</i> [sǒ' rǎoslì]: 嚴重地。 |
| 9. prove [próov]: 證明。 | 16. <i>recovery</i> [rǐkǔv'orì]: 恢復原狀。 |
| 10. deserve [dǐz'ev]: 應得。[程。 | |
| 11. future [fū'ebò]: 將來。(轉爲)前 | |

講 義

(A) 注意：在友誼的信中，覆信可不必指出來信的日子，與商界的信札不同，因為私人來往的信札並不多，但如果要指出來信的日子也可以。

(B) The Kaiming Correspondence School 是指“開明函授學校”，the Kaiming Correspondence Course 是指“開明函授學校的課程”。又，注意我們說 I study the Kaiming Correspondence Course, 但必須說 I study in the Kaiming Correspondence School.

(C) 第5句頗爲複雜，茲詳細解釋如下：主句 *that is all the more reason* 的 *that* 是指在其前面的子句所講的事實，*all* 可作“更”字解，所以全主語的意義是“那是更多的理由”；全句可譯爲：“如果你已有了良好的開始，(那是更多的理由爲什麼你須)那麼你更須盡你所能的努力”。

(D) 第9句的 *you yourself* 是鄭重的說法，指明“一切都是靠你自己，並不是靠我們”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	spoil	{ spoiled [spoild] { spoilt [spoil]	{ spoiled { spoilt
	consult	consult	consulted
	depend	depended	depended
	prove	proved	proved
	deserve	deserved	deserved

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
surprise	surprises	progress	progresses (罕用)
praise	praises	future	futures (罕用)
electricity	(無)	cover	covers
idea	ideas	subject	subjects
recovery	recoveries	start	starts

【造句】 (1) mine, (2) yours, (3) ours, (4) hers, (5) theirs.

LESSON 28

A Letter of Inquiry

Cable and
Telegraphic
Address:
JACKSONCO
London

T. C. JACKSON AND CO., LTD.
37 Newgate Street
London, E. C. 4, England

Codes Used:
A. B. C. 5th Ed.
Improved,
Private

Ref. No. KF 33

Sept. 23, 194

Messrs Oversea Trading Co., Ltd.,
154 South Gate, Canton, China.

DEAR SIRS,

(1) We are indebted [ɪndet'ɪd] to our friends, Messrs. Bayard, Fritz, & Co. of this city, for your address, and we

beg to write you about importing cowhide [kow/hid] from your port.

(2) We have been importing cowhide from other importers and exporters of Hongkong, but we have found the connection [kənĕk/shən] not very satisfactory, and we have decided to try some other firms [fīfīmz]. (3) We are writing to two other firms of your city and one in Hongkong for quotations [kwōtā/shənz] of cowhide, and we shall give our orders to the one that gives lowest quotations and most satisfactory service, after a few trial orders.

(4) Our turnover [tūr'nō'və] is about six tons [ũnz] each month. (5) We usually deal only in the first grade hide [hid], sized 1, but occasionally we do some small business in lower grade hides, too. (6) So please quote [kwōt] us your prices, in pounds sterling [pəwɪdz stēr/līng], f.o.b. [ēf'ō'bō'] Canton. (7) Please also inform [īnfōr'm] us of your terms of payment. (8) For the financial [fīnān'shəl] standing [stān'dīng] of our company, we give the Hongkong [hōng'kōng'] and Shanghai Banking [bāng'kīng] Corporation, for your reference.

Yours faithfully,

T. C. Jackson and Co., Ltd.

per. K. French

KC:hm

生 字

信 箋 頭

中 (1) Ltd. = limited 之簡。

limit [līm/it]: 限制。——過去

分詞 limited [līm'itid]: 被限

制的, 有限的, ~and Co. Ltd. 某某有限公司。

(2) Newgate [nū'gāt]: (新門), 倫敦街名。

(3) E C 4 乃倫敦城區域的名。

有(3) **improve** [imprōv]: 改良、
——過去分詞 **improved** [-d]: 被
改良過的,改良的。

稱 呼

- (1) **trade** [trād]: 貿易。——*trading company*: 貿易公司。
- (2) **gate** [gāt]: 門,城門,隘門,——*South Gate*: 南門,
 1. **indebted** [indēt'id]: 負債:(轉爲)蒙恩。——*indebted to X for Y*: 負Y債於X; 承X以Y見賜。
 - cowhide** [kōw'hīd]: 牛皮。
 2. **connection**: [k nē'shən] (貿易上的)關係; 有往來的商號
 - firm** [fīr'm]: 商號,合資商號
 3. **quotation** [kwōtā'shən]: 價目,報價。
 4. **turnover** [tūrnō'və]: 買賣總額
 - ton** [tūn]: 噸。
 5. **hide** [hīd]: 獸皮,(此處指牛皮)
 6. **quote** [kwōt]: 報(價)。

sterling [stēr'liŋ]: 英國法幣之標準成份。

pound [paʊnd]: 鎊,金鎊(英國貨幣)。

f. o. b. [əf'ə'b] = *free on board* 之簡。

board [bōrd]: 板。——*onboard*: 在船(板)上,或火車(板)上。——*free on board*: 到船上(或火車上)交貨不另開費用。

7. **inform** [infōr'm]: 通知。

8. **financial** [fī ān'shəl]: 財政上的。

standing [s ān'diŋ]: 地位。——*financial standing*: (財政上的地位),信用。

Hongkong [hōŋ'kōŋ]: 香港。

bank [bāŋk]: 銀行;經營銀行事業。——*banking* [bāŋ'kiŋ]: 經營銀行事業的。

Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation: 匯豐銀行。

講 義

(A) *company* 原來的意義是“羣”,其所只變成“公司”解者,如下。西洋人往往以人名爲商號之名,如果有兩三個人合資營業,便把他們的名字放在一起,例如 Follen, Mussolini, and Shaw; 但如果人數多了,把一二個較有名的或投資較多的人的名字放上,其餘的人用 *and Company* 代表,例如 T. C. Jackson & Co. 或 Beyard, Fritz, & Co. 但現在 *company* 卻已另有一義,即“公司”,可獨立用。

(B) 所以 & Co. 是不能濫用的; 在許多的地方本來應該用 Co., 但人家卻用了 & Co., 例如 H. C. Wang, Fruits & Co. 在這種地方,嚴格地講,便是 H. C. Wang 先生,與 Fruits 先生,及其他諸人合資開設的公司。像這個店名可有兩種寫法: (1) H. C. Wang & Co. 簡此行之下加“Fruiters” [frū'trəz], 或 frū'trəz] (水果商)字義。(2) H. C. Wang's Fruit Store. 前者是一種公司,至少非 H. C. Wang 個人的店,後者則爲個人的產業; 但如起初爲個人的商店,後改爲公司,則該公司可沿用舊名。& Co. 乃與人名連用的,其他商號的名,應只用 Co., 例如 Oversea Trading Co.

(C) firm, 嚴格地講, 乃二三人合資的商店, 雖則許多人用以泛指各種商號。

(D) 在西人商業的習慣上, 交易未成之前須先調查對方的信用, 或請對方調查自己的信用。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	limit	limited	limited
	improve	improved	improved
	trade	traded	traded
	quote	quoted	quoted
	inform	informed	informed

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
gate	gates	cowhide	—
connection	connections	firm	firms
quotation	quotations	turnover	turnovers
ton	tons	hide	—
reference	references	pound sterling	pounds sterling

【句法改造】 把以下各句變成間接引用句：

- (1) I said, "I want to do it."
- (2) He said, "I will want to do it."
- (3) You said, "I will do it."
- (4) I said, "She can do it."
- (5) You said, "She can do it."
- (6) He said, "She can do it."

LESSON 29

The Reply

Branches: OVERSEA TRADING CO., LTD. Cable Address: OTCO, Canton
 Hongkong Importers, Exporters, and Commission Agents
 Shanghai 154 South Gate
 Tientsin Canton, China
 Tel. phone No. 39582
 HEAD OFFICE
 Codes Used: A.B.C. 6th Ed.,
 Aemo, Bentley,
 Western Union,
 and Private

Your Ref. No.	Date	Our Ref. No.	Regarding
KF 33	25/9/4...	FJ/1	Price of Cowhide

Oct 20, 1941

Messrs. T. C. Jackson & Co., Ltd.,
 37 Newgate Street,
 London E. C. 4, England.

DEAR SIRS,

(1) We are in due receipt of your favour of the 23rd, ult., KF 33, inquiring about the price of cowhide, and wish to thank you for the inquiry [ínkwīf'í].

(2) Calculating [kǎl'kūlātíng] at the probable [prǒb'abl] quantity [kwǒn'tǐtì] of the raw [raw] cowhide you may buy from us in the future, we quote you the following prices:

GRADE	SIZE	QUANTITY	PRICE	CONDITION [kǒndīsh'én]
			£ s. d.	
A1	I	per picul	1 18 9	f.o.b. Canton
			2 0 9	f.o.b. Hongkong

A	I	per picul	1	16	6	f.o.b. Canton
			1	18	6	f.o.b. Hongkong
A	I	per picul	1	9	0	f.o.b. Canton
			1	11	0	f.o.b. Hongkong

(3) We quote you also the prices f.o.b. Hongkong, because from our past experiences [iks'pɛr'fɛnsɪz] we know the trouble that is likely to be caused by our customers' handling [hændlɪŋ] the transshipment [træns'ʃɪp'mənt] at Hongkong. (4) In view [vju] of this, therefore, we would advise you to let us handle the goods to Hongkong. (5) In this connection, we should like to call your attention to the fact that we have a branch office in Hongkong and are, therefore, very well situated [sɪt'ūātɪd] to take care of any goods leaving that port for any part of the world.

(6) Your reference is satisfactory, but our terms of payment for our new customers is always that they open us irrevocable [ɪrɛv'əkəbl] letter of credit, and we suggest that you do the same in the beginning.

We are,

Yours faithfully,

Oversea Trading Co

T. K. Ong

(Export Mgr.)

TKO, PYK

生 字

信 箋 頭

中 (b) *head office*: 總店。

左 (1) *branch* [braɪnɪtʃ]: 支店, 分行。

1. *inquiry* [ɪnkwɪrɪ]: 詢問。

2 *calculate* [kælkʊlət]: 算, 計算。

probable [prəb'əbl]: 大概的, 可能的。

quantity [kwɒn'tɪtɪ]: 數量。

raw [raʊ]: 生的, 未經製過的。

- picul** [pik'ul, 或 pik'əl]: 擔。
——*per picul*: 每擔。
- condition** [kəndiʃ'ən]: 條件。
£ = 英金鎊 (pound) 之符號。
- s. = shilling** 之簡。—— *shilling* [ʃil'ing]: 先令。 [簡。]
- d. = penny** 或 **perce** (辨士) 之
3. **experience** [ikspē'riəns, əks-]: 經驗。
- handle** [hān'dl]: 處理。
- transhipment** [trānʃip'mənt]: 轉運。
4. **view** [vū]: 視域; 情境。—— *in view of this*: 在此種情境中。
5. *call your attention to ~*: 敬乞注意某事。 [於某種地位。]
- situate** [si'ti'ā]: 位於某處, 處 *take care of*: 管理。
6. **irrevocable** [irēv'əkəbl]: 不可收回的。

講 義

(A) 像這樣把 Ref. No., 來信日期, 和來信摘要, 列在一長方表格中的辦法, 恐怕在中國還沒有, 因為這是最新合理化運動所產出來的。其實也不過是把許多零碎的東西放在一起。

(B) f.o.b. 有人寫成 fob.

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	calculate	calculated	calculated
	handle	handled	handled
	situate	situated	situated
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
branch	branches	inquiry	inquiries
quantity	quantities	picul	piculs
shilling	shillings	experience	experiences
transhipment	transhipments	view	views

【句法改造】 把以下的直接引用句變成間接引用句

- (1) I said to him, "You can do it."
- (2) I said to you, "You can do it."
- (3) He said to me, "You can do it."

- (4) He said to you, "You can do it."
- (5) You said to me, "You can do it."
- (6) You said to him, "You can do it."

LESSON 30

A Cat Crying over a Mouse

(1) Once a little mouse [mows] fell into a pond [pönd] and died [dīd]. (2) His dead [dēd] body was found by a dog and they gave him a great funeral [fū'nərəl].

(3) At the mouse's [mow'sīz] funeral were many guests. (4) There were the lion, the fox, the horse, the cow, the donkey [dōng'ki], the dog, the sheep, the duck [dūk], the hen, and the goose. (5) And they were all very sorry, and the cat was there too.

(6) Over the mouse's grave [grāv], the lion made a fine speech [spōch], saying how sorry he was to see the little mouse die so young. (7) And they all cried [krīd] and made a great deal of noise. (8) Amidst [əmīd'st] the howl [howl] was also heard "Mecow [mō'ow'], mecow, mecow." (9) At this the mother rat [rāt] nearly fainted [fān'tīd] off for fear.

(10) The cat also made a fine speech, saying how sorry he felt to see the little mouse die so young, and he took his handkerchief from his pocket [pök'it] to wipe his eyes. (11) After the speech the cat put back his handkerchief, which was quite dry. (12) He put on his hat, took his stick in his hand, and walked home like a gentleman.

13. Do you think that the cat did actually [äk'tüəlī] cry?
14. Of course not, his handkerchief was dry.
15. Why then did he pretend [prītēnd'] to be crying?

16. He wanted to show that he was, like every one else, very sorry for the death [dēth] of the mouse.
17. If you hear some one say "Oh, he is like the cat crying over the mouse", what does that mean?
18. It means that the speaker thinks that he—whoever [hōōv'v] he is—is merely pretending.
19. Here is a list of the opposite sex of the animals named in this lesson:

MALE (雄)	FEMALE (雌)	MALE (雄)	FEMALE (雌)
<i>lion</i>	<i>lioness</i> ¹	<i>dog</i>	<i>bitch</i> ⁴
<i>fox</i>	<i>vixen</i> ²	<i>drake</i> ⁵	<i>duck</i>
<i>horse</i>	<i>mare</i> ³	<i>cock</i> ⁶	<i>hen</i>
<i>ox</i>	<i>cow</i>	<i>gander</i> ⁷	<i>goose</i>
¹ [i'vənɪs]	² [vɪk'sn]	³ [mɑː]	⁴ [bɪtʃ]
⁶ [kɒk]	⁷ [gændə]	⁵ [dræk]	

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. mouse [mɔʊs]: 小老鼠。(複數 mice [mɪs])</p> <p>pond [pɒnd]: 池。</p> <p>die [di]: 死。(云謂詞)</p> <p>dead [dɛd]: 已死的。——<i>dead body</i>: 屍身。</p> <p>2. funeral [fʊ'nərəl, 或 .ū'nərəl, 或 fʊ'nri]: 葬禮。</p> <p>mouse's [mɔʊz]: 小老鼠的。</p> <p>4. donkey [dɒŋg/kɪ]: 驢子。</p> <p>duck [dʌk]: 鴨子。</p> <p>6. grave [græv]: 墓。</p> <p>speech [spi:tʃ]: 演說辭。——<i>make a speech</i>: 演說。</p> <p><i>die young</i>: 夭折。</p> <p>7. cry [kri]: 哭。 [在~之中。</p> <p>8. amidst [ə'mɪd'st, 或 ə'nɪts't]:</p> <p>howl [hɔʊl]: 叫喊。</p> | <p>meeow [mē'əʊ]: 咪嗚(鼠叫)</p> <p>9. rat [ræt]: 老鼠。 [聲]。</p> <p>faint [faɪnt]: 昏暈。——<i>faint off</i>: 暈倒。</p> <p>10. packet [pɒk'ɪt]: 口袋。</p> <p>13. actually [æk'tʃuəli, 或 .tʃu:]: 實實在在的。</p> <p>15. pretend [prɪ'tɛnd]: 假冒。</p> <p>16. death [deθ]: 死。(名詞)</p> <p>18. whoever [hōōv'v, 或 hōō]: 不論誰。</p> <p>19. lioness [i'vənɪs]: 乳獅。</p> <p>vixen [vɪk'sn]: 乳狐。</p> <p>mare [mɑː]: 牝馬。</p> <p>bitch [bɪtʃ]: 母狗。</p> <p>drake [dræk]: 雄鴨。</p> <p>cock [kɒk]: 雄雞。</p> <p>gander [gændə]: 雄鵝。</p> |
|---|--|

講 義

(A) donkey, rat, mouse 均通性, 即諸字不分性別。

(B) die 是自此云謂詞, 其過去分詞 died, 不可當形容詞用。 “死” 的形容詞是 dead。

(C) nearly fainted off for fear = “怕得幾乎暈倒”。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 26—30)

1. Tsu-yi was a lazy boy, but he has changed.
2. Now he works hard and studies hard, he has been taking the Kaiming Correspondence Course.
3. He learns his English from the course and his third brother helps him in this.
4. His first letter in English was written to his brother in Shanghai, for he lives in Tientsin.
5. In the draft of his letter, his third brother made only two grammatical corrections.
6. He works hard, and gets a promotion with an increase of two dollars a month.
7. He wanted to write his brother about this earlier, but he could not do it because he was busy answering the questions of the correspondence course.
8. He wants to get two books on electricity, and hopes his brother will get them for him.
9. All these he wrote to his brother, and he also told him that their fourth uncle had been sick for nine days and that their fourth aunt had just come back.
10. His brother answered him, saying that he was surprised to learn that he had made such rapid progress and that they would help him as much as he proves

himself to deserve it.

11. He also sent him the two books on electricity and said he would send him more books on the subject from time to time, if his brother means to take up electricity seriously.
12. He wished their fourth uncle an early recovery.
13. T. C. Jackson & Co. of London are importers of cowhide from Hongkong, and their old connections were not very satisfactory, so they decided to make new connections.
14. Among others, they wrote to the Oversea Trading Co. of Canton for prices of cowhide f.o.b. Canton.
15. The Oversea Trading Co. wrote back giving them f.o.b. quotations for both Hongkong and Canton, for they know from their experiences that trouble is likely to be caused by their customers' handling the transshipment at Hongkong themselves.
16. They are very well situated to handle the transshipment in Hongkong because they have one branch office there.
17. They also informed T. C. Jackson & Co. that their terms of payment is for the new customers to open them irrevocable letter of credit.
18. Once a little mouse fell into a pond and died, and was found by a dog.
19. All the animals got together and gave him a great funeral.
20. The lion gave a speech, saying how sorry he was to see the mouse die so young, and the cat gave a speech

saying the same thing too.

21. He even pretended to cry, and to wipe his eyes with his handkerchief which he took from his pocket.
22. From this story comes the phrase "a cat crying over the dead mouse".

* * *

LESSON 31

Conversations Heard in a Street

(1) I walk in a street, where many people pass by. (2) The people come from different walks [wawks] of life. (3) There are maids and servants [sêr'vonts], and there are ladies and gentlemen. (4) The following conversations are among what I hear.

(5) A manservant [măn'sêr'vənt] asks a maidservant [mā'dsêr'vənt]: (6) "Why do you want to quit [kwīt], isn't your master [mah'stə] a good one?" (7) "Yes, the master is good," answers the maidservant, "but the mistress is terrible, she is so cross [kraws], so cross! (8) I can't stand [stānd] it any longer." (9) "My trouble is somewhat different," says the manservant. (10) "The master and mistress are all right, it's the young masters and misses who are so troublesome [trūl'lsəm]."

(11) A group of boys and girls have been to a wedding [wêd'īng], and they talk about it. (12) "I thought the bride [brīd] would look prettier [prīt'īə] than that," says one. (13) "And the bridegroom [brī'dgrōōm] is actually handsomer [hān'səmpə] than the bride," says another. (14) "But what does it matter [māt'ə], she will be a very good house wife, I am sure, for I know her well," says

a third. (15) "And a charming [châr'mîng] hostess [hō'stîs], too," says a fourth.

(16) Two lovers [lûv'ôz] have just come out of a theater. (17) "The actors [ăk'tôz] didn't act so well as the actresses [ăk'trîsîz]," remarks [rîmâr'ks] the girl. (18) "Yes, yes, women are much better actresses than men are actors," responds [rîspôndz'] the boy, "that's why you have such a charm [châr'm] over me." (19) "But don't you think the hero [hēr'ô] of the play is wonderful?" (20) "No, I like the heroine [hēr'ôïn] much better, I mean I like her part [pâr't] in the play better than the part played [plād] by the hero."

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>2. walk [wawk]: 行走的地方; (轉爲)範圍。——<i>walk of life</i>: 職業, 階級。</p> <p>3. servant [sêr'vônt]: 僕人(男女僕通用)。</p> <p>5. manservant [măn'sêr'vônt]: 男僕。
maidervant [mă'dsêr'vônt]: 「女僕。</p> <p>6. quit [kwî't]: 棄去, 辭職。</p> <p>master [mah'stô]: 主人, 男主。</p> <p>7. so [sô]: 很, [人。
cross [kraws]: 暴戾。</p> <p>8. stand [stând]: 忍受。</p> <p>10. troublesome [trûb'lso:m]: 麻煩的, 棘手的。</p> <p>11. wedding [wêd'vîng]: 婚禮。</p> <p>12. bride [brîd]: 新娘。
prettier [prî'vîô]: 較美的, (pretty) 的較級。 [郎。</p> <p>13. bridegroom [brî'dgrô:m]: 新
handsome [hăn'sôm]: 美的, (較級 handsomer)</p> | <p>14. matter [măt'ô]: 生關係, (云謂詞) —— <i>What does it matter?</i> (它生出什麼關係?), 那有什麼關係?</p> <p><i>house wife</i>: 女家主, 主婦。</p> <p>15. charming [châr'mîng]: 悅人的, 有趣的。
hostess [hō'stîs]: 女主人。</p> <p>16. lover [lûv'ô]: 情人。</p> <p>17. actor [ăk'tô]: 男優。
actress [ăk'trîs]: 女伶。
remark [rîmâr'k]: 批評。</p> <p>18. respond [rîspôndz']: 答, 回答。
charm [châr'm]: 悅人或迷人的魔力。</p> <p>19. hero [hēr'ô]: 英雄; (轉爲)劇中男主角, 小說中主人翁。</p> <p>20. heroine [hēr'ôïn]: 女英雄; (轉爲)劇中女主角, 小說中女主人翁。
part [pâr't]: 部分; (轉爲)所扮的角色。
play [plā]: 扮演。</p> |
|--|---|

講 講

(A) manservant, maidservant, 平常極罕用。

(B) master 可作“男主人”解，與 mistress 對稱；同時也可作“小公子”解，與 miss 對稱。

(C) wedding 與 marriage 的分別如下：marriage = “婚事”，“婚禮”；wedding = “婚禮”。

(D) 形容人的貌美時，pretty 只能用於女人；handsome 只能用於男人。

(E) mistress 乃指其在家中地位而言；house wife 乃指其在家中理事而言；hosts 乃“客人”之對稱。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	die	died	died
	cry	cried	cried
	faint	fainted	fainted
	pretend	pretended	pretended
	quit	quit (or quitted)	quit (or quitted)
	matter	mattered	mattered
	remark	remarked	remarked
	respond	responded	responded

原 級	較 級	最 級
pretty	prettier	prettiest
handsome	handsomer	handsomest

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
mouse	mice	pond	ponds
funeral	funerals	donkey	donkeys
duck	ducks	hen	hens
grave	graves	howl	howls
rat	rats	pocket	pockets
death	deaths	lioness	lionesses
vixen	vixens	mare	mares

bitch	bitches	drake	drakes
cook	cooks	gander	ganders
servant	servants	master	masters
wedding	weddings	bride	brides
bridegroom	bridegrooms	hostess	hostesses
lover	lovers	actor	actors
actress	actresses	charm	charms
hero	heroes	heroine	heroines
part	parts	miss	misses

【造句】 造五句含有 predicate nominative 的句子。

LESSON 32

Gender

(1) In our last two lessons we learned quite a number of names for the two sexes of man, animal, and fowl [fowl]. (2) We shall now systematize [sɪs'ɪmətɪz] them and learn more about the **gender of nouns**.

(3) Some nouns in the **masculine gender** change their endings to form the **feminine gender**, the following are a few examples:

MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE
<i>god</i>	<i>goddess</i>	<i>actor</i>	<i>actress</i>
<i>host</i>	<i>hostess</i>	<i>tiger</i> ²	<i>tigress</i> ³
<i>patron</i> ¹	<i>patroness</i>	<i>protector</i> ⁴	<i>protectress</i>

¹ [pə'trɒn] ² [tɪ'gə] ³ [tɪ'grɪs] ⁴ [prə'tɛk'tɔ]

(4) Note that those on the left add *ess*, and those on the right drop the last syllable [sɪl'əbl] before adding *ess*.

(5) But more often **nouns** denote their distinction in the **gender** by different words, thus:

MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE
<i>bull</i> ¹	<i>cow</i>	<i>bachelor</i> ³	<i>maid, or maiden</i> ⁴
<i>cock</i>	<i>hen</i>	<i>gentleman</i>	<i>lady</i>
<i>drake</i>	<i>duck</i>	<i>king</i>	<i>queen</i>
<i>stallion</i> ²	<i>mare</i>	<i>master</i>	<i>miss</i>
	¹ [bōōl]		² [stā./yən]
			³ [bäch'olə]
			⁴ [mä'dn]

(6) Some **nouns** use additional [ədī'sh'ənl] words to indicate their **genders**.

MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE
<i>bull calf</i> ¹	<i>cow calf</i>	<i>cock sparrow</i> ³	<i>hen sparrow</i>
<i>he goat</i>	<i>she goat</i>	<i>peacock</i> ⁴	<i>peahen</i> ⁵
<i>he ass</i> ²	<i>she ass</i>	<i>maise vint</i>	<i>maidservant</i>
	¹ [kahl]		² [ä]
			³ [spä'ō]
			⁴ [pē'kok]
			⁵ [pē'hen']

(7) Here are some irregular ways of inflection to show the difference in the **gender**, though in some of them the inflection may look very much like any of the foregoing [fōrgō'ing] three ways.

MASCULINE	FEMININE	MASCULINE	FEMININE
<i>bridegroom</i>	<i>bride</i>	<i>master</i>	<i>mistress</i>
<i>Mr.</i>	<i>Mrs.</i>	<i>emperor</i> ¹	<i>empress</i> ²
<i>hero</i>	<i>heroine</i>	<i>widower</i> ³	<i>widow</i> ⁴
	¹ [ēm'prə]		² [ēm'prɪs]
			³ [wīd'ō]
			⁴ [wīd'ō]

(8) However, sometimes we disregard [dīs'rīgū'd] the natural distinction in sex. (9) We regard a *child*, *baby*, or *infant* [in'fənt] as in the **neuter gender** and use pronoun *it* in its place. (10) We also regard an *animal fowl*, or *insect* [in'sekt] as in the **neuter gender** and use pronoun *it* in its place, unless we wish to indicate its real sex.

(11) Ordinarily [ɔr'dinəri:lɪ], we also use *duck*, *goose*, and *peacock*; we use *drake*, *gander*, and *peahen* only when we want to indicate the real sex in them. - (12) Ordinarily we use *chicken*, *sparrow*, *ox*, *calf*, *goat*, *ass*, and *horse*; it is only when we want to indicate their real sexes that we use *cock* and *hen*; *cock sparrow* and *hen sparrow*, *bull* and *cow*, *bull calf* and *cow calf*, *he goat* and *she goat*, *he ass* and *she ass*, and *stallion* and *mare*.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. fowl [fəʊl]: 禽類。 | 數 calves [kəlvz] |
| 2. systematize [sɪs'tɪmətaɪz]: 使系統化。 [音] | ass [æs]: 驢子。 |
| 3. patron [pə'trɒn]: 扶助者, 資顧 | sparrow [spɑr'ɒ]: 麻雀。 |
| tiger [tɪ'gə]: 老虎, 牡虎。 | peacock [pə'kɒk]: 孔雀(雄的)。 |
| tigress [tɪ'grɪs]: 牝虎。 [音] | peahen [pə'hɛn]: 注意平等的重音: 孔雀(雌的)。 |
| protector [prə'tɛk'tə]: 保護 | 7. foregoing [fɔr'gɔɪŋ]: 在前邊的。 [音] |
| 4. syllable [sɪ'ləbəl]: 音節。 | emperor [ɛm'prɛ, 或 -tə ɔ]: |
| 5. bull [bʊl]: 牝牛, 公牛。 | empress [ɛm'prɪs]: 皇后。 |
| stallion [stəl'jɒn]: 牡馬。 | widower [wɪd'ɔə]: 鰥夫。 |
| bachelor [bæch'ələ, 或 læch'lə]: 未結婚的男子。 | widow [wɪd'ɔ]: 寡婦。 |
| maid [maɪ]: 未結婚的女子。(但指年紀已很大的, 用 old maid) | 8. disregard [dɪs'rɪgərd]: 不顧及, 不管。 |
| maiden [maɪ'dɪn]: 處女, 少女。 | 9. infant [ɪn'fænt]: 嬰孩, 嬰兒。 |
| 6. additional [ədɪ'tɪʃənl, 或 -shənl]: 附加的。 | 10. insect [ɪn'sɛkt]: 昆蟲類。 |
| calf [kɑlf, l 無音]: 小牛。(複 | 11. ordinarily [ɔr'dinəri:lɪ, 或 ɔr'dɪnrɪ:lɪ]: 平常地。 |

講 義

(A) 音節以元音為標準, 元音或單獨, 或與其前後的輔音合併計算, 成為一音節。例如 *protector* 係三音節的字: prə'tɛk'tə; 又如 *bachelor* 為三音節, 但讀 *bäch'/lə* 時, 該字則為兩音節。注意: 此處所講的元音並非元音字母, 如 *each* 為一音節的字, 因為讀時實只是 [éçh] 一音; 又如 *queen* [kwēn] 也同為一音節的字。

(B) *baby* 與 *infant* 指比 *child* 更小的孩子。

練 習

【背誦】 現在時制 過去時制 過去分詞
 systematize systematized systematized

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
fowl	fowls	patron	patrons
tiger	tigers	tigress	tigresses
protector	protectors	syllable	syllables
bull	bulls	cow	cows
cock	cocks	hen	hens
bachelor	bachelors	maid	maids
calf	calves	maiden	maidens
sparrow	sparrows	ass	asses
peahen	peahens	peacock	peacocks
empress	empresses	emperor	emperors
widow	widows	widower	widowers
insect	insects	infant	infants

【造句】 造五句含有 predicate adjective 的句子。

LESSON 33

The Muses, etc.

(1) Zeus first married Metis [mīō/tīs], or counsel [kōw'nsəl], by whom he got Athena. (2) As he had learned that his child by Metis would eclipse [īklīps/] him, he changed Metis into a fly and swallowed her, when he knew that she had conceived [kōnsō/vā]. (3) But despite [dīspi't] that, Athena sprang from his head fully grown and fully armed [ārməd].

(4) Zeus' next wife of importance was Leto [lə'iō], by whom he became the father of the twins [twīnz], Apollo and Artemis. (5) Ares was born to him by his principal spouse [spowz], Hera; and Hermes, by Maia [mī'ə]. (6) Hephaestus was born of Hera without the cooperation of Zeus.

(7) Both Hestia and Demeter were sisters of Zeus and Hera; they and Poseidon and Hades all were the children of Cronus and Rhea, the Titans. (8) Aphrodite was born, according to some legend [ləj'ənd], out of the foam around the limbs of Uranus which dropped into the sea; but according to another legend, she was the daughter of Zeus and Dione [diō'nī] a female Titan.

(9) Besides these and other lesser gods, the Greeks also had three (and later nine) Muses [mū'ziz], the goddesses of songs and poetry [pō'itri] and three Charites [chār'itēz], the personifications of Grace [grās] and Beauty. (10) The Muses were daughters of Zeus and Mnemosyne [nīmōs'inē], and the Charites, or Graces [grās'is], daughters of Zeus and Eurynome [ūrīn'əmō]. (11) These Graces were the goddesses who enhanced [inhah'nst] the enjoyment [injoi'mənt] of life. (12) They did so by refinement [rīfī'nənt] and gentleness [jēn'tlnis], by everything that delights [dīli'ts] and elevates [el'ivāts] gods and men, especially poetry. (13) So they were great friends to the Muses.

(14) Among the Greeks there was also a strong conception [kənsēp'shon] of fate [fāt]. (15) The Fates were three in number, and even the gods had to follow the course set by them. (16) But according to some legend, the Fates as well as the Four Seasons were Zeus' daughters by Themis [thē'mis].

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. counsel [kəʊnsəl, 或 -sɪ]: 商議, 勸告; 轉為 智謀。 | grace [grās]: 優雅。 [加。 |
| 2. eclipse [ɪkɪlɪps/]: 蒙蔽, 使晦。 | 11. enhance [ɪnhɑːns]: 促進, 增 |
| conceive [kənsəʊv]: 懷孕。 | enjoyment [ɪnʃɔɪ'mənt]: 賞 |
| 3. despite [dɪ'spaɪt]: 雖則 ~ 仍。 | 12. refinement [rɪfɪnmənt]: 文 |
| grown [grɒn]: 已長成的。 | 雅 的 風 氣。 [柔和。 |
| arm [ɑːm]: 持械, 服武裝。 | gentleness [dʒɛntlnɪs]: 溫良, |
| 4. twin [twɪn]: 雙生子之一。 | delight [dɪlɪ'ti]: 使 ~ 快樂。 |
| 5. spouse [spəʊz]: 夫或妻。 | elevate [ɛlɪ'veɪt]: 提高。 [念。 |
| 8. legend [lɛdʒənd]: 傳說。 | 14. conception [kənsəp'shən]: 觀 |
| 9. poetry [pəʊ'ɪtri]: 詩。 | fate [fæɪ]: 命運。 |

神 祇 名

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. Metis [mɛ'tɪs]. | 10. Mnemosyne [nɪːmə'sɪnə]. |
| 4. Leto [lɛ'to]. | Graces [grɑ'sɪz]. |
| 5. Maia [mɪ'o]. | Euryome [jʊ'riə'omē]. |
| 8. Dione [dɪ'o'nɪ]. | 15. Fates [fets]. |
| 9. Muses [mū'zɪz]. | 16. Themis [θə'mɪs]. |
| Charites [chɑr'ɪtɪz]. | |

講 義

(A) **eclipse** 原指“日蝕, 月蝕”, 在第 2 句中的用法當然是借用, 謂 **Metis** 與 **Zus** 所生之子會比 **Zus** 較有本領智慧, 而奪其位。

(B) **born** 字的用法如右: **is born of the mother, is born to the father.**

(C) **Muse** 字現已成為通用的字, 其意為“沉思”, 大概因為詩人時常沉思的緣故。

(D) **poetry** 是詩的總稱, 不能有複數; **poem** 是指一首一首的詩, 所以可以有複數。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	conceive	conceived	conceived
	arm	armed	armed
	eclipse	eclipsed	eclipsed

	enhance	enhanced	enhanced
	delight	delighted	delighted
	elevate	elevated	elevated
	單 數	複 數	單 數
	counsel	counsels	twin
	spouse	spouses	twins
	grace	graces	legend
	refinement	refinements	legends
	fate	fates	enjoyment
			enjoyments
			conception
			conceptions
			Muse
			Muses

【造句】 造三句含有直接賓語在先，間接賓語在後的句子；然後再將這三句的直接賓語放在後面，間接賓語放在前面。

LESSON 34

Le-Tse's Letter to his Parents

PEIPING,
25th *Sept.*, 1941.

DEAR PARENTS,

(1) Perhaps you will be surprised to receive at this time a letter from me, as you would expect [ɪk'spektʃ] me to go home for the Mid-Autumn Festival [mɪd'ɔ:təm fɛs'tɪvəl]. (2) But I am not going home this time, and that is why I am writing you. (3) There are many reasons why I cannot go home for the festival this year.

(4) First, the factory [fɚk'tɔ:rɪ] gives us only one day for the holiday [hɔ:lɪ'deɪ] this year, instead of three as usual. (5) So if I should try to go home, I can spend only a few hours at home. (6) It doesn't seem wise [wɪz]

to spend so much money travelling [träv'liŋg] in night trains [trānz] for just a few hours' stay at home.

(7) Secondly [sëk'ondli], we are going to have an excursion [ikskû/shön] to the West Hills outside the city for the holiday. (8) Although I have been here for over a year and a half, I have not been there so far, therefore I should like very much to see the beautiful historic [hïstör'ik] place.

(9) As mother has not seen Peiping yet, I should suggest that father take her here the day before the festival so that we may go and enjoy that scenic [së'nïk] beauty together. (10) I can easily [ë/zïli] arrange it with the head of the excursion party [pâr'ti]. (11) So please write me if you can come.

(12) If you are coming, please also bring me my wadded [wöd'id] gowns, as I shall need them soon. (13) If you are not coming, then please send them by parcel [pâr'sl] post. (14) Perhaps, it would be well to send the furs [fûrz] too. (15) For our factory is unusually busy this year, and I may not be able to go home until the new year holiday. (16) However, this is provided that mother has time to unpack [ün'pāk'] the trunks [trünks] and sun [sün] them. (17) Otherwise, you needn't do it now, as I do not need them right away.

With love to everybody at home,

Your loving son,

Le-tse

生 字

1. **expect** [ikspekt', eks-]: 守待。
mid-autumn [mïd'aw'oum]: 中秋。

- festival** [fës'təvəl]: 節。——
Mid-Autumn Festival: 中秋節。
 4. **factory** [äk'torï, 或 fäk'trï]: 廠。

6. **wise** [wɪz]: 智慧的 合算的。
travel [trævəl, 或 trāv'l]: 旅行。
train [trān]: 火車。—— *night train*: 夜車。
7. **secondly** [sɛk'əndli]: 其次, 第二層。 [旅行。
excursion [ɪkskɜr'shən, ɛks-]: *West Hills*: (北平)西山。
8. **so far**: 直至現在。
historic [hɪstər'ɪk]: 在歷史上有價值的。
9. **scenic** [sɛ'nɪk]: 關於風景的。
10. **easily** [ɛ'zɪli]: 容易地。
party [pɑr'tɪ]: 羣, 團體。—— *excursion party*: 旅行團。
12. **wad** [wɑd]: 塞以棉花。(過去分詞 *wadded* [wɑd'ɪd])——*wadded gown*: 棉袍。
13. **parcel** [pɑr'sl, 或 pɑr'səl]: 包裹。—— *parcel post*: 包裹郵政。
14. **fur** [fɜr]: 皮貨, 皮衣。
16. **unpack** [ʌn'pæk]: 解開包裹, 開箱取物。
trunk [trʌŋk]: 箱。
sun [sʌn]: 曝日。(云謂詞)

講 義

(A) **Dear Parents**: = “親愛的雙親”。

(B) **mid-autumn** 可指“中秋日”, 但也可指“秋季的中部”, 所以言“中秋節”時必須說 **the Mid-Autumn Festival**。

(C) 我們講過, 無生命的東西不能有所有格, 但代表時間, 距離, 等的名詞卻是例外, 可以有所有格。

(D) 敘述理由或其他的事, 如用一, 二, 三, 冠於每條, 每段之前時, 這一, 二, 三, 等有三四種寫法如下: (1), (2), (3), etc.; **First, Second, Third, etc.**; **Firstly, Secondly, Thirdly, etc.**; **First, Secondly, Thirdly, etc.** 而以第一和第四種的寫法最為普遍。

(E) **With love to everybody at home**, = “順請家中大小平安”。但照文法講, 這是簡句中之一部分, 全句本來是: **I am, with love to everybody at home, Your loving son, Le-tse.** 這短句是形容着 **I** 或 **son** 字。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	expect	expected	expected
	travel	travelled	travelled
	wad	wadded	wadded
	sun	sunned	sunned

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
festival	festivals	factory	factories
train	trains	excursion	excursions
hill	hills	party	parties
trunk	trunks	fur	furs

【造句】 造五句含有 object complement 的句子。

LESSON 35

His Father's Reply

TSINAN, SHANTUNG,
Sept. 27th, 1941.

DEAR SONNY,

(1) My letter of the 26th must have crossed [keawst] yours. (2) In it I told you not to come home, as we—i.e. your mother, your younger brother and sisters, and I—are all going to Peiping soon. (3) Your elder brother is not going, for we need him in Tsinan to look after the business and the home, as well as to meet [mēt] your mother, brother, and sisters at the railway station [rā'lwā stā'shən] when they come home.

(4) I am going to Peiping on business, and will have to stay there longer, but your mother and brother and sisters will come back earlier. (5) All of us will go to the West Hills, but you will have to take one day off to show them the city, as I shall be busy with the business.

(6) All your wadded coats, gowns, pants [pānts] will be brought to you. (7) The furs I or your elder brother

will bring to you later, for one of us must go to Peiping and Tientsin again two months from now.

Father

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| sonny [sŭn'i]: 父母稱呼喚兒子所用的字,含有“愛兒”的意義。 | railway [rā'iwā]: 軌道,鐵路。 |
| 1. cross [kraws, krōs]: 相交。 | station [stā'shən]: 站。——
<i>railway station</i> : 火車站。 |
| 3. look after : 照顧,料理。 | 4. on business : 因事。 |
| meet [mēt]: 迎接。 | 6. pants [pānts]: 褲。(單數罕用) |

講 義

(A) *inst.*, *ult.* 在商業信札外,不用,在本課中只說二十日,而沒有 *inst.* 字樣,就是這緣故。

(B) *take one day off* 的 *off* 當然是 *off your work* 的意思。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 31—35)

1. Do you believe in fate?
2. Certainly not, that's too easy a way to explain anything.
3. Do you believe in these legends which you have learned in these lessons?
4. Not at all, but I greatly enjoy them. That is quite another matter.
5. What do you think in civilization?
6. Civilization is, I think, refinement which elevates and delights man and enhances his enjoyment of life.
7. Is civilization then made up of songs, poetry, music, arts, etc.?

8. Yes, these things form an important part of civilization, but civilization means much more than these things.
9. What else is meant by civilization?
10. That every one must find out for himself.

11. A bachelor and a maiden become a bridegroom and a bride at the wedding, and after that they become husband and wife, or, as we sometimes say, man and wife.
12. In their relation to the maids and servants, the man is the master and the wife is the mistress.
13. In their relation to their guests, he is the host and she, the hostess.
14. We address a boy as Master X, and when he has grown up, we address him as Mr. X, no matter whether he is married or not.
15. Suppose Mr. X has a sister, so long as she has not married we address her as Miss X, no matter whether she is eight or eighty years old, but when she is married to Mr. Y, we address her as Mrs. Y.

16. How do you like the play?
17. I rather like it, the heroine is such an interesting, cross wife, the hero is such a good-for-nothing husband and the two together make a very interesting couple.
18. What do you think of the actors and actresses?
19. The actors are handsome and the actresses are pretty and charming, and all of them, except one, acted their parts well.
20. Ordinarily we use *duck, goose, chicken, peacock, sparrow, ox, calf, goat, ass* and *horse*, and only when we want to indicate the real sex of the object do we use

d ake, gander, cock and hen, peahen, cock sparrow and hen sparrow, cow, bull calf and cow calf, he goat and she goat, he ass and she ass, and stallion and mare.

21. Although usually we regard only an animal, a fowl, or an insect as *it*, yet we disregard the natural distinction in sex and speak of a child, a baby, or an infant as *it* too.
22. Who is the head of the excursion? I want to see him, to speak to him.
23. How did you spend your new year holiday?
24. Is it wise for me to do it?
25. Very sorry, we can't deliver you the goods now, as our factory is awfully busy just now, can you wait until after the festival?
26. Did you receive my telegram, why then did nobody meet me at the railway station?
27. When did you send me the wadded gowns and pants by parcel post, I haven't received them yet?
28. Here is the receipt of the parcel post, if you have not received them yet, then we have to make an inquiry at the post office.

* * *

LESSON 36

Athena

(1) Two of the twelve great Olympian gods deserve more attention from us. (2) They are Apollo and Athena.

(3) Athena's mother was Metis, who was the daughter of Oceanus [ōsī'ōnəs], the god of the water and son of heaven and earth, and Tethys [tē'tīs], daughter of Uranus and Ge. (4) As Metis was the wisest [wī'zīs].

and Zeus was the most powerful among the gods, so Athena was both wise and mighty [mī'ti].

(5) In time of peace [pēs], she taught men useful arts. (6) She invented [ɪnvēn'tid] the loom [lōōm], and spindle [spɪn'dl] the plough [plow], the rake [rāk], etc. (7) She was the patroness of weaving [wē'vɪŋ] and protectress of agriculture. (8) She also ruled over the intellectual [ɪn'tilēk'tūəl] and moral [mōr'əl] sides of human life. (9) It was said that the court [kōrt] of Areopagus [ār'jōp'ogəs] at Athens [æth'ɪnz] was instituted [ɪn'stɪi'utid] by her. (10) She was also the protectress of the state [stāt] against attackers [ətāk'əz] from outside.

(11) As the war goddess, she presided [prɪzɪ'dɪd] over the fortune of ordered battles [bāt'lz], as Ares over the boisterous [boi'stərəs] fight. (12) She was also the patroness of all the heroes who fought monsters [mōn'stəz].

(13) Attica [æt'ɪkə], the region [rē'jən] in southeastern [sow'th-ē'stən] Greece, had for its protectress Athena, and the most important city in this region, Athens, bears her name. (14) There is a story of how she came to the possession of the city. (15) Once she quarrelled [kwɔr'æld] with Poseidon over the possession of the city, and the gods decided to let them have a contest [kɔn'tɛst], and to give the city to the one who gave a better gift [gɪft] to man. (16) Poseidon gave man a horse, and Athena, an olive [ɔl'ɪv] tree. (17) The gods decided that the olive tree was a better gift than the horse, so the city was given to Athena, and named Athens.

生 字

4. wisest [wɪ'zɪst]: 最有智慧的。
mighty [mɪ'ti]: 有力的。

5. peace [pēs]: 和平。
art [ɑ:t]: 技藝。

6. **invent** [ɪn'vent]: 發明。
loom [lōm]: 織布機。
spindle [spɪn'dl]: 紡錘。
plough [plow]: 犁。
rake [rɪk]: 爬。
7. **weave** [wēv]: 織, — *weaving*: 織布。(名詞)
8. **intellectual** [ɪn'tɪlək'tʃuəl, 或 -chōəl, 或將來一音節的 ə 音省去亦可]: 智力的。
mora [mōr'əi]: 道德的。
9. **court** [kōrt]: 法庭。
Areopagus [æ'rɪp'əgəs]: 希臘雅典之小丘, 古設法庭於此。
Athens [æθ'ɪnz]: 雅典(城)。
institute [ɪn'stɪtʃūt]: 設置, 制定。
10. **state** [stæt]: 國家。 [上定]。
attacker [ətək'ə]: 攻擊者。
11. **preside** [prɪ'zɪd]: 管理, 支配。
- fortune** [fōr'tʃən]: 命運。
ordered [ɔr'dəd]: 有秩序的。
battle [bāt'l]: 交戰。
boisterous [bōi'stəros]: 騷亂的, 喧囂的。
fight [fɪt]: 相打。
12. **monster** [mɔn'stə]: 妖怪。
13. **region** [rē'jən]: 區域, 地方。
southeastern [səu'ti:θ-ē'st-ən]: 東南的。
15. **quarrel** [kwɔr'əl]: 爭吵。
contest [kɔn'test]: 比賽。
gift [gɪft]: 禮物。
15. **olive** [ɔl'iv]: 橄欖。 — *olive tree*: 橄欖樹。
- 神 祇 名
3. **Oceanus** [osi'ənəs].
Tethys [tē'tɪs].

講 義

- (A) **intellectual** 美國人讀 [ɪn'tɪlək'tʃōəl, -təl, -chōəl] 的多。
- (B) **court of Areopagus** 乃雅典古時的刑事法庭。
- (C) **country** (國) 與 **state** (國) 在意義上有這個分別: **country** 係指其國土而言, **state** 則指其組織或主權而言。
- (D) **war** 乃泛指戰爭, **battle** 乃指在戰場上之一戰。
- (E) 第 13 句 **had for its protectress Athena** = **had Athena for its protectress**.

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	cross	crossed	crossed
	meet	met	met
	invent	invented	invented
	weave	wove [wōv]	woven [wō'vn]
	institute	instituted	instituted

preside	presided	presided	
quarrel	quarrelled	quarrelled	
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
railway	railways	station	stations
(pant)	pants	peace	(無)
art	arts	loom	looms
spindle	spindles	plough	ploughs
rake	rakes	court	courts
state	states	attacker	attackers
battle	battles	monster	monsters
region	regions	contest	contests
gift	gifts	fight	fight

【造句】 造五句含有受動態的句子。

LESSON 37

Interrogative Pronouns

(1) We have seen that **personal pronouns** are inflected to show the **number, gender, person, and case**. (2) We shall see, in this lesson, how the **interrogative pronouns** are influenced by them.

(3) The most important **interrogative pronouns** are *who, what, and which*. (4) Of those only *who* is inflected to show the difference in **case**, thus:

NOMINATIVE	POSSESSIVE	OBJECTIVE
<i>who</i>	<i>whose</i>	<i>whom</i>

(5) This word may be used as **singular** or **plural**, and is usually in the **third person**. (6) Although it is in the

common gender, it cannot be used for things which are lifeless. Examples: (7) *Whom* did you see? (8) *Who* goes there? (9) *Whose* is this book? (10) *Who* were there with you?

(11) *What* and *which* are usually used to denote things, but may also be used in connection with persons. Examples: (12) *What* is he? (= Is he a clerk or a manager, a student or a teacher, etc.?) (13) *Which* is he? (i.e. there are many persons here, but which one is he?) (14) Both *which* and *what* may be used in the **nominative case** as well as in the **objective case**. Examples: (15) *What* hurts [hūts] you? (16) *Which* is right? (17) *What* do you like? (18) *What* did you take?

(19) Let us examine once more these three words.

(20) **Who is he?** = What is his name?

(21) **What is he?** = What is his social status [sō'shəl stā'tos] or vocation [vōkā'shən]? Is he a rich man, or is he poor? Is he a workman [wēr'k-mən] or a business man?

(22) **Which is he?** = There are a number of persons here, but please point out to me which one he is.

(23) It will be observed that *which* is always selective [sīlĕ'liv], and this use is not confined to persons, but to things as well. (24) *Which* is the best dish? (25) *Which* did you eat? (26) The *which* in both of these sentences refers to things and not to men, but it refers to one among the many things.

(27) When we use a **pronoun**, we use it to refer to some person or thing which has been already named. (28) The **noun** that goes before and refers to the same object as the **pronoun** is called the **antecedent** [ǎn'tisō'dənt] of the

pronoun. (29) The **interrogative pronoun**, however, has no **antecedent**, for that is the very thing which the speaker wants to find out.

生 字

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 15. hurt [hʉt]: 傷害。 | workman [wɛt'kmən]: 工人。 |
| 21. social [sɔ'shəl]: 屬於社會的。 | 26. selective [sɪlək'tɪv]: 選擇的。 |
| status [stætə+]: 地位。 | 28. antecedent [æn'tɪsə'dɛnt]: 前行詞。 |
| vocation [vɔkə'shən]: 職業。 | |

講 義

(A) 第 13 句括弧中的末一個子句 *which one is he?* 仍是詢問句,所以述語與主語的位置倒置為 *is he*; 第 22 句的解釋句中末一個子句 *which one he is*, 是一個平常的說明句,所以主語和述語的位置是照自然的位置,仍為 *he is*。

(B) 第 15, 16 句中的 *what* 與 *which* 是主語,所以是在主格; 第 17, 18 句中的 *what* 與 *which* 是賓語,所以是在受格。

(C) 第 28 句的 *that goes before and refers to the same object as the pronoun* = *that goes before the pronoun and refers to the same object as the pronoun*.

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	hurt	hurt	hurt
	單 數	複 數	單 數
	status	(無)	vocation
	workman	workmen	vocations
			antecedent
			antecedents

- 【造句】** (1) indebted to . . . for (4) by no means
 (2) no sooner . . . than (5) look after
 (3) take care of

LESSON 38

Relative Pronouns

(1) Ordinarily the **antecedent** does not have to be very close to the **pronoun**, but in the case of a **relative pronoun**, it has to be as near to its **antecedent** as possible.

(2) The most important **relative pronouns** are *who*, *which*, *what*, *that*, *whoever*, *whosoever* [hōō'sōēv'ə], *whosoever* (*whose-ever*) [hōōzēv'ə], *whosoever* [hōō'zsoēv'ə], *whomever* [hōōmēv'ə], *whomsoever* [hōō'msoēv'ə], *whichever* [wīč-ēv'ə], *whichsoever* [wīč'sōēv'ə], *whatever*, *whatsoever* [whōt'sōēv'ə]. (3) Since the **relative pronoun** and its **antecedent** refer to the same person or thing, they are in the same **person**, **number** and **gender**, although people usually do not speak of its **gender** in this connection. (4) But its **case** depends on the function it has in the construction of the clause which it introduces. (5) Here is a table that summarizes [sūm'ərīzīz] this.

Number, Person, and Gender	Case
Agrees with the antecedent.	Depends on the construction of the clause it introduces.

Examples: (6) **These are the things** *which* (or *that*) **we got.** (7) **I do this one thing** *which* (or *that*) **will help you.** (8) **That is an action** *the end of which* (or *whose end*) **no one can tell.** (9) **Finally, I found her,** *whom* (or *that*) **I wanted to see.** (10) **At last you,** *whose help we need so much,* **have come.** (11) **It was I** *who* (or *that*) **did it.** (12) Here is a table which shows the **number**, **person**, **gender**, and **case** of the **relative pronouns** and their **antecedents** in the foregoing examples:

Sen.	Antecedent and Relative Pronoun	Number	Person	Gender	Case
6.	<i>things</i> <i>which or that</i> <i>thing</i>	plural plural singular	third third third	neuter neuter neuter	nominative (predicate nominative) objective (object of <i>got</i>) objective (object of <i>do</i>)
7.	<i>which or that</i> <i>action</i>	singular singular	third third	neuter neuter	nominative (subject of <i>will-help</i>) nominative (predicate nominative)
8.	<i>of which</i> or <i>whose</i>	singular	third	neuter	{ object (object of <i>of</i>) possessive (possessor of <i>end</i>)
9.	<i>her</i> <i>whom or that</i>	singular singular	third third	feminine feminine	objective (object of <i>found</i>) objective (object of <i>see</i>)
10.	<i>you</i> <i>whose</i>	singular or plural singular or plural	second second	common common	nominative (subject of <i>have-come</i>) possessive (possessor of <i>help</i>)
11.	<i>I</i> <i>who or that</i>	singular singular	first first	common common	nominative (predicate nominative) nominative (subject of <i>did</i>)

(13) Perhaps you have noticed that *that* can be used for both things and persons, while *who* is confined to persons, and *which*, to things. (14) It is better to use *of which* than to use *whose*, in the case of lifeless objects.

(15) *What* includes the **antecedent** in itself, i.e., it is equivalent to *that which, the one which, all that, etc.* Examples: (16) **Here are the gloves I bought, pick out what (the one which) you want.** (17) **We eat what (all that) we can, what (that which) we can't we can, then we eat what (that which) we canned.** (18) *What (that which) is good for me, may not be good for you.* (19) The other **relative pronouns** include their **antecedents**, thus: *whoever* or *whosoever*=any person who; *whosover* or *whosoesover*=any person whose; *whomever* or *whomsoever*=any person whom; *whichever* or *whichsoever*=anything which; *whatever* or *whatsoever*=anything which. (20) They may be used in the same way as *what* is used. (21) However, those **relative pronouns** with *-ever* or *-soever* at the end are seldom used, and those with *-soever* are more emphatic [ĩmfãt'ĩk] than those with *-ever* only.

生 字

2. **whosoever** [hʊ̄ō/sɔ̄ɔ̄v''ə]: 不論誰。(主格)
whosover, 或 **whose-ever** [hʊ̄ōzɔ̄v''ə]: 不論誰的。
whosoesover [hʊ̄ō/zsɔ̄ɔ̄v''ə]: 不論誰的。
whomsoever [hʊ̄ō/msɔ̄ɔ̄v''ə]: 不論誰。(受格)

- whichever** [wʰɪtʃɔ̄v''ə]: 不論那一個。
whichsoever [wʰɪtʃ/sɔ̄ɔ̄v''ə]: 不論那一個。
5. **summarize** [sʊ̄m'ə:ɪz]: 摘要。
16. **pick out**: 取出, 選出。
21. **emphatic** [ĩmfãt'ĩk]: 強調的, 加重語勢的, 動人的。

講 義

(A) 談文法的人在談 relative pronouns 時,很少講到 gender。

(B) 第 17 句依美國人的語音,他們的 can't 與 can 無差別,所以在音調上祇聽見 [kən kən, kən];但意義上卻非如此簡單。這句話是說:“我們所能喫的,我們儘量喫,那些喫不完的,我們裝入罐頭,然後我們喫那些(我們)已裝在罐頭中的。”

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	summarize	summarized	summarized
	pick	picked [-kt]	picked

【造句】用 who, which, what, that 諸連續代名詞各造一句。

LESSON 39

Apollo (I)

(1) Apollo had more influence upon the Greeks than any other god. (2) He was the sun-god, not as Helios [hē'liōs] the personification of the sun was, but in the following sense [sēns]. (3) As the sun dispels [dɪspɛlz/] the darkness [dɑr'knɪs], it was regarded a civilizing agency [ɑ'jɛnsɪ] dispelling ignorance [ɪg'nɔrəns] and barbarism [bɑr'bɔrɪzm]. (4) It was the sun in the latter sense that Apollo was the sun-god, so, in reality, he was the god of enlightenment.

(5) When the love affair between Zeus and Leto was discovered by Hera, Zeus' wife, she persecuted [pɛr'sɪkɪt-ɪd] her. (6) Leto then fled [flɛd] to Delos [dɛ'lɔs], where she gave birth to the famous [fɑ'mɔs] twins, Apollo and Artemis.

(7) Apollo was the god of domestic animals. (8) But he was also a god of song and music. (9) As the god of song and music, he always carried with him a lyre [līr]. (10) There is a story of how he got his lyre that I will tell you here.

(11) Apollo had some cattle [kăt'1] in Pieria [pīēr'íə], and Hermes, right after his birth and before he became the winged messenger of the gods, stole some of them.

(12) After hiding the cattle, he returned to his cave, where he found a tortoise [tōr'təs]. (13) He took the tortoise shell [shəl] and put several strings [strɪŋs] to it, thus he invented the lyre. (14) When Apollo charged [chārʒd] him with the theft [thēft], Hermes so charmed him with the lyre that Apollo agreed to let him keep the oxen in exchange for the lyre.

(15) As he was the god of cattle and flocks [flōks], the deer and the wolf were sacred [sā'krɪd] to him.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>2. sense [səns]: 意義。</p> <p>3. dispel [dɪspəl]: 驅散, 使消散。</p> <p>darkness [dɑ:k'nɪs]: 黑暗。</p> <p>civilizing [sɪv'ɪlɪzɪŋ]: 文明的, 開化的。</p> <p>agency [ə'ʒənsɪ]: 媒介物。</p> <p>ignorance [ɪg'nərəns]: 愚蠢。</p> <p>barbarism [bɑ:bə'rɪzəm]: 野蠻。</p> <p>5. persecute [pə'sɪkət]: 窘迫。</p> <p>flee [fli:]: 逃。(過去時制及過去分詞 fled [flɛd])</p> <p>famous [fə'məs]: 著名的。</p> <p>7. domestic animal: 家畜。</p> <p>9. lyre [lɪr]: 琴。</p> | <p>11. cattle [kăt'1]: 家畜, (特指) 牛。</p> <p>Pieria [pīēr'íə]: 古馬其頓 (Macedonia [mæs'ɪdō'nyə]) 的地名, 係九 Muse 女神之靈地。</p> <p>12. tortoise [tōr'təs]: 龜。</p> <p>13. shell [shəl]: 殼, 甲。</p> <p>string [strɪŋ]: 細繩。</p> <p>14. charge [chārʒ]: 控告。</p> <p>theft [thəft]: 偷竊。(名詞)</p> <p>15. flock [flɔ:k]: 家畜的羣。</p> <p>sacred [sā'krɪd]: 神聖。</p> <p style="text-align: center;">神 祇 名</p> <p>2. Helios [hē'líəs].</p> <p>6. Delos [dē'lɔ:s].</p> |
|--|---|

講 義

(A) 第 1 句, 在形式上雖是在較級; 但實際上是在最級之中, 因為 *more influence upon the Greeks than any other god* 實等於 *the most influence upon the Greeks among the gods*。

(B) *sacred to him* = “爲他而視爲神聖的”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	dispel	dispelled	dispelled
	persecute	persecuted	persecuted
	flee	fled	fled
	charge	charged	charged

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
sense	senses	darkness	——
agency	agencies	ignorance	——
barbarism	——	lyre	lyres
——	cattle (羣牛之總稱)	tortoise	tortoises
shell	shells	string	strings
theft	thefts	flock	flocks
love affair	love affairs	deer	deer

【造句】 造五句含有 *cognate object* 的句子。

LESSON 40

Apollo (II)

(1) Now we come to the more important functions of Apollo. (2) Apollo had not only the power of prophecy

[prǒf'isi] himself, but also the power of giving such power to others. (3) Here is a story.

(4) Apollo was in love of Cassandra [kasǎn'drə], daughter of Priam [pri'əm], king of Troy [troi]. (5) He gave her the power of prophecy, but she refused to fulfill [fǒöf'il'] her promise. (6) So Apollo ordained [ordā'nd] that no one should believe in her prophecy.

(7) Apollo's power of prophecy was connected with his oracle [ör'ekl] in Delphi [děl'fi], the most famous [fā'məs] one among the oracles of the ancient Greeks. (8) There he spoke through the priestess [prǒ'stīs] of his temple. (9) When people went there to consult Apollo about the future of something, the priestess sat on a chair over a cleft [klēft] and after inhaling [inhā'līng] the gas [gās] leaving the cleft, she answered the question.

(10) Apollo was also the god who punishes [pün'ish-iz]. (11) Sudden [süd'n] deaths and plagues [plägz] were said to be caused by him to punish people. (12) But he also helped people, by his oracles, to appease [apē'z] the gods.

(13) He was also the archer-god [ār'chə-göd]. (14) Like an archer [ār'chə], he always carried with him his bow and arrows [ār'ōz]. (15) As the archer-god, usually he was nude [nüd].

(16) He was a god who delighted in the foundation [fowndā'shən] of towns and civil [siv'il] institutions [in'stitū'shənz].

(17) Apollo was the handsomest [hǎn'səmìst] among the gods and is always regarded as the ideal of youth and manliness [mǎn'līnìs].

生 字

2. **prophecy** [prɔf'isī, 或 prɔffī-si]: 預言。 [名。
4. **Cassandra** [kəsən'drə]: 女人
Priam [pri'əm, 或 pri'ām]:
Troy 國王名。
Troy [troi]: 小亞細亞之古國名。
5. **fulfil** [iʊfɪl/]: 履行, 實踐。
6. **ordain** [ɔrdā'n]: 命定, 注定。
7. **oracle** [ɔr'ekl]: 神諭; 神諭所。
Delphi [dɛl'fi]: 希臘之舊都名,
即 Apollo 神殿所在地。
8. **priestess** [prɔ'stɪs]: 女巫; 女
9. **cleft** [klɛft]: 石隙。 [教士。
inhale [ɪnhā'l]: 吸入。
gas [gæs]: 氣。
10. **punish** [pʌn'ɪʃ]: 刑罰。
11. **sudden** [sʌd'n]: 忽然的。——
sudden death: 暴卒。
plague [plæg]: 瘟疫。
12. **appease** [əpɔ's]: 使息怒。
13. **archer-god** [ɑr'chə-gɔd]: 弓神。
14. **archer** [ɑr'chə]: 弓箭手。
arrow [ɑr'ɔ]: 箭。
15. **nude** [nʌd]: 裸體。 [設。
16. **foundation** [faʊn.lā'shən]: 建
civil [sɪv'l, 或 sɪv'ɪl]: 文明的。
institution [ɪn'stɪtʃən]:
制度。
17. **handsomest** [hænd'səmɪst]: 最
美的。
manliness [mænd'lɪnɪs]: 大丈夫的氣概。

講 義

- (A) ordain 一字的宗教氣味很重, 所以只用於神, 而不用於人。
(B) “神諭”的答覆往往是模稜兩可的。
(C) plague 一字常用以專指“鼠疫”。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to I.L. 36—40)

1. Athena was both wise and mighty, because her father was the most powerful and her mother, the wisest among the gods.
2. In time of war, she presided over the fortune of the ordered battle, though Ares was the war god of boisterous fight.

3. In time of peace, she taught man useful arts, she was said to have invented the loom, the spindle, the plough and the rake, and was, to the Greeks, their patroness of weaving and protectress of agriculture.
4. She also presided over man's intellectual and moral life, and the court of Areopagus at Athens, a city named after her, was said to have been instituted by her.
5. She remained a virgin, refusing to marry any of her lovers.
6. She was also the queen of the air.
7. Helios was the sun-god, which was a personification of the sun, but Apollo was a sun-god in the sense of a civilizing agency which dispelled ignorance and barbarism, as sun dispels darkness.
8. He was also an archer-god and a god of song and poetry.
9. He had the power of prophecy and could give such power to others.
10. His oracle at Delphi, by which he used his power of prophecy to tell people of their future and how to appease the gods, was the most famous one among the the Greeks.
11. He was a god who punishes by plagues and sudden deaths, but he also helped people by his oracle to know the way how to appease the gods.
12. He always carried with him a lyre, or was nude with bow and arrows.
13. The most important **interrogative pronouns** are *who*, *what*, *which*; and of these only *who* is **inflected** to show

the **three cases**, thus *who*, *whose*, and *whom*, while *what* and *which* form their possessive case by adding *of* before it, thus *of what*, *of which*.

14. All these **interrogative pronouns** are not **inflected** to show their **number** or **gender**, and they are always in the **third person**.
15. *Who* is used to denote persons and *what* and *which* are used usually to denote things, though they may be used in connection with persons, thus:
Who is he? = What is his name?
What is he? = What is his social status, vocation, etc.?
Which is he? = Which one among this group of persons is he?
16. *Which* is always **selective**, it tries to find out one particular **object** among many.
17. A **pronoun** must refer to something already named or understood, and the **noun** which denotes this something is called the **antecedent of the pronoun**.
18. A **pronoun** and an **antecedent** must be as close to each other as possible, especially in the case of a **relative pronoun**.
19. *Who*, *which*, *what*, and *that* are the most important **relative pronouns**.
20. *Who* is used to denote persons and *which* and *what* things **generally**, while *that* may be used for persons or things.
21. *What* and the other less important **relative pronouns**, *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whosoever* (*whose-ever*), *whosoever*, *whomsoever*, *whichever*, *whichever*, *whatever*, and *whatsoever*, include the **antecedents** in themselves, and

those with *-soever* are more emphatic than those with *-ever*.

22. A **relative pronoun** agrees with its **antecedent** in **number, person, and gender**, while its **case** depends on the construction of the clause it introduces.

* * *

LESSON 41

More about the Greek Gods and Goddesses

(1) Each of the Olympian gods or goddesses had certain symbols [sīm'blz] to indicate his or her power, office, etc. (2) Each of them also had certain objects sacred to him or her. (3) And many of them have certain places which were believed to be their abodes [əbō'dz].

(4) Zeus had as symbols of his power, the sceptre [sēp'tə], the thunderbolt, and the eagle [ē'gl]. (5) The eagle was the symbol of his power over the sky. (6) His abode was, as we have already seen, on the top of Mount Olympus, North Greece, where Hera lived too. (7) The peacock, the goose, and the cuckoo [kōök'ōō] were sacred to Hera.

(8) Apollo, as we have already seen, usually carried with him the lyre, or bow and arrows. (9) The deer and the wolf were sacred to him. (10) He was supposed to have been born in Delos and to have lived in Delphi.

(11) Athena was a maiden in armour [ā'r'mə] and was attended by an owl [owl] and a serpent [sēl'pənt], both symbols of wisdom [wiz'dəm]. (12) Poseidon's hair was bound [bownd] with seaweed [sē'wēd], according to some

one, and with fish's tail according to others, and he carried with him a trident [tri'dənt]. (13) Hermes had, in addition to his winged sandals, a traveller's [træv'ləz] hat, sometimes winged too. (14) He carried with him a rod [rɒd] twined [twɪnd] by two serpents.

(15) Hephaestus was lame [lām], and it was said that he was hurled down from heaven by his mother, who greatly disliked [dɪslɪ'kt] him. (16) He was said to have the Gigantes for his assistants, and to have invented the thunderbolt.

(17) Aphrodite not only was the most beautiful among the goddesses, but she also could give beauty and charm to others. (18) She was the wife of Hephaestus, but was faithless [fā'thlɪs] to him and in love with Ares, Hermes, Poseidon, etc. (19) The sparrow, the dove [dʊv], the swan [swɒn], and the swallow were sacred to her. (20) The rose [rɒz], apple [æp'l], poppy [pɒp'ɪ], myrtle [mê'tl], etc. were also sacred to her.

(21) Eros [ēr'ɒs], her son by Zeus, Ares, or Hermes, was the god of love, and they two usually went together. (22) Eros was called Cupid [kū'pɪd] by the Romans. (23) Cupid always carried with him a bow and arrows, which he was supposed to have shot [shɒt] at one's heart when one falls in love. (24) He also carried with him a torch [tɔtʃ].

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. symbol [sɪm'bəl, 或 sɪm'bl]:
 office [ɒf'ɪs]: 職權。 [記號。
 3. abode [əbɒ'd]: 居處。
 4. sceptre [sɛp'tɔ]: 王節。</p> | <p>eagle [ɛ'gl]: 鷹。
 7. cuckoo [kʊk'u:]: 杜鵑鳥。
 11. armour, 或 armor [ɑ'mə:]: 盔甲。</p> |
|--|---|

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------|
| attend [ətəˈdɪd]: 隨從。 | 貞節。 |
| owl [owl]: 貓頭鷹。 | swan [swɔn]: 天鵝。 |
| serpent [sɛrˈpɪənt]: 蛇。 | 19. dove [dʌv]: 鴿。 |
| wisdom [wɪz/dəm]: 智慧。 | 20. rose [rōz]: 玫瑰。 |
| 12. bind [bɪnd]: 縛。(過去時制及
過去分詞 bound [baʊnd]) | apple [æpl]: 蘋果。 |
| seaweed [sē/wēd]: 海草。 | poppy [pɒp/i]: 罌粟。 |
| trident [trɪ/dənt]: 三叉戟。 | myrtle [mɪr/tl]: 雁來紅。 |
| 13. traveller [træv/lə]: 旅行者。 | 23. shoot at : 射。 |
| 14. rod [rɒd]: 棍; 權標, 笏。 | <i>to fall in love</i> : 發生戀愛。 |
| twine [twɪn]: 環繞。 | 24. torch [tɔtʃ]: 火把。 |
| lame [læm]: 跛的。 | 神 祇 名 |
| 15. dislike [dɪs-lɪk]: 厭惡, 不愛。 | 21. Eros [ɛr/ʊs]. |
| 18. faithless [fə/θlɪs]: 不忠信, 不 | 22. Cupid [kʊ/pɪd]. |

講 義

(A) 神話終究是神話, 有人說這神是這樣, 有人說他是那樣, 如 Poseidon 的頭髮末端, 有人說是結以海草, 有人說是結以魚尾。

(B) 希臘人的神與人一般, 如 Zeus 之許多情事, Hera 之妒, Aphrodite 之淫等等皆是, 非若我國神仙之超凡脫俗。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	fulfil	fulfilled	fulfilled
	ordain	ordained	ordained
	inhale	inhaled	inhaled
	punish	punished	punished
	appease	appeased	appeased
	attend	attended	attended
	bind	bound	bound
	twine	twined	twined
	dislike	dislike	disliked
	shoot	shot	shot

原 級	較 級	最 級	
wise	wiser	wisest	
mighty	mightier [-tʃə]	mightiest	
handsome	handsomer	handsomest	
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
symbol	symbols	office	offices
abode	abodes	sceptre	sceptres [-təz]
eagle	eagles	cuckoo	cuckoos
armour	armours	owl	owls
serpent	serpents	wisdom	—
seaweed	seaweeds	trident	tridents
traveller	travellers	rod	rods
dove	doves	swan	swans
rose	roses	apple	apples
poppy	poppies	myrtle	myrtles
torch	torches	(sandal)	sandals

【作文】 Tell the story of the wood-cutter and the three wishes in English in less than 15 sentences.

LESSON 42

Self-Pronouns

(1) There is another class of pronouns that we may as well study now. (2) They are the **self-pronouns** [sɛlf'prō'nounz], viz. [nā'mli] *myself*, *yourself* [ūrsɛlf'], *himself*, *herself*, *itself* [itsɛlf'], *ourselves*, *yourselves* [ūrsɛlvz'], and *themselves*. (3) It will be noticed that these pronouns are formed by adding *self* (and *selves* for the plural)

to the possessive case of the first and second persons, and the objective case of the third person, of the personal pronouns.

(4) They may be used for emphasis [ěm'fəsīs] or to refer back to the subject of the verb, hence they are also called the **emphatic pronouns** and the **reflexive** [rĭflĕk'siv] **pronouns** respectively. Examples:

EMPHATIC	REFLEXIVE
(5) I <i>myself</i> (and nobody helps me) build the house.	(6) I <i>build myself</i> (i.e. for myself and not for some one else) a house.
(7) You <i>yourself</i> (i.e. no other person) cause the trouble.	(8) You ought to blame [blām] <i>yourself</i> (and not other person) for the trouble.
(9) He <i>himself</i> (not some other person) causes the injury [in'jorĭ].	(10) He injures [in'joz] <i>himself</i> (not some one else).
(11) She <i>herself</i> (nobody else) sings the song.	(12) She sings a song to <i>herself</i> (not to somebody else).
(13) This improvement [ĭm-prō'vmənt] <i>itself</i> (alone) is enough to make the sale.	(14) It sells itself (does not need advertisement [əd'ver'tis-mənt], etc.).
(15) We <i>ourselves</i> (nobody helps us) get them.	(16) We get them for <i>ourselves</i> (not for some other fellow).
(17) You <i>yourselves</i> (nobody else) cause the trouble.	(18) You ought to blame <i>yourselves</i> (and nobody else) for the trouble.
(19) They <i>themselves</i> take care of (not depending on others for) their living.	(20) They can take care of <i>themselves</i> (not of some one else).

(21) In the use for emphasis, the **self-pronouns** are always in apposition with the **subjects**. (22) In the reflexive use, they are always the **direct** or **indirect object** of the **verbs** and refer to the same persons as the **subjects**.

生 字

2. **self-pronoun** [sɔlf/'prɔn-
nɔwn]: 含有 self 的代名詞。
viz. = videlicet [vɪdē/'lɪsɔt]
之簡,或全讀或簡讀為 vid 或 viz;
但多數人以 namely 代之,因為
這字的意義正如 namely 也。
yourself [jʊrsɔlf]: 你自己。
itself [ɪtsɔlf]: 它自己。
yourselves [jʊrsɛlvz/]: 你們自
己。
4. **emphasis** [ɛm'fæsɪs]: 着重的
語勢,強調。(複數 emphases
[ɛm'fæsəz])
- emphatic pronoun*: 強語勢的代
名詞。
reflexive [rɪflɛk'sɪv]: 反身的。
——*reflexive pronoun*: 反身代
名詞。
8. **blame** [blām]: 譴責,歸過。
9. **injury** [ɪn'jɔri]: 損害,損傷。
10. **injure** [ɪn'jə]: 傷害。
13. **improvement** [ɪmpru:v-
mənt]: 改良的地方。
14. **advertisement** [ædvɛr'tɪs-
mənt, 美國人常讀 ædvɛrtɪz-
mənt]: 廣告。

講 義

(A) you 字的單數複數不能自字形上看出,但是 yourself, yourselves 則
單數複數分別得很清楚。

(B) 在着重語氣的用法中, I myself, you yourself, 等等的 myself,
yourself 等等,在中文只等於“自己”。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	blame	blamed	blamed
	injure	injured	injured

單 數	•	複 數	單 數	複 數
prophecy		prophecies	oracle	oracles
priestess		priestesses	cleft	clefts
gas		gases	plague	plagues
foundation		foundations	archer	archers
bow		bows	arrow	arrows

institution	institutions	manliness	—
self-pronoun	self-pronouns	self	selves
improvement	improvements	injury	injuries
advertisement	advertisements	emphasis	emphases

【造句】用以下諸 self-pronouns 各造兩句，一爲強調的用法，一爲反身的用法：

- (1) myself (3) herself
 (2) themselves (4) yourselves

LESSON 43

The Metric System

(1) At present our government [gŭv'ənmənt] uses the metric [mĕt'rĭk] system in a modified form. (2) We have learned something about the modified form of the long measure and the weight measure of the metric system. (3) We shall learn in this lesson the different measures of this system.

(4) Let us begin with the long measure. (5) The unit of the long measure in the metric system is *metre* or *meter*. (6) All the other measures in this system are based [bāst] on it, that is why it is called the "metric system".

(7) Before we go further, we have to learn a few of the roots [rōōts], with which most of the names in the metric system are formed. (8) When we want to say ten times a unit, we put *deca* [dĕk'ə] before it, thus *decametre* [dĕk'ə-mĕ'trē] means 10 metres; and when we want to say only one-tenth [wŭn'tĕnth'] of the unit, we put *deci* [dĕs'ĭ] before it, thus *decimetre* [dĕs'ĭ-mĕ'trē] means $\frac{1}{10}$ metre. (9) When we mean one hundred times the unit, we put

before it *hecto* [hĕk'tō], thus *hectometre* [hĕk'tōmō'tə] means 100 metres; and when we mean one-one-hundredth [wŭn"-wŭn-hŭn'drødth], we put before it *centi* [sĕn'ti], thus *centimetre* [sĕn'timō'tə] means $\frac{1}{100}$ metre. (10) When we mean one thousand times, we add before the name of the unit *kilo* [kīl'ō], thus *kilometre* [kīl'ōmō'tə] means 1,000 metres; and when we mean one-one-thousandth [wŭn"-wŭn-thow'zəndth], we add *milli* [mīl'í] to it, thus *millimetre* [mīl'ímō'tə] means $\frac{1}{1000}$ metre.

(11) For the measure of capacity [kəpās'ítí], one cubic [kū'bīk] decimetre is one *litre* [lō'tə], which is the unit of measure and is our Market Standard *sheng* (市升).

(12) When we compound the unit, *litre*, with those roots, we get: *kilolitre* [kīl'ōlō'tə], which equals 1,000 litres; *hectolitre* [hĕk'tōlō'tə], which equals 100 litres and is our Market Standard *shih* (市石); *decalitre* [dĕk'ōlō'tə], which equals 10 litres and is our Market Standard *tou* (市斗); and *decilitre* [dĕs'ílō'tə], which equals $\frac{1}{10}$ litre; *centilitre* [sĕn'tílō'tə], which equals $\frac{1}{100}$ litre; and *millilitre* [mīl'ílō'tə] which equals $\frac{1}{1000}$ litre

(13) One cubic centimetre of water weighs one *gramme*.

(14) Similarly we add the roots to form the following terms: *kilogramme*, which equals 1,000 gramme; *hectogramme* [hĕk'tōgrām], which equals 100 grammes; *decagramme* [dĕk'əgrām], which equals 10 grammes; and *decigramme* [dĕs'igrām], which equals $\frac{1}{10}$ gramme; *centigramme* [sĕn'tigrām], which equals $\frac{1}{100}$ gramme; and *milligramme* [mīl'igrām], which equals $\frac{1}{1000}$ gramme.

(15) Here are a few more terms besides what we have learned. (16) Ten kilometres is one *myriametre* [mīr'īəmō'tə]. (17) One kiloliter is also called one *stere*

[stēr], and one hundred steres equal one *hectostere* [høk'-tōstēr]. (18) Ten kilogrammes equal one *myriagramme* [mīr'īəgrām], ten myriagrammes equal one *quintal* [kwīn'təl], and ten quintals equal one *millier* [mē'lyā] or *tonneau* [tənō'], the metric ton.

(19) The terms for the measure of surface are formed in a different way. (20) One square metre is one *centare* [sēn'tār], and one hundred centres equal one *are* [ār], and one hundred ares equal one *hectare* [høk'tār].

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. government [gūv'ənmənt]: 政府。
 metric [mēt'rīk]: 米突的。——
 <i>metric system</i>: 米突制。</p> | <p>millimetre [mīl'īmō'tə]: 一米突千分之一，公釐，毫米。(簡作 mm.)</p> |
| <p>6. base [bās]: 根據。</p> | <p>11. capacity [kəpās'itī]: 容量。
 cubic [kū'bīk]: 立方的，
 litre [lētə]: 公升，升。(簡作 l.)</p> |
| <p>7. root [rōōt]: 根，字根，</p> | <p>12. compound [kəmpow'nd]: 使成複合的。(云謂詞)
 kilolitre [kīl'ōlē'tə]: 一千公升，公秉，仟升。(簡作 kl.)
 hectolitre [høk'tōlē'tə]: 一百公升，公石，佰升。(簡作 hl.)
 decalitre [døk'əlē'tə]: 十公升，公斗，什升。(簡作 dal.)
 decilitre [dēs'īlē'tə]: 一公升十分之一，公合，分升。(簡作 dl.)
 centilitre [sēn'īlē'tə]: 一公升百分之一，公勺，釐升。(簡作 cl.)
 millilitre [mīl'īlē'tə]: 一公升千分之一，公撮，毫升。(簡作 ml.)</p> |
| <p>8. times [tīnz]: 倍。
 decametre [døk'əmə'tə]: 十米突，公丈，什米。 [之一。
 one-tenth [wūn'tēnth]: 十分
 decimetre [dēs'imē'tə]: 一米突十分之一，公寸，分米。(簡作 dm.)</p> | <p>14. hectogramme [høk'tōgrām]. 一公斤十分之一，公兩，佰克。(簡作 hg.)
 decagramme [døk'əg.ām]: 公</p> |
| <p>9. hectometre [høk'tōmē'tə]: 一百米突，公引，佰米。(簡作 hm.)
 one-one-hundredth [wūn'-wūn-hūn'drēdth]: 百分之一。
 centimetre [sēn'tīmē'tə]: 一米突百分之一，公分，釐米。(簡作 cm.)</p> | |
| <p>10. kilometre [kīl'ōmē'tə]: 一千米突，公里，仟米。(簡作 km.)
 one-one-thousandth [wūn'-wūn-thow'z ndth]: 一千分之一。</p> | |

- 斤百分之一，公錢，什克。(簡作 Dg.)
- decigramme** [dēs/īgrām]: 一克十分之一，公釐，分克。(簡作 dg.)
- centigramme** [səu/tīgrām]: 一克百分之一，公毫，釐克。(簡作 cg.)
- milligramme** [mīl/īgrām]: 一克千分之一，公絲，毫克。(簡作 mg.)
16. **myriametre** [mīr/īamē'to]: 一萬米突。
17. **stere** [stēr]: 一立方米突，立方米。(簡作 s.)
- hectostere** [hök/tjstōr]: 一百立方米突，佰立方米。(簡作 hs.)
18. **myriagramme** [mīr/īōgrām]: 一萬克，公衡。
- quintal** [kwīn'tæl, 或 -tāl]: 十萬克。(簡作 q.)
- millier** [mē/lyā]: 百萬克。
- tonneau** [təno'], **tonne** [tən]: 公鐵。(簡作 t.)
20. **centare** [sən'tār]: 公畝百分之一，釐安。(簡作 ca.)
- are** [ār]: 公畝，安。(簡作 a.)
- hectare** [hök'tār]: 一百公畝，公頃，佰安。(簡作 ha.)

講 義

(A) 本課特別長，生字又似乎很多，但其實是以少數字根所合成的。米突制中的名詞，常用者極少，所以不必強記。

(B) *deca*, *hecto*, 諸字根皆不能獨立使用，只有 *kilo* 是例外，往往作 *kilogramme* 之簡式用。

(C) *litre* 一字，正如 *metre* 一字，可將末兩個字母的地位對調，改為 *liter*, *meter*。又，*gramme* 可寫作 *gram*。

(D) 本課中各名詞的簡寫均依國際米突制會議之規定，無簡寫者原缺。

練 習

【背誦】	單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
	government	governments	millier	milliers
	capacity	capacities	root	roots
	stere	steres	litre	litres
	tonneau	tonneaux [təno'z]	quintal	quintals
	tonne	tonnes	are	ares

【造句】 下列反身代名詞，試仿上課的用法造句：

- (1) ourselves, (2) yourself, (3) himself, (4) itself.

LESSON 44

Dry Measure and Liquid Measure

(1) We shall study below the dry measure, the liquid measure, etc. (2) Here are the English dry and liquid measures:

DRY MEASURE

2 pin's [pīnts] . 1 quart [kwɔrt]
 8 quarts 1 peck [pɛk]
 4 pecks 1 bushel [bʊʃəl]

LIQUID MEASURE

4 gills [jīlz] . . . 1 pint
 2 pints 1 quart
 4 quarts 1 gallon [gāl'ən]

(3) We don't have liquid measure in Chinese, although we measure wine [wīn] and liquor [līk'ə] in catties and ounces and sometimes in *tou* (斗). (4) Our dry measure is very simple, it goes by decimal [dēs'īməl]. (5) One *shih* (石) is equal to ten *tou* and one *tou*, to ten *sheng* (升). (6) Some people call *sheng* "pint", and *tou* "peck", but they are not accurate. (7) In our Market Standard measure for capacity, "litre" is our *sheng* and "decalitre" is our *tou*.

(8) The unit of the English land measure is "acre" [ā'kə], which is equivalent to about six and one half *mow* (畝) in the old Chinese system of land measure. (9) One Standard Market *mow* is $666\frac{2}{3}$ centares, or $6\frac{2}{3}$ ares.

(10) The English system of weights that we have studied is the one in common use. (11) It is known as the "avoirdupois [äv'ədəpoi'z] weight", and there are other weights for weighing drugs [drūgz], gold, silver [sīl'və], and precious [prēsh'əs] stones.

(12) The weight that is used for weighing drugs and medicines [mēd'sīnz] is known as the "apothecaries'

[əpöth/'iköriz] weight", and the weight used for weighing silver, gold, etc. is known as the "troy [troi] weight". (13) A pound in both the troy weight and the apothecaries' weight has 12 ounces or 5,760 grains [grānz], while a pound in avoirdupois weight has 16 ounces or 7,000 grains. (14) In troy weight 24 grains equal one pennyweight [pén/'iwāt], and 20 pennyweights equal one ounce. (15) The difference between the apothecaries' weight and the troy weight is that the apothecaries' weight has more denominations [dīnöm/'inā"shənz] between the ounce and the grain.

(16) In weighing diamonds and other precious stones, the unit is carat [kär'/ət], which is equal to 3.168 troy grains. (17) A carat is divided into quarters, which are called carat-grains [kär''ət-grā'nz].

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. <i>dry measure</i>: 乾量(量穀類用)。
<i>liquid measure</i>: 液質容量。</p> | <p>重衡,常衡。
drug [drüg]: 藥,藥材,藥料。</p> |
| <p>2. pint [pīnt]: 品脫。(簡寫 pt.)
quart [kwōr]: 夸爾。(簡寫 qt.)
peck [pëk]: 配客。(簡寫 pk.)
bushel [būsh'əl, 或 lūsh'əl]: 蒲式耳。(簡寫 bu.)
gill [jīl]: 及耳。
gallon [gāl'ən]: 加倫。</p> | <p>silver [sī.'və]: 銀。
precious [prësh'əs]: 寶貴的。
—<i>precious stone</i>: 寶石。</p> |
| <p>3. wine [wīn]: 葡萄酒,酒。
liquor [lik'ə]: 酒類。</p> | <p>12. medicine [méd'sīn, mēd'īsīn, 或 -sɪ]: 藥,藥物。 [劑師。
apothecary [əpöth/'ikəri]: 藥
troy [tro] weight: 金銀衡。</p> |
| <p>4. decimal [dös'iməl]: 十進法;小
5. acre [ä'kə]: 英畝。 [數的,</p> | <p>13. grain [grān]: 英釐。(簡寫 gr.)
14. pennyweight [pén/'iwāt]: 辨士重。(簡寫 dwt.)</p> |
| <p>11. avoirdupois [äv'o.lopoi'z]: 貨重。—<i>avoirdupois weight</i>: 貨</p> | <p>15. denomination [dīnöm/'inā"shən]: 分級的單位,單位名稱。
16. carat [kär'/ət]: 克辣。 [辣釐。
17. carat-grain [kär''ət-grā'n]: 克</p> |

講義

(A) 一市畝等於六千平方市尺,但三市尺等於一公尺,九平方市尺始等於一平方公尺,所以一市畝等於 666 $\frac{2}{3}$ 平方公尺,即 0 $\frac{2}{3}$ 公畝。 「大寫。

(B) troy weight 的名是由於法國 Troyes [trwah] 城得來的,但 t 字不用

(C) 注意 gill 一字有兩個意義,讀音也不同: 作量器的名稱用時讀 [jil], 但作“魚鰓”或“頰下肉”解時則讀 [gɪl]。

練習

【背誦】

單數	複數	單數	複數
pint	pints	quart	quarts
peck	pecks	bushel	bushels
gill	gills	gallon	gallons
wine	wines (多種的酒)	liquor	liquors
acre	acres	drug	drugs
silver	silvers (銀幣,銀器)	medicine	medicines
apothecary	apothecaries	grain	grains
denomination	denominations	carat	carats
carat-grain	carat-grains	weight	weights

【造句】造五句詢問句,先用肯定的敘述子句,然後用極短的否定詢問子句附在末尾;又把敘述子句變成否定的,詢問子句變成肯定的。

LESSON 45

“A Day in March,” etc.

1. A DAY IN MARCH

It is the first mild [mild] day of March (1)

Each minute sweeter [swō'tə] than before; (2)

The redbreast [rĕd'brĕst] sings from the larch (3)
[lārch]

That stands beside our door. (4)

—*William Wordsworth* [wīl'yəm wĕr'dzwəth].

II. A VIOLET BY A MOSSY STONE

A violet [vī'əlīt] by a mossy [mōs'ī] stone (5)

Half hidden from the eye; (6)

Fair [fār] as a star, when only one (7)

Is shining in the sky. (8)

—*William Wordsworth*.

III. APRIL RAIN

(1) It isn't raining rain to me, (9)

It's raining daffodils [dāf'ədīlz]; (10)

In every dimpled [dīm'pld] drop I see (11)

Wild [wild] flowers on the hills; (12)

The clouds of gray engulf [īngūlf'] the day (13)

And overwhelm [ō'vəwhĕlm"] the town; (14)

It isn't raining rain to me, (15)

It is raining roses down. (16)

2) It isn't raining rain to me, (17)

But fields of clover [klō'vō] bloom [blōōm] (18)

Where every buccaneering bee [buk'ənēr'īng bē] (19)

May find a bed and room; (20)

A health [hĕlth] unto [ūn'tōō] the happy! (21)

A fig [fīg] for him who frets! (22)

It isn't raining rain to me, (23)

It's raining violets. (24)

—*Robert Loveman* [rōb'ət lŭv'mən].

生 字

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. mild [mild]: 溫和。〔知更鳥。 | 13. engulf [ɪŋgʌlf, ɒn-]: 吞入。 |
| 3. redbreast [rɛd'brɛst]: (紅胸), | 14. overwhelm [ō'vəwhɛlm'']: 沈 |
| larch [lɑrch]: 落葉松。 | 18. clover [klɔ'vɔ]: 三葉草。〔苜。 |
| 5. violet [vī'ɔlɪt]: 紫羅蘭; 青紫色。 | bloom [blɔ̄m]: 花; 開花。 |
| mossy [mɔs'i]: 多苔的。 | 19. buccaneer [būk'əneɪ'']: 海賊 |
| 7. fair [fāɪ]: 美麗。〔仙花。 | (名詞); 偷竊(云謂詞)。 |
| 10. daffodil [dāf'ədɪl]: 淡黃的水 | bee [bi:]: 蜜蜂。〔頌。 |
| 11. dimple [dɪm'pl]: 顴頰窩(名 | 21. health [hɛlθ]: 健康; 健康之祝 |
| 詞); 壓之成窩(云謂詞)。 | unto [ʊn'tu:]: 與, 交與, 至於。 |
| 12. wild [wɪld]: 野的。 | 22. fig [fɪg]: 無花果; 無價值的東西。 |

講 義

(A) William Wordsworth 是十九世紀的英國浪漫派詩人之領袖。他最愛自然, 本課所選兩首雖不是代表其最優美的作品, 但也很可以看出他的嗜好所在。

(B) Robert Loveman 係美國南部的人, 也是一個歌頌自然之美的詩人。

(C) 本課的第二首詩只是一個名詞及許多形容詞短語, *by a mossy tone* 形容它所處的位置, *half hidden from the eye* 說明它在該處的情狀, *fair as a star, when only one is shining in the sky* 是把它舉來與天上的孤星比美。但這是詩, 常可因音節的關係而不照文法的規則。

(D) *every dimpled drop* 的 *dimpled* 並不是說雨點被壓成窩, 是說它滴在水面上使水成渦, 如頰窩然。

(E) *buccaneering bee* 言蜂之採蜜頗似偷劫。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 41—45):

1. The **emphatic pronouns** and the **reflexive pronouns** have the same form, their difference depends upon how they are used.
2. They all have *self* or *selves* added to them, so they are also called the **self-pronouns**.
3. When a **self-pronoun** is used in apposition with the

subject of a sentence, it is an **emphatic pronoun**; and when it is used as the **direct or indirect object of a transitive verb**, it is called a **reflexive pronoun**, because it refers back to the same person as the **subject of the verb**.

4. Each of the Greek gods had certain symbols of his power, certain objects sacred to him, and a certain place for his abode.
5. Their abodes were the places of their worship, and their sacred objects must be well treated, otherwise the one who did not well treat them would be punished.
6. The metric system of **weights and measures** is **very simple**, because it goes by decimal.
7. Its units are *metre, litre, gramme, and are*.
8. Among the terms of the long measure in metric system the following are most commonly used: *kilometre, metre, centimetre, and millimetre*.
9. The terms for the surface measure are *centure, are, and hectare*.
10. Among the measure of capacity the following terms are common: *hectostere, store* or *kilolitre, hectolitre, decilitre, litre*.
11. Among the weight measure, the following terms are the most common ones: *gramme, kilogramme, quintal, and millier* or *tonneau*.
12. The English have at least four systems of weights, the "avoirdupois weight" for all kinds of purposes, the "troy weight" for gold, silver and other precious metals, the "apothecaries' weight" for drugs and medicines, and the "carat" for precious stones.

13. For the measure of capacity the English have two systems: the dry measure and the liquid measure.
14. The terms of the English dry measure are *pint*, *quart*, *peck*, and *bushel*, those of the liquid measure are *gills*, *pint*, *quart*, and *gallon*.
15. How do you like the weather today?
16. Oh, I suppose everybody likes mild weather.
17. Do you like wild flowers?
18. Oh yes, look, here they are: violets, daffodils, clover bloom, etc., and even wild roses have I found.

* * *

LESSON 46

The Rise of Knighthood

(1) The Romans were great fighters, and conquered many countries. (2) But with their conquests [kǒng'/kwěsts], their social organization [ôr'gonizā'shən] became weakened [wō'kənd]. (3) Their own generals [jěn'ərəlz] then did away with their republican [rĭpŭb'lĭkən] government and made themselves emperors. (4) This further weakened the country, which was finally invaded [ĭnvā'd-ĭd] by the barbarians [bārbār'ĭənz] from the North.

(5) With the barbarian invasion [ĭnvā'zhən] feudalism [fū'dəlĭzm] developed. (6) That is, the conquerors [kǒng'/kərəz] became the protectors of, and rulers over, the conquered, who in return for the protection [prətĕk'shən] tilled [tĭld] the ground for their rulers. (7) These conquerors were the lords [lōrdz] or noblemen [nō'blmən],

while the conquered were the serfs [sêrfs]. (8) The nobles [nô/blz] spent most of their time in fighting, and out of the fighting developed the chivalry [shîv'êlrî], or knight-hood [nî't-hööd], which is sometimes called the "flower of feudalism". (9) Although knight-hood was an aristocratic [är'îstokrät'ïk] order and any nobleman might become a knight by special training [trā'nîng], yet a man of humble [hūm/bl] birth might be knighted [nî'tîd] too, if he did some unusually brave deeds [brāv dēdz].

(10) The knight [nî] must live pure, honour women, help the distressed [dîstrēst'], right the wrong [rōng], defend [dîfēnd'] the church, and follow the king to defend the country. (11) A knight was a horseman [hôr'smən], that was why knight-hood was called chivalry, for chivalry formerly meant horseman.

(12) When a knight did something not honourable [ōn'ərəbl], he might be expelled [îkspēld'] from the order. (13) However, although there were few knights who lived up to all the ideals of knight-hood, yet fewer still were expelled from the order. (14) Here are three lines by Samuel Taylor Coleridge [sām'ool tã'lo kō'lri:] on knight-hood:

(15) *The knight's bones¹ are dust,
And his good sword rust²;—
His soul³ is with the saints,⁴ I trust.*

¹ [bōnz] ² [rüst] ³ [sōl] ⁴ [sānts]

生 字

2. **conquest** [kɔŋg'kwēst, qu 讀 kw]: 征服。(名詞)
organization [ɔr'gənīzā'-shən]: 組織。

weaken [wē'kæn]: 使弱。
3. **general** [jən'ərəl]: 將軍。
do away with: 除去。 [主的。
republican [rîpüb'likən]: 民

4. **invade** [ɪnvə'd]: 侵略, 侵入。
(云謂詞)
- **barbarian** [bɑ:bə'ri:ən]: 夷狄, 半開化的民族。
5. **invasion** [ɪnvə'zɪən]: 侵略。
(名詞) 「度。」
- feudalism** [fū'delɪzəm]: 封建制
6. **conqueror** [kɒŋg/kərə, 或 -krə, 注意 qn 讀 k 音]: 征服者。
the conquered: 被征服者。
in return for: 以報答。
- protection** [prə'tɒk/shən]: 保護
- till** [tɪl]: 耕種, 「護」(名詞)
7. **lord** [lɔ:d]: 主人; 貴族。
nobleman [nəʊ/blmən]: 貴族中人。(複數 -men [-mən])
serf [sɜ:f]: 農奴。(複數 *serfs* [sɜ:fɪs])
8. **noble** [nəʊ/bl]: 貴族中人。
chivalry [ʃɪv'əbrɪ]: 歐洲中世紀武士階級的制度及其精神。
knighthood [nɪ't-hōəd]: 武士的資格或制度。 「貴族的。」
9. **aristocratic** [ɑ:rɪ'stəkrətɪk]:
order [ɔ:'dɔ:]: 階級。
- training** [trə'nɪŋ]: 訓練,
humble [hʌm/bl]: 低微的,
knight [nɪt]: 武士(名詞)使成武士(云謂詞)。
brave [bræv]: 勇敢的,
deed [di:d]: 行爲。
10. **honour** [ɒn'ə]: 尊敬。(云謂詞)
distress [dɪ'strɒs/]: 憂患; 遭憂患。——*the distressed*: 受難者。
right [raɪt]: 使公平。(云謂詞)
wrong [rɒŋg]: 寬仇, 枉曲,
defend [dɪ'fɛnd/]: 守衛, 保護。
11. **horseman** [hɔ:s/mən]: 騎馬的人, 騎士。(複數 -men [-mən])
12. **honourable**, 或 **honorable** [ɒn'ərəbl]: 可尊敬的,
expel [ɪkspəl', ɒks-]: 逐出。
13. *live up to*: 依~而行。
14. *Samuel Taylor Coleridge* [səm'ɔʊəl taylor kɔ'lɪrɪdʒ]: 人名。
15. **bone** [bəʊn]: 骨。
dust [dʌst]: 塵埃。
rust [rʌst]: 鏽。
soul [səʊl]: 靈魂。
saint [saɪnt]: 聖人。

講 義

(A) 第 6 句 *protectors of, and rulers over, the conquered = protectors of the conquered and rulers over the conquered.*

(B) *lord* 一字嚴格地講是貴族中的爵位之一種, 但可用以泛指貴族。 *saint* 乃指基督教的聖人或信徒, 若言“聖賢”, 須用 *sage* [sɑ:ʒ] 一字。

(C) 第 12 句的 *not honourable* 不僅是“不是尊敬的”, 而且含有“不名譽的”的意思。

(D) *And his good sword rust = And his good sword is rust.*

(E) *Samuel Taylor Coleridge* 與 *William Wordsworth* 同為浪漫派詩人的領袖。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	invade	invaded	invaded
	expel	expelled	expelled
	單 數	複 數	單 數 複 數
	nobleman	noblemen	chivalry —
	horseman	horsemen	knighthood —
	serf	serfs	feudalism —
【造句】	(1) to start with	(4) serves her right	
	(2) settle down	(5) right-handed	
	(3) no matter	(6) by no means	

LESSON 47

Knighthood and Europeans' Manners

(1) Although knighthood passed away long ago, in the fifteenth century [sēn'chōō:ī], yet much of what was best in it continues to live even today. (2) It also out-lives [owtlīvz'] itself in languages and manners.

(3) The knight's gallantry [gāl'ōntrī] toward women is still to be found in the conduct [kōn'dəkt] of a gentleman today. (4) To give seat [sēt] to a lady in the bus, tram, etc. is but one instance, and to attend to a lady's wishes in a party, but another.

(5) The truthfulness [trōō'thfōōlnīs] of a knight's word must not be questioned, he usually swore upon his honour, and today we still find the same with a gentleman's word, which must be taken at par [pār]. (6) When a gentleman says "Upon my honour, it was so" or

“Upon my honour I will do it”, we must not question him again as to the truth of the case or his willingness [wɪl'ɪŋnɪs] to do it.

(7) In the age of chivalry, if two knights quarrelled, they did not go to court [kɔːt], they fought it out among themselves. (8) Usually one of them would throw [θrɔː] down his gauntlet [gaw'nʌtlɪt], which meant a challenge [tʃæl'ɪnʃ] to the other knight to fight, and the other knight would pick up the gauntlet, which meant he accepted the challenge. (9) The time and place of the duel [dū'əl], as such a fight is called, would also be named, when the knight picked up the gauntlet. (10) At present the German university [ū'nɪvɛr'sɪtɪ] students still often fight out their differences with duels. (11) And we still speak of issuing [ɪʃ'uːɪŋ] and accepting a challenge as respectively throwing, or flinging [flɪŋ'ɪŋ], down the gauntlet and picking, or taking, up the gauntlet.

(12) In those days of frequent [frɛ'kwɒnt] warfare [wɑː'fɑː] and unsettled [ʌn'sɛt'ld] conditions, it was a matter of course that a knight was always fully armed and ready to lay his hand on his weapon [wɛp'ən]. (13) But when he saw a friend, he would raise his helmet [hɛl'mɪt] and hold out his empty hand to grasp [græsp] his friend's. (14) From such practices grew the western custom of taking off one's hat, and shaking [ʃhɑː'kɪŋ] hands when one meets his friends.

生 字

1. century [sɛn'tʃɪrɪ]: 世紀。
2. outlive [aʊtlɪv]: 活得比~久。
3. gallantry [gæl'æntɪrɪ]: 豪俠，對於婦女之有禮貌。

- conduct [kɒn'dʌkt]: 行爲。
4. seat [si:t]: 座位。
attend to: 注意,留心,服務。
5. truthfulness [trʊθ'fʊlnɪs]: 無可疑議。
question [kwɛs'tʃən]: 疑問。
(云謂詞)
swear upon: 指~爲誓。
honour [ɒn'ə]: 名譽。
par [pɑ:]: 額面的價。——at par: 與額面同價。 [意。
6. willingness [wɪl'ɪŋnɪs]: 願
7. court [kɔ:rt]: 法庭。——go to court: 起訴,涉訟。
fight it out: 解決。
8. throw [θrəʊ]: 擲,拋擲。(過去時制 threw [θrəʊ], 過去分詞 thrown [θrəʊn])
gauntlet [gaw'ntlɪt]: 武士的手套。
9. challenge [tʃæl'ɪnʃ]: 要求;挑
duel [dju:əl]: 決鬪。 [戰。
name [neɪm]: 指定。 [學。
10. university [ˌju:nɪvɜ:ˈsɪti]: 大
11. issue [ɪ'ʃu:]: 發出。
fling [flɪŋ]: 投,擲。(過去時制及過去分詞 flung [flʌŋ])
12. frequent [frɛ'kwɛnt]: 常常的,
warfare [wɔ:ˈfɛə]: 戰爭。
unsettled [ʌn'sɛtld]: 不安靖。
a matter of course: 當然的事。
weapon [wɛp'ən]: 武器。
13. helmet [hɛl'mɪ]: 頭盔。
hold out his empty hand: 伸出空手。
grasp [græsp]: 握,執。
14. shake [ʃeɪk]: 搖,搖動。(過去時制 shook [ʃʊk], 過去分詞 shaken [ʃeɪkən])——shake hands: 握手,拉手。

講 義

(A) 第2句的意義是：“在語言及禮貌方面，這歐洲中世紀的武士制度留存得比它自身更久”。

(B) attend to 不只是“留心,注意”，並含有“服務”的意義。 [保”。

(C) “upon my honour”不是“指我的名譽發誓”，而是“以我的名譽擔

(D) fight it out 並不一定是“以爭論解決某種的爭執”，雖則在第7句中是作此解。這個成語有時可作“作戰到底”，“奮鬥到底”的意思講。

(E) warfare (“戰事”)指戰爭的情形，而 war (“戰爭”)則專指打仗。

練 習

[背誦]	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	throw	threw	thrown
	fling	flung	flung
	shake	shook	shaken

單數	複數	單數	複數
century	centuries	gallantry	——
challenge	challenges	willingness	——
university	universities	truthfulness	——
gauntlet	gauntlets	warfare	——

LESSON 48

How to Read Fractions

- S: (1) I have a question to ask, sir.
- T: (2) What is it?
- S: (3) We have learned the names of some fractions [frāk'shonz], for instance, *one-third*, *two-thirds*, *one-tenth*, *one-one-hundredth*, etc., would you please give us some rules as to how to read such fractions as these: $\frac{3}{8}$, $\frac{9}{16}$, $\frac{5}{32}$?
- T: (4) That's easy, let me first teach you how to read these three fractions, and then the rules. (5) The first fraction reads "three-eighths", the second, "nine-sixteenths", and the third, "five-thirty-seconds". (6) Can you form the rule yourself now?
- (7) We first read the numerator [nū'merāto], and then the denominator [dīnōm'īnāto].
- T: (8) Yes, but how do you read the numerator, and the denominator?
- S: (9) We read the numerator as a cardinal [kār'dīnl] number and the denominator as an ordinal [ōr'dīnl] number.
- T: (10) And how do you express the plural number in the numerator?

- S: (11) By adding *s* at the end of the denominator.
- T: (12) Yes, do you know how to read fractions now, for instance, $\frac{9}{10}$, $\frac{5}{41}$?
- S: (13) Nine-tenths, five-forty-firsts.
- T: (14) You are right.
- S: (15) I have another question to ask, it has something to do with numbers too?
- T: (16) What is it?
- S: (17) It's times. (18) We say "once" for one time, but what do we say for two times, three times, etc.?
- T: (19) For two times, we say "twice" [twɪs] or "two times"; for three times, "thrice" [θrɪs] or "three times"; for four, five, six, etc. times, we just say so many times. (20) Is this clear to you?
- S: (21) Yes, but what about these words, "twofold" [tʊoʊfɔld], "threefold" [θriːfɔld], "manifold" [mænɪfɔld], etc.?
- T: (22) They mean "made up of two, three, many parts", etc., and they may also mean twice, thrice, many times, etc.
- S: (23) And "double", "triple" [trɪpl̩], "quadruple" [kwɔdr̩pl̩]?
- T: (24) "Double" means twice as much or to put two parts together; "triple", threefold or to put three parts together; "quadruple", fourfold or to put four parts together.

生 字

3. **fraction** [f. ʌkʃən]: 分数。
 7. **numerator** [nūmərətə]: 分子。

denominator [dɪnɔmɪnətə]: 分母。 [基数。
 9. **cardinal** [kɑrdɪnəl, 或 -nəl]:

- ordinal** [ɔr'di:nl, 或 -nəl]: 序數。
19. **twice** [twi:s]: 兩倍。
thrice [θri:s]: 三倍。
21. **twofold** [tu:/'fɔld]: 二重的, 二倍的。
- threefold** [θri:/'fɔld]: 三重的, 三倍的。 [的。]
23. **manifold** [mæn/'i:fɔld]: 多倍。
triple [tri:p'l]: 三個所合成的。
quadruple [kwɔd/'rʌpl]: 四個所合成的。

講 義

- (A) 本課中的問答前之 T 和 S, 代指 Teacher 與 Student。
 (B) 像 這類的分數, 除了數學以外很少用。

練 習

- 【造句】 (1) as to (3) even though
 (2) as if (4) regarding

【作文】 寫一封信給你的母親, 敘述你日常的生活。

LESSON 49

History of the English Language

(1) The first historic people in Great Britain were the Celts [kɛltz]. (2) The Romans discovered and conquered them in the first century B.C. (3) They stationed their garrisons [gær'isnz] there and brought the Roman civilization to the Celts. (4) At the beginning of the 5th century A.D. the Roman soldiers were withdrawn [wɪd'draʊ'n] from Britain to fight the invading barbarians. (5) Thus the Celts were left defenceless [dɪfɛns'lɪs].

(6) Soon they were conquered by the Angles [æŋ'glz] and Saxons [sæks'snz] who call the Celts "Welsh" [wɛlsh].

which means foreigners. (7) The Anglo-Saxons [äng'glō-sāk'snz], as these conquering tribes [tribz] are called, drove the Celts to the mountains and the wilds [wīldz]. (8) Today we still find the Welsh in the western part of Britain, called Wales [wālz], and the Welsh, the Irish and the Scotch Highlanders [hī'lændəz] still speak the Celtic [kēl'tik] language.

(9) These Anglo-Saxons were in turn conquered by the Normans [nōr'monz]. (10) The Normans were originally [orij'ənəli] a Scandinavian [skän'dīnā'vyən] people, but they had settled down in the northern part of France, called Normandy [nōr'məndī], and spoke a sort of French called the Norman French. (11) In the 11th century they crossed the English Channel [chän'l] and conquered Britain.

(12) The Anglo-Saxons spoke a branch of Low German, of which the Dutch is also a branch. (13) This Anglo-Saxon language which prevailed [prīvā'ld] in the country from the 5th to the 12th centuries is called the Old English. (14) The Old English had many inflections.

(15) After the Norman conquest, the Anglo-Saxons absorbed [əbsōr'bd] many French words from the Normans, and the Old English lost most of its inflections. (16) This period of transition [trānsīsh'ən] lasted [lah'st-īd] till the 16th century, and is called the Middle English Period.

(17) Beginning from the 16th century to the present day we have Modern [mōd'ən] English. (18) The Modern English has grown out of the Old English of the Anglo-Saxons, the Norman French, and the scholar's Latin. (19) For during the Middle Ages, all learned [lē'r'nīd]

men in Europe read and wrote in Latin. (20) Although the Modern English has borrowed more than half of its words from the French and Latin, yet its grammar and the most often used words are Anglo-Saxon.

生 字

- Celt** [kɛlt]: 大不列顛島在歷史上最早的居民。
3. **station** [stā'shən]: 屯兵。(云謂詞) [備隊。
garrison [gār'ɪsn]: 衛戍兵, 守
4. **withdraw** [wɪd'ɪdrəʊ]: 撤退, 收回。(過去時制 *withdrew* [wɪd'ɪdrəʊ], 過去分詞 *withdrawn* [wɪd'ɪdrəʊn])
5. **defenceless** [dɪ'fɛns'lis]: 無保護的。
6. **Angle** [æŋ'gl]: 盎格魯人。
Saxon [sæk'sn, 或 -sən]: 撒克遜人。
7. **Anglo-Saxon** [æŋ'glō-sæk'sn]: Angle 與 Saxon 人之合稱。
tribe [trɪb]: 部族。
wilds [wɪldz]: 荒野的地方。
8. **Wales** [wəlz]: 威爾斯。
highlander [hɪ'laɪndə]: 高原的人。 [的,]
Celtic [kɛl'tɪk]: 屬於 Celt 人
9. **in turn**: 依着秩序, 輪流。
Norman [nɔr'mən]: 腦門人。
10. **originally** [ərɪj'məlɪ]: 本來地, 原始地。
Scandinavian [skæn'dɪnə'vɪən]: 屬於 Scandinavia (斯干的那維亞, 即挪威, 瑞典, 丹麥諸國之總稱) 的, 或該地的人。
Normandy [nɔr'mændi]: 腦門底 (地名, 在法國北部)。
Norman French: 腦門人的法語。
11. **cross** [krɔs]: 越過(路或海等)。
channel [chæn'l, 或 -nəl]: 海峽, 河道。——*the English Channel*: 英吉利海峽。
13. **prevail** [prɪvəɪl]: 通行。
Old English: 古代英文。
15. **absorb** [əbsɔr'b]: 吸收。 [渡。
16. **transition** [trænsɪ'sh'ən]: 過
last [lɑst]: 存在。(云謂詞)
Middle English: 中古英文。
17. *Modern English*: 現代英文。
18. **Latin** [lætɪn]: 拉丁文。
19. *the Middle Ages*: 中古時代。
learned [lɛr'nɪd]: 有學問的。(形容詞)

講 義

(A) England (英格蘭) 乃 Angle-land 兩字所合成的。

(B) channel 與 canal 同作“河道”解, 但 canal 是專指人工開鑿的(如“運河”), 而 channel 則否。

練 習

- 【背誦】 現在時制 過去時制 過去分詞
 withdraw withdrew withdrawn
- 單 數 複 數
- Norman Normans (非 Normen)
- 【造句】 (1) in turn (3) social status (5) by lot
 (2) fall in love (4) look after
- 【作文】 Tell the story of Apollo's Lyre in English in less than ten sentences.

LESSON 50

Comparison

(1) **Adjectives** and **adverbs** are inflected, as we have already seen, to show the **three degrees of comparison**: the **positive**, the **comparative**, and the **superlative**. (2) For the inflection of degrees, **adjectives** and **adverbs** may be divided into three groups: (A) those which add *er* and *est* to form respectively the **comparative** and the **superlative degrees**; (B) those which use adverbs *more* and *most* to form the **comparative** and the **superlative degrees**; and (C) those which form their **comparative** and **superlative degrees** in an **irregular** [irreg'ulɔ] way.

(3) To the first group belong **adjectives** and **adverbs** of one syllable and some of two syllables. (4) When, however, a word in the **positive degree** ends in *e*, only *r* and *st* are added to form the other two degrees, thus: *nice*, *nicer*,

*nice*st. (5) When a word in the **positive degree** ends in *y*, which follows a vowel, the **comparative** and **superlative degrees** are formed in the regular way, thus: *gay* [gā], *gay*er [gā'ə], *gay*est [gā'ist]; but when the *y* follows a consonant it is changed into *i* before we add *er* and *est*, e.g. *happy*, *happier*, *happiest*.

(6) To the second group belong **adjectives** and **adverbs** of two or more syllables. (7) It will be seen that among **adjectives** and **adverbs** of two syllables, some form their **comparative** and **superlative degrees** by adding *er* and *est*, while others, with *more* and *most*, thus: *cunning*, *more cunning*, *most cunning*. (8) All **adverbs** ending in *ly* form their **comparative** and **superlative degrees** with *more* and *most*, the only exception is the word *early*; e.g. *quietly*, *more quietly*, *most quietly*, but *early*, *earlier*, *earliest*.

(9) Each word in the **comparative degree** is followed by *than* and a **noun** or **pronoun** to show with what it is compared, thus: (10) **You are wiser than I (am)**. (11) **This was more carefully done than that (was carefully done)**. (12) But sometimes the object compared is understood; for example: (13) **It looks much better now (than it looked a while ago)**.

(14) The **superlative** is usually followed by a **prepositional phrase** beginning with *of* or *among*, thus: (15) **Mr. Low [lō] is the richest among us here**. (16) **The rose looks most real of all the artificial [aɪ'tɪʃɪəl] flowers that I have seen**. (17) Very often we put the **prepositional phrase** at the beginning of the sentence, though sometimes it, being understood, is omitted.

(18) Most of the **adjectives** and **adverbs** which are **irregular** in forming the **comparative** and **superlative**

edges we have already learned. (19) Here are a few more that are commonly used.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
in	inner	innermost
out	outer	outermost, or uttermost
up	upper	uppermost
late	later, or latter	latest, or last
near	nearer	nearest, or next

(20) There are other ways of comparison, for instance:

(21) X is as good as Y, but not so good as Z. (22) A is as good as B is bad.

(23) Some **adjectives** and **adverbs**, because of their meaning, cannot be compared, for instance: *square, circle, verticle, horizontal, one, six, third, fourth, once, twice, all*, etc. (24) However, we may say “*more nearly square, circle, etc.*” or “*more than one, ten, thrice, six times, etc.*”

生 字

2. irregular [ɪrɒg'ʊlə]: 不規則	innermost [ɪn'əmɔ:st]: 最內
5. gay [gā]: 歡樂的。 [的。]	outer [aʊ'tə]: 較外的。 [的。]
gayer [gā'ə]: 較歡樂的。	uttermost [ʌ'tə'nɔ:st]: 最外的。
gayest [gā'ɪst]: 最歡樂的。	utmost [ʌ'tmɔ:st]: 至極的。
16. artificial [ɑ'tɪʃiəl]: 人工	upper [ʌp'ə]: 較高的。 [的。]
19. inner [ɪn'ə]: 較內的。 [的。]	uppermost [ʌ'əmɔ:st]: 最高

講 義

(A) 最級後的介詞短語放在句首時，含有特別強調的意義。

(B) *next* 由“其次”變為“最近”的是因為：依位置講，“其次”確是“最近”的。例如從 A 座算過去，其次為 B 座，再其次為 C 座，等等，而諸座位中 B 座確為最近 A 座者。

(C) *later* 是指時間，*latter* 是指空間而言。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 46—50):

1. The Romans were great fighters, but their conquests of other countries weakened their own country.
2. First their generals made themselves emperors, and finally they themselves were conquered by the barbarians.
3. After the barbarian invasion feudalism developed, and all the people were divided into two classes: the nobles and the serfs.
4. Knighthood is sometimes called the "flower of feudalism", its ideals were to lead a pure life, honour women, help the distressed, right the wrong, defend the church, and follow the king to defend the country.
5. It was an aristocratic order, but a person of humble birth might also be knighted, if he had done some unusually brave deeds.
6. Although knighthood passed long ago, yet it outlives itself today in languages and manners.
7. Truthfulness, sense of honour, chivalry toward women, taking off one's hat, shaking hands, etc. are but a few among the social manners which have come down to us from knighthood.
8. In the English language, one still speaks of issuing and accepting a challenge as throwing, or flinging, down and picking, or taking, up a gauntlet.
9. Here is the rule for reading a fraction: First read the numerator as a cardinal number and then the denominator as an ordinal number; when the numera-

- tor is greater than one, add *s* to the denominator.
10. Here are a few words having something to do with numbers which it will be useful for one to learn: *once, twice, thrice; double, triple, quadruple; and twofold, threefold, etc., manifold.*
 11. The first historic people in Great Britain were the Celts, whom the Romans discovered and conquered long ago.
 12. When the Romans withdrew their garrisons from Great Britain to fight the barbarians in the fifth century, the Celts were left defenceless and soon conquered by the Angles and Saxons, who were, in turn, conquered by the Normans in the eleventh century.
 13. The Modern English developed out of the Anglo-Saxon language, which had many inflections and is known as the Old English; the French, which was introduced by the Normans; and the scholar's Latin. The English during the period of transition is known as the Middle English.
 14. **Adjectives** and **adverbs** are inflected to show the **comparative** and the **superlative degrees**; when they are not inflected, they are said to be in the **positive degree**.
 15. They are inflected in three ways to show the **comparative** and the **superlative degrees**: by adding *er* and *est*, by using **adverbs** *more* and *most*, and by irregular ways.
 16. The **comparative degree** is used when we compare two objects, thus: *A is greater or smaller, better or worse, dearer or cheaper, etc. than B.*

17. The **superlative degree** is used when we compare three or more objects, thus *Z is the best or worst, biggest or smallest, etc. of them all.*
18. We may also compare things of the **same degree**, thus *N is as good as L*; or *not of the same degree*, thus *N is not as (or so) bad as M.*
19. Note that we always have to give the object or objects with which another object is compared: *than B, of them all, as L, as M.*
20. Here are a few **adjectives** and **adverbs** which form their **comparative** and **superlative degrees** in an irregular way:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
in	inner	innermost
out	outer	outermost, or uttermost
up	upper	uppermost
late	later, or latter	latest, or last
near	nearer	nearest, or next

21. Some **adjectives** and **adverbs**, by their nature, cannot be compared, thus we may say *more than one*, but not *more one than...*, we may not say *more verticle, horizontal, etc. than*, but we may say *more nearly verticle, horizontal, etc. than.*

* * *

LESSON 51

Early English Literature

(1) The English literature began with the Celts, who were Christianized [krɪs'tʃənɪzɪd] before the Anglo-Saxon

invasion. (2) When the Anglo-Saxons invaded the land they found a great hero in King Arthur [ɑr'thə], who tried to save the land from the invaders. (3) His deeds served as the theme [thōm] of many a masterpiece [mah's-təpēs] in English literature.

(4) The only pre-Christian epic [prō'krīs'chən ēp'ik] of the Anglo-Saxons that has come down to us complete is Beowulf [bā'ōwðolf], which is in two parts. (5) The first part tells us how Beowulf, hearing of the man-eating [mān'ē'tiŋg] monster which killed and ate some men every night in King Hrothgar's [hrōt'gəz] feasting hall in Denmark [dēn'mærk], went there and killed the monster. (6) The second part tells how Beowulf, after ruling his own land wisely for fifty years, killed and was killed by a dragon [dræg'on].

(7) By the end of the 6th century these Anglo-Saxons were Christianized. (8) And with the introduction of the art of writing by the monks [mūnks], the Anglo-Saxon literature flourished [flūr'jšht] in the North. (9) In the 8th century this leadership [lē'dəshīp] in literature passed from the North to Winchester [wɪn'chɪstə], the capital of King Alfred [æf'rɪd], in the South. (10) After the Norman Conquest, this southern leadership passed to the Midland [mɪd'lənd], or London, leadership, which began with Chaucer [chaw'sə] in the 15th century.

(11) The Hundred Years' War (1338—1453) between England and France over Normandy stimulated [stɪm'ū-lātid] the national [nāsh'nəl] spirit, and helped to fuse [fūz] the Anglo-Saxons and the Normans into one nation, and their languages into the Modern English. (12) But even before this, in the 13th century the rough [rʌf]

renderings [rɛn'dɔ:riŋgz] of the Norman French metrical tales [mɔ:/'ri:kl tɔ:lz] about these "great conquerors" into English were very popular. (13) They, too, helped to fuse the two languages into one. (14) All these paved the way for Chaucer, the first great English poet.

生 字

1. **Christianize** [ˈkrɪsʃənaɪz, 或 krɪs'tyənɪz]: 化為基督教的。
2. **Arthur** [ɑ:/'θɔ:]: 人名。——*King Arthur*: 半屬神話的英國古代國王。
3. **theme** [θi:m]: 題目。 [作] **masterpiece** [mɑ:'stɔ:pɛs]: 傑作。
4. **pre-Christian** [prɔ:'krɪsʃən]: 化為基督教以前的。
epic [ɛp'ɪk]: 敘述英雄事蹟的詩, 敘事詩, 詠史詩。
Beowulf [bi:u/'wɔ:lf]: 人名, 盎格魯撒克遜民族古代半神話的英雄, 敘述這位英雄的事蹟的詩。
5. **man-eating** [mæn'ɪ:tɪŋ]: 食人的。
Hrothgar [hrɔt/'gɑ:]: 人名。——*King Hrothgar*: 丹麥某處古代的王。 [國] **Denmark** [dɛn'mɑ:k]: 丹麥。
6. **dragon** [dræg'ɔ:n]: 龍。
8. **monk** [mʌnk]: 修道士, 和尚。
- flourish** [flʊr'ɪʃ]: 繁榮, 昌盛。(云謂詞) [的資格]。
9. **leadership** [li:də'shɪp]: 領袖。
Winchester [wɪn/'tʃɪstɔ:]: 英國南部的城。 [省城]。
capital [kæp'ɪtl, -təl]: 京城。
Alfred [æl'frɪd]: 人名。——*King Alfred*: 英國古代的王。
10. **Midland** [mɪd'lænd]: 英國中部的總稱。
Chaucer [tʃəu'sə:]: 人名, 英國古代詩人。 [興奮]。
11. **stimulate** [stɪm'jʊlət]: 刺激。
national [nəʃ'nəl]: 國家的, 民族的。
fuse [fju:z]: 融合。 [族的]。
12. **rough** [rʌf]: 粗的, 不精細的。
render [rɛn'dɔ:]: 翻譯。——*render ~ into English*: 將~譯成英文。
metrical [mɔ:/'ri:kl]: 有一定的音節的, 詩的。
tale [tɔ:l]: 敘事。

講 義

(A) many a masterpiece = many times a masterpiece = many masterpieces, 但注意 many a 之後的名詞及云謂詞均係單數。

(B) 我國舊時以龍為四靈之一, 但在西洋人則視為妖怪。

(C) 英文詩的“音節”叫 **metre**; metrical 乃 metre 的形容詞。

練 習

- 【造句】 (1) lose no time (6) in a hurry
 (2) most likely (7) get tired of it
 (3) is spoken of as (8) go without
 (4) indebted for . . . to (9) get invited
 (5) in honour of (10) get used to it.

LESSON 52

The Age of Chaucer

(1) The Hundred Years' War gave a chance [chahns] for the expression of popular discontent [dis'kɒntɒnt']. (2) Most notable [nɔ'təbl] example of this discontent was William Langland's [wil'yəm lændz] poem *Piers the Ploughman* [piəz dhə plow'mən]. (3) The Robin Hood ballads [rɔl'ɪn hʊd bəl'ɒdz] also showed how the people would rather welcome a good outlaw [əw'dəw] than a bad government.

(4) Different from these expressions of discontent was *The Travels of Sir John Mandeville* [jɒn mæn'dɒvɪl]. (5) The *Travels* was a translation from the French, and was an important contribution [kɒn'trɪbʊ'shən] to the English narrative prose [nær'ətɪv prəʊz].

(6) However, the greatest man of letters in this age was Geoffrey [jɛf'rɪ] Chaucer (1340—1400), the great narrative poet. (7) He was an all-round man—a business man, a traveller [træv'lə], a scholar, a courtier [kɔr'tɪr]—sharing all the stirring activities [stɪr'ɪŋ ɒktɪv'ɪtɪz] of

the time and reflecting them in literature. (8) He tried to imitate [ĩm'ĩtāt], in his writing, first the French, then the Italian, but finally he wrote his masterpiece, the *Canterbury* [kǎn'təbəri] *Tales*, in English.

(9) These tales are held together by the framework [frā'mwērk] of a pilgrimage [pĩl'grĩmĩj]. (10) At an inn [ĩn] just outside London, Chaucer joined a group of pilgrims [pĩl'grĩmz] going to Canterbury. (11) The inn-keeper [ĩn'kō'pə] offered to go with them and be their guide. (12) He also proposed [prəpō'zɔ] that each pilgrim should tell two stories on their way to Canterbury and two more on their way back. (13) He would be their judge and the one who told the best tale would be given a free supper in his honour when they came back. (14) They all agreed to the proposal [prəpō'zəl] and the thirty pilgrims set out on their journey [jēr'nĩ], telling their tales as they travelled. (15) This is the framework of the *Canterbury Tales*. (16) But not all the pilgrims kept their promise, or rather Chaucer did not live to finish the work as he planned it, so there are only twenty-four tales.

(17) Chaucer was realistic [riəlĩs'tĩk] and humorous [hũ'mərəs], and he had great love for nature too.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. chance [chahns]: 機會, 偶然的機緣。 [滿意。] | ploughman [plow'men]: 犁田的人。 [斯(詩名)。 |
| discontent [dis'kontənt]: 不滿意。 | <i>Piers the Ploughman</i> : 農夫皮爾 |
| 2. notable [nō'təbl]: 可注意的。 | 3. Robin Hood [rɔb'ĩn hōd]: 英國古代的俠盜。 |
| <i>William Langland</i> [wĩl'yəm lǎng'lænd]: 人名, 英國古代詩人, 1332年生, 1400年死。 | ballad [bəl'əd]: 民間的歌謠。 |
| Piers [pērz]: 人名。 | outlaw [ow'tlaw]: (法律以外的人), 匪徒, 盜賊。 |

4. **Sir** [sɪ]: 男爵。(第一字母常用大寫)
John Mandeville [dʒɒn mæn'dəvɪl]: 人名, 生卒年代不詳。
5. **contribution** [kɒn'trɪbʊʃən]: 貢獻。 [事的。
narrative [nær'ətɪv]: 敘述故事。
prose [ˈprəʊz]: 散文。
6. **letters** [lɪtəz]: 文學。—— *man of letters*: 文人。
Jeffrey [dʒɛ'frɪ]: 人名。
7. **all-round** [əw'l-rou'nd]: 面面齊全。萬能的, 多才多藝。
courtier [kɔ:'tɪə]: 朝廷中人。
stir [stɪ]: 騷動。 [情。
activity [æk'tɪvɪtɪ]: 行動, 事。
8. **imitate** [ɪmɪ'teɪt]: 模仿。
- Canterbury** [kæn'təbəri]: 地名。 [幹。
9. **framework** [frɛ'mwɜrk]: 骨
pilgrimage [pɪl'grɪmɪdʒ]: 進香
10. **inn** [ɪn]: 小旅店。 [的旅行。
pilgrim [pɪl'grɪm]: 香客。
11. **inn-keeper** [ɪn'keɪpə]: 小旅店
 的主人。
guide [gɪd]: 嚮導。 [譯詞)
12. **propose** [prə'pəʊz]: 提議。(云
13. **judge** [dʒɪdʒ]: 評理員。
14. **proposal** [ˈprəʊpə'zəl, 或 -zɪ]:
 提議。(名詞)
journey [dʒɛ'nɪ]: 路程。
17. **realistic** [rɪəlɪs'tɪk]: 逼真的。
humorous [hju'mərəs, 或
 -nrəs]: 幽默的。

講 義

(A) *Travels* 在第 5 句中是書名指 *The Travels of Sir John Mandeville*, 所以云謂詞用單數, 雖則該字自身是複數。

(B) 歐洲的 *courtiers* 與我國從前的朝臣大有分別: 他們都是一班貴族, 而他們的職務往往不是辦理政事而是社交, 他們朝廷中的氣象也不像我國這樣嚴肅。

練 習

【解答】 Tell how Athena was born.

LESSON 53

The Tenses (I)

(1) There are three tenses: the **present**, the **past**, and the **future**. (2) As we have already seen how a **verb** is **conjugated** in the **present tense**, we shall study below the **conjugation of verbs only** in the **past and future tenses**.

PAST TENSE

I <i>was</i>	We <i>were</i>	I <i>had</i>	We <i>had</i>
You <i>were</i>	You <i>were</i>	You <i>had</i>	You <i>had</i>
He } <i>was</i>	They <i>were</i>	He } <i>had</i>	They <i>had</i>
She }		She }	
It }		It }	

FUTURE TENSE

I <i>shall be</i>	We <i>shall be</i>	I <i>shall have</i>	We <i>shall have</i>
You <i>will be</i>	You <i>will be</i>	You <i>will have</i>	You <i>will have</i>
He } <i>will be</i>	They <i>will be</i>	He } <i>will have</i>	They <i>will have</i>
She }		She }	
It }		It }	

(3) It will be observed that for the **past tense** only **verb to be** is conjugated to show the difference in **person** and **number**. (4) For the **future tense** the **verb** remains in the **infinitive form** without *to* and it is the **auxiliary** [ōgzīl'yōrī], or **helping verb**, that is changed to show the difference in person: *shall* for the **first person**, and *will* for the **second** and **third persons**, regardless [rīgār'dlis] of **number**.

(5) From the way their **past tense** is formed **verbs** are divided into two classes: the **regular** and the **irregular**. (6) The **regular verb** forms its **past tense** by adding to its end *ed*, or *d* if it ends in *e*. (7) The **irregular verb** forms its **past tense** in an **irregular way**.

(8) Thus far we have studied only the three **simple tenses**, but each **tense** has three other forms, the **perfect**, the **continuous**, and the **perfect continuous**. (9) Thus we have twelve **tenses**: the **present**, the **past**, the **future**, the **present perfect**, the **past perfect**, the **future perfect**, the **present continuous**, the **past continuous**, the **future continuous**, the **present perfect continuous**, the **past perfect continuous**, and the **future perfect continuous tenses**.

(10) We have to take up one special form of the **verb**, the **participle** [pār'tīsīpl], before we study the **perfect** and the **continuous tenses**, which we shall study in the next lesson. (11) The **participles** have three **tenses**, the **present**, the **past**, and the **perfect**.

(12) The **present participle** always ends in *ing*, e.g., *be-
ing*, *wish-
ing*; when the **verb** ends in *e*, it drops the *e* before adding *ing*, e.g., *having*; and when the **verb** ends in a **consonant** which follows a **short vowel** and the syllable is accented [äksən'tid], the **consonant** is doubled before adding *ing*, e.g., *forgetting*.

(13) The **past participle** of a **regular verb** is the same as the **past tense**, e.g., *wish*, *wished*, *wished*; but in case of an **irregular verb**, sometimes it is, e.g., *have*, *had*, *had*, and sometimes it is not, e.g., *am*, *was*, *been*, *forget*, *forgot*, *for-
gotten*.

(14) The **perfect participle** of a **verb** is formed by the **present participle** of *verb to have* and the **past participle** of the **verb**, e.g., *having seen*, *having eaten*, etc. (15) This **tense** of the **participle** is not so often used as the other two **tenses**.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>4. auxiliary [ögzī'yərī, ə 或作 aw 音, 又 g 或作 k 音] 輔助字。
regardless [rīgār'dlis] 不顧。</p> | <p>10. participle [pār'tīsīpl]: 分詞。
12. accent [äksənt']: 使重讀, 讀重音。(云謂詞)</p> |
|---|--|

講 義

(A) **auxiliary** 普通譯爲“助動詞”，但所加的不一定是敘述動作的云謂詞，所以這譯名似乎欠妥，應稱“云謂詞的輔助字”，但這譯名頗嫌冗長，不妨簡稱之爲“輔助字”。

(B) 不依規則變成過去時制的云謂詞，我們已透字學過，所以此處不再細述

練 習

【解答】 用英文回答：

(1) Who were the first historic people in Great Britain?

(2) Who were their conquerors? And when were they conquered?

(3) What is the Old English? And the Middle English? Out of what three languages did the Modern English develop?

LESSON 54

The Tenses (II)

(1) We may now study the **perfect**, the **continuous**, and the **perfect continuous tenses**. (2) Let us begin with the **perfect tenses** of verbs *to be*, *to have*, *to wish*, and *to put*.

PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
I <i>have</i>	I <i>had</i>	I <i>shall have</i>
We <i>have</i>	We <i>had</i>	We <i>shall have</i>
You <i>have</i>	You <i>had</i>	You <i>will have</i>
He <i>has</i>	He <i>had</i>	He <i>will have</i>
She <i>has</i>	She <i>had</i>	She <i>will have</i>
It <i>has</i>	It <i>had</i>	It <i>will have</i>
They <i>have</i>	They <i>had</i>	They <i>will have</i>

$\left. \begin{array}{l} I \text{ have} \\ We \text{ have} \\ You \text{ have} \\ He \text{ has} \\ She \text{ has} \\ It \text{ has} \\ They \text{ have} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} been \\ had \\ wished \\ put \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} I \text{ had} \\ We \text{ had} \\ You \text{ had} \\ He \text{ had} \\ She \text{ had} \\ It \text{ had} \\ They \text{ had} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} been \\ had \\ wished \\ put \end{array} \right\}$			
				$\left. \begin{array}{l} I \text{ shall have} \\ We \text{ shall have} \\ You \text{ will have} \\ He \text{ will have} \\ She \text{ will have} \\ It \text{ will have} \\ They \text{ will have} \end{array} \right\}$		
					$\left. \begin{array}{l} been \\ had \\ wished \\ put \end{array} \right\}$	
						$\left. \begin{array}{l} been \\ had \\ wished \\ put \end{array} \right\}$

(3) It will be seen from the above that the **perfect tenses** of any **verb** are formed by the **simple tenses of verb to have** and the **past participle of the verb**; and whether the **perfect tense** is **present**, **past**, or **future** depends upon whether the **auxiliary have** is in the **present**, **past**, or **future**. (4) Here are examples of the **continuous tenses**.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS PAST CONTINUOUS FUTURE CONTINUOUS

<i>I am</i> <i>We are</i> <i>You are</i> <i>He is</i> <i>She is</i> <i>It is</i> <i>They are.</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{being} \\ \text{having} \\ \text{wishing} \\ \text{putting} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>I was</i> <i>We were</i> <i>You were</i> <i>He was</i> <i>She was</i> <i>It was</i> <i>They were</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{being} \\ \text{having} \\ \text{wishing} \\ \text{putting} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>I shall be</i> <i>We shall be</i> <i>You will be</i> <i>He will be</i> <i>She will be</i> <i>It will be</i> <i>They will be</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{having} \\ \text{wishing} \\ \text{putting} \end{array} \right\}$
---	--	---	--	--	--

(5) From the conjugation above, it is seen that the **continuous tenses** of a verb are formed by the **simple tenses of verb to be** and the **present participle of the verb**, and their tenses depend on the **tenses of the auxiliary be**.

(6) Now we come to the **perfect continuous tenses**.

PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

<i>I have been</i> <i>We have been</i> <i>You have been</i> <i>He has been</i> <i>She has been</i> <i>It has been</i> <i>They have been</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{having} \\ \text{wishing} \\ \text{putting} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>I had been</i> <i>We had been</i> <i>You had been</i> <i>He had been</i> <i>She had been</i> <i>It had been</i> <i>They had been</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{having} \\ \text{wishing} \\ \text{putting} \end{array} \right\}$
---	--	---	--

FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS

<i>I shall have been</i> <i>We shall have been</i> <i>You will have been</i> <i>He will have been</i> <i>She will have been</i> <i>It will have been</i> <i>They will have been</i>	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{having} \\ \text{wishing} \\ \text{putting} \end{array} \right\}$
---	--

(7) Similarly, the **perfect continuous tenses** of a verb are formed by the **perfect tenses of verb to be** and the **present**

participle of the verb, and again the **tenses** depend upon the **perfect tenses of the auxiliary be**.

講 義

(A) 本課中諸云謂詞之變動形式表乃謂最稱經濟之辦法。其讀法如下：I have been, We have been, 一直讀至 They been, 再讀 I have had, We have had, 一直到 They have had, 然後再依樣讀完 I have wished 等等, I have put 等等。其餘均同此讀法。

(B) I am being 與 I was being 是不能獨立使用的,但須在這裏記好,預備將來讀受動態時之用。

練 習

【作文】寫一封信給你弟弟,告以月底回家,並囑其到火車站相會。

LESSON 55

How to Use the Different Tenses

(1) We have seen how the different **tenses** are formed, and we shall see how they are used. (2) For this purpose we must first consider the difference between a **period**, and a **point**, of time. (3) The **past** refers to a **long period** of time, from the very beginning of time to the last second, similarly the **future** means from the next moment on till the end of time, another **long period**. (4) But the **present** is only a **point** of time, while the **past** and the **future** consist of a **period** each, i.e., a series [sēr'ōz] of points of time. (5) This distinction is necessary to explain the differences between the **past perfect** and the **past tense**, between the **future** and the **future perfect**, and also the nature of the **continuous tense**.

(6) When we regard an action or a condition as an **entity** [ɛn'itī], we used the **simple tenses**; but when we take a definite point of time and consider an action or a condition as continuing from a time further [fū'dhə] back passing that point and continuing from that point on into the **future**, then we use the **continuous tenses**. (7) Whether the point of time we take is in the **past**, **present**, or **future**, determines whether we should use **past**, **present**, or **future continuous tense**.

(8) If two actions happened at two points of time in the **past**, and action X happened earlier than action Y, then we use the **past perfect tense** to describe action X and the **simple past tense** to describe action Y. (9) The **present perfect tense** describes an action which has just been finished at the moment when we speak of it. (10) The **future perfect tense** predicts [prīdīkts'] that an action will be finished at a certain point of time in the **future**. (11) A **perfect continuous tense** emphasizes the fact that the action has been continuing till that one particular point of time which we speak of, and which may be in the **past**, **present**, or **future**.

(12) There are two more **tenses** that we may also consider here: the **past future** and the **past future perfect**. (13) The **past future** expresses an action in the **past**, which was spoken of from a point of time still **further back** in the **past**, and regarded from this point of time the action was in the **future**, hence the double nature and the confusing name of the tense, **past future**. (14) In—*X said in this morning that he would come in the afternoon—would come* is a **past future**; for regarded from the time X said it, the afternoon was in the **future**, but regarded from

the present time it was in the past. (15) Similarly the **past future perfect** expresses an action in the past which, regarded from a point of time **further back** in the past, must be expressed in the **future perfect tense**. (16) In — *I said in the morning that I should have finished the work by noon—should have finished* is a **past future perfect**.

(17) These two tenses are used in **indirect quotations**, and are formed in the following ways. (18) The **past future** of a verb is formed by the **past tense of “shall” and “will”**—*should* and *would*—and the **infinitive of the verb without “to”**. (19) The **past future perfect** of a verb is formed by the **past future of verb “to have”**—*should have* and *would have*—and the **past participle of the verb**. (20) Concerning the **indirect quotations**, we shall learn more about them later.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| 4. series [sēr'ēz]: 一組, 一套, (複數同形) | further [fūr'dhə]: 較遠。 |
| 6. entity [ēn'titī]: 整個。 | 10. predict [prī.İkt]: 預言。 |
| | 17. indirect quotation : 間接引用句。 |

講 義

(A) **further** 與 **farther** 均為“較遠”, 後者專指空間的遠近而言, 前者則指時間或抽象的遠近而言。

(B) **speak** 是自動的, 欲使之影響到別的事物, 須加上介詞 **of** 字, 正如“說到”; 把 **speak of** 變成受動態, 便成 **is spoken of**, 可譯為“被引為談論之資”。

(C) **series** 單數複數在形式上不變。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 51—55):

1. King Arthur who furnished the theme for many masterpieces in the English literature was a Celt and

- a Christian who defended the country against the Anglo-Saxons.
2. Beowulf was a pre-Christian Anglo-Saxon hero whose brave deeds were recorded in the epic that bears his name.
 3. By the end of the 6th century, the Anglo-Saxons were Christianized, the monks introduced the art of writing, and literature flourished in the north; but in the 8th century this leadership passed from the north to Winchester, the capital of King Alfred, in the south; and after the Norman conquest, the leadership passed to London in the Midland.
 4. In the 13th century the rough renderings of the Norman French metrical tales about these "great conquerors" into English were very popular and helped to fuse the two languages into one, then came the Hundred Years' War which greatly stimulated and helped to develop a strong national spirit; both of these paved the way for Chaucer, with whom the London leadership in literature began in the 15th century.
 5. The Hundred Years' War also gave expression to popular discontent, as may be seen from William Langland's *Piers the Ploughman* and the Robin Hood Ballads.
 6. It was in this age, too, that the *Travels of Sir John Mandeville* and Chaucer's *Canterbury Tales* were written.
 7. Before studying the different **tenses** as well as the **forms of tenses**, one has to know one class of **verbs**, the **auxiliaries**, and two special **verb forms**: the **infini-**

tives, and the **participles**, **present** and **past**.

8. The **past tenses** of a **verb** is formed by adding *ed* (or *d*) or in an irregular way; from this point of view, **verbs** are divided into two classes, the **regular** or **weak**, and the **irregular** or **strong**, verbs.
9. The **future tense** of a **verb** is formed by **auxiliaries** *shall* (for the **first person**) and *will* (for the **second** and the **third persons**) and the **infinitive form of the verb**.
10. There are three **tenses**: the **present**, the **past**, and the **future**; and four **forms** for each of the three **tenses**: the **simple**, the **perfect**, the **continuous**, and the **perfect continuous**.
11. The **perfect tenses** of a **verb** are formed by **auxiliary** *have* and the **past participle of the verb**; the **continuous tenses**, by **auxiliary** *be* and the **present participle of the verb**; and the **perfect continuous tenses** by the **perfect tenses of auxiliary** *be* and the **present participle of the verb**; in each case the **tenses of the auxiliary** determines the **tenses of the verb phrase**.
12. When we regard an action or a condition as an **entity**, we use the **simple tenses**; but when we look at an action or condition as passing through a point of time from the past and continuing to the future, then we use **continuous tenses**; when we mean that at a certain point of time, an action is completed, we have to use the **perfect tenses**; and when we want to emphasize the fact that a certain action has been continuing to one particular point of time and on, we use the **perfect continuous tenses**; in each case whether the point of time taken is in the past, pres-

ent, or future determines whether the **continuous**, the **perfect**, or the **perfect continuous tenses** shall be in the **past, present, or future**.

13. If two actions happened in the past, one earlier than the other, we use **past perfect tense** for the action which happened *earlier* and the **simple past tense** for the action which happened *later*.
14. When an action in the past is regarded from a point further back in the past, we have to use the **past future**; and when that action is completed at a point of time in the past, but is regarded from another point of time further back, then we have to use the **past future perfect**.

* * *

LESSON 56

A Pro Forma Order

Cable Address:	SOUTH SEA TRADING CO.	Code Used:
SOUTHSEACO	132 New Road	A.B.C. 5th Edition
Bangkok	Bangkok, Siam	Improved

28/10/194.....

Messrs. Straits Haberdashery [strāts hāb'odāshorī] Co.,
231, South Bridge [brīj] Road,
Singapore, S.S.

GENTLEMEN,

(1) We beg to acknowledge with thanks the receipt of your reply to our inquiry, dated Oct. 21, and the price list, all of which have had our best attention.

(2) In reply, we beg to inform you that some of your prices are not low enough for our market, for instance, that of pins [pĩnz], snap fasteners [snǎp fah'snəz], etc.

(3) However, as most of your offers are acceptable [ək-sĕp'təbl] to our market conditions, and to facilitate [fəsil'itāt] quick transaction [trǎnsǎk'shən], we are enclosing you herewith a *pro forma* [prō'fōr'mā] order with prices as our counter-offers [kow'ntərōf'əz]. (4) We have carefully calculated the market demand [dĩmah'nd] and made the order of such a size that if you can accept our counter-offers we can repeat [rĩpō't] the order every two months. (5) The prices that we offer are, as indicated, c.i.f. [sĕ'i'ĕf'] prices.

(6) If you can accept our counter-offers, which are, indeed, not many, then you may consider the *pro forma* order as our order and proceed [prəsō'd] to fill it. (7) But please also cable us your acceptance [ək-sĕp'təns] at the same time.

(8) You may draw on us through the Bank of Canton by a D/P [dĕ'pĕ'] draft at thirty days' sight [sīt]. (9) However, it is understood that after the first half year, you are to draw on us by D/A [dĕ'ā'] drafts, as agreed upon in your favour of the 21st, inst.

(10) The cases are to be marked [mǎrkt] with a square with S S T C at the four corners [kōr'nəz], while the number of the case is to be written inside, thus:

S	S
	No. 4
T	C

(11) In your invoice [ĩn'vois] please state, in metric system, the net weight of each item [ĩ'tĕm] and the gross

weight of each case. (12) This is necessary, for the customs [kūs'təmz] requires [rīkwīr'z] it.

(13) Your faithfully,

South Seas Trading Co.

T. C. Tan

TCT, KP

1 encl.

生 字

- strait** [s'trāt]: 海峽。
haberdashery [hāb'ədāshə-ri]: 雜貨。
bridge [brīj]: 橋。
- pin** [pīn]: 釘針, 別針。
snap [snāp]: 突然捉住。
fastener [fai'snə]: 使結附者。
 —— *snap fastener*: 鈕扣。
 - acceptable** [əksəp'təbl]: 可接收的。 [辦。
facilitate [fəsil'itit]: 使容易
transaction [trānsāk'shən]: 交易, 買賣。 [的), 假定的。
pro forma [prō'fōr'mā]: (形式
counter [kəw'ntə]: 反的, 復的。
counter-offer [kəw'ntərōf'ə]: 還價。
 - demand** [dīmāh'nd, 美國人讀 -mānd']: 需要。 [環,
repeat [rīpē't]: 重複, 再作, 循
c.i.f. [sē'i'əf'] = *cost, insurance, & freight* 之簡。 *cost* [kōst]: 物價, *insurance* [īn-shoor'əns]: 保險(費), *freight* [frāt]: 運費。
 - proceed** [prəsē'd]: 進行。
fill the order: (照定單) 配貨。
 - cable** [kā'bl]: 打海電。
acceptance [əksəp'təns]: 接收, 畫押。
 - draw** [draw]: 支取。—— *draw on us*: 向我們支取。
D/P [dē'pē'] = *documents against payment* 之簡。 **document** [dök'ūmənt]: 文件。
against [əgā'nst]: 相對, 對換。—— *document against payment*: (文件對換還錢), 付款交換領貨文件。
draft [draft]: 匯票。—— *D/P draft*: 付款交換領貨文件的匯票。
sight [sīt]: 眼力, 視域; 與支票, 匯票合用時) 期。—— *a draft at thirty days' sight*: 一張三十天的期票。 *at sight*: 現天的。
 - D/A** (= *documents against acceptance* 之簡): (文件對換畫押), 畫押交換領貨文件。
 - mark** [mārk]: 加記號。
case [kās]: 箱。
 - invoice** [īn'vois]: 貨單, 發票。
item [ī'tēm, -əm]: 條目。
 - customs** [kūs'təmz]: 海關, **require** [rīkwīr']: 要求, 規定。

講義

(A) 28/ 0/191.....=Oct. 28, 19, 其他的日子亦可依法書寫。

(B) Straits 複數大寫時指 Straits Settlements [sɔɪ'lɪmənts], 即海峽殖民地(包括新加坡, 檳榔嶼, 及麻六甲)。S.S = Straits Settlements 之簡。

(C) Gentleman, = Dear Sirs., 又照英國人的寫法, 當作 Gentlemen, — Dear Sirs., 一。照美國人的寫法, 或以“冒號”(:) 結束。

(D) haberdashery 乃“雜貨店”的總稱, 無複數。customs = “海關”, 但 custom = “風俗”。

練習

【造句】 用以下諸字造詢問句:

when, where, who, which, what, why, how.

LESSON 57

Counter-Offers Accepted

Cable Address:	The Straits Haberdashery Co.	Codes Used:
STRAHABER	231 South Bridge Road	A.B.C. 5th Ed.,
Singapore	Singapore, S.S.	Acme, & Privat

5th Nov., 194—

Messrs. South Seas Trading Co.,
132 New Road,
Bangkok, Siam.

DEAR SIRS,

(1) Your favour of the 28th, ult., was duly received on the 1st, inst., on which date we cabled you the following:

COUNTEROFFERS ACCEPTED GOODS LEAVING
FIRST STEAMER [stē'mə]

which means that your counter-offers were accepted and that the goods will leave by the first steamer leaving this port for yours.

(2) The goods have been properly packed in six cases, which are duly marked as per your instruction [instrūk'shən]. (3) The invoices are also made according to your wishes in every detail. (4) The goods will leave by S.S. Kedah [ēs'ēs' kō'də] tomorrow.

(5) As instructed [instrūk'tid], we are drawing on you through the Bank of Canton for the amount of Ticals [tīk'lz] Four Thousand Nine Hundred and Eighty-Three and Satangs [sah'tah'ngz] Fifty-four (Tels. 4983.54). (6) The bills of lading [lā'dīng] and other documents are being sent to you through the bank, which will deliver them to you when you have paid our draft, No. 45276.

(7) Trusting that you will find everything satisfactory,

We are,

Yours faithfully,

Straits Haberdashery Co.

Kwee Tat

KF/TS

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p><i>South Seas Trading Company:</i>
南洋貿易公司。</p> <p>1. steamer [stē'mə]: 汽船, 輪船。</p> <p>2. per (=by): 由, 依。</p> <p>instruction [instrūk'shən]:
教訓, 命令, 指示。</p> <p>4. S. S. [ēs'ēs'] = steamship</p> | <p>[stē'mshīp] (輪船, 汽船) 之簡。</p> <p>Kedah [kō'də]: 船名。[幣]。</p> <p>5. tical [tīk'l]: 銀, 銖 (暹羅的銀)</p> <p>satang [sah'tah'ng]: 沙丁 (銀的百分之一)。</p> <p>6. lading [lā'dīng]: 裝載貨物。
— <i>bill of lading</i>: 提貨單。</p> |
|--|---|

講 義

(A) 注意 5th Nov., 194..... 的寫法。如先寫月份,再寫日子,則作 Nov. 5, 194.....。

(B) 注意 South Seas 在美國人的口中是指澳洲的附近一帶,所以把它當作“南洋”用,實不準確。但此處 South Seas Trading Company 是一公司名稱,我們未便替他們更改。

(C) 在商業信札中常有如第 7 句一類的結語,例如 hoping to hear from you soon,。

(D) “鉢”或“鉢”比 tical 近邊音 [baht]。

練 習

【造句】 用以下諸字連合主句與附句:

if, whether, who, whose, whom, of which, when, where, what, which, why, how.

LESSON 58

The Age of Spencer

(1) After Chaucer for a century and a half, there were imitators [im'itātəz] of Chaucer, but England produced no great poets or prose writers. (2) However, one important book was produced during this period, that was Malory's [māl'oriz] *Le Morte d'Arthur* [lə mɔrt dɑr'thə]. (3) It was a collection [kələk'shən] of the tales about King Arthur written in prose.

(4) Among the prose works of this age, there were two important translations [trahns'lā'shəz]. (5) Chapman's [chəp'mənz] translation of Homer's [hō'məz] *Iliad* [il'iod] and *Odyssey* [ɔd'isī]. (6) King James' Version

[jāmz vēr'shən] of *The Bible* [bī'bl], which is still regarded as the standard [stān'dəd] translation in English today, at least by the common people.

(7) Another important event [ivēnt'] that happened during this period was the introduction of printing into England by William Caxton [wīl'yəm kākstən]. (8) This helped to fix the spelling of the written or literary English.

(9) Later on the Renaissance [rənā'səns], the Reformation [rēf'əmā'shən] and the discovery [dīskūv'ərī] of the New World gave a great impetus [im'pītəs] to the people. (10) They made for intellectual progress, religious tolerance [rīlij'əs tōl'ərəns], enthusiasm [īnthū-zīāzm], strong national spirit, patriotism [pāt'rīōtizm], and prosperity [prōspēr'ītī], which brought social contentment [kōntēnt'mənt]. (11) These, in turn, created the great literature of the next age.

(12) The greatest poets of the next age were William Shakespeare [shā'kspēr] and Edmund Spenser [ēd'mənd spēn'sə], and the greatest prose writers, Francis Bacon [frāh'nsīs bākən] and Philip Sidney [fīl'īp sīd'nī]. (13) The age is called the Elizabethan [ilīz'əbē'thən] Age, because Queen Elizabeth [ilīz'əbōth] ruled over Great Britain at this time, but many people called it the Age of Shakespeare, because Shakespeare was the greatest man of letters of this age.

(14) Spenser's most famous work was the *Faerie Queene* [fā'ərī kwēn] (*Fairy* [fā'r'i] *Queen*), while the *Shepherd's Calendar* [kāl'īndə] was another of his well-known works.

(15) Twelve knights from the court of the Faerie Queene set out to do twelve great deeds in her honour. (16) All

of them met great perils [pě'r/ilz], and were rescued [rěs/'kūd] by King Arthur. (17) King Arthur then married the Faerie Queene. (18) This is the framework of the *Faerie Queene* which was only partly finished.

(19) This age, however, found its best expression in drama [drah/'mə]. (20) Drama and poetry fully expressed the spirit of the age, its variety [vəri/'əli] of interests, its freshness [frěsh/'nɪs] of spirit, and its youthful [ū'th/foəl] and romantic [romān/'tɪk] feeling.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. imitator [im/'itətə]: 模仿者。 | tolerance [tə'lərəns]: 容忍 寬容。(名詞) |
| 3. collection [kəlek/'shən]: 蒐集。名詞 | enthusiasm [in'thū'ziəzəm, 或 ən-, -thoʊ-]: 熱心。 |
| 4. work [wɜrk]: 文藝作品。 | patriotism [pə'triətɪzəm]: 愛國心。 |
| translation [trənzlā/'shən]: 翻譯。 | prosperity [prɔspə'rɪti]: 興盛, 富裕。 [滿意。 |
| 6. version [vɛr/'shən]: 譯本。 | contentment [kəntənt'mənt]: |
| standard [stān'dəd]: 標準的。 | 14. fairy [fai'rɪ]: 神仙; 神仙的。 |
| 7. event [i'vent/]: 事件。 | 16. rescue [rəs/'kū]: 救。 |
| 8. fix [fiks]: 使固定。 | peril [pə'rɪl]: 危險。 |
| 9. renaissance [rənə'sɑns, 或 -sɑngs]: 文藝復興時期。 | 19. drama [drah/'mə]: 戲劇。 |
| Reformation [rɛf'əmə'shən]: (歐洲的)宗教改革。 | 20. variety [vəri/'əli]: 種類繁多。 |
| discovery [dɪskəv'ərɪ]: 發現。 | freshness [frěsh/'nɪs]: 新鮮。 |
| impetus [im/'pitəs]: 動力。 | youthful [ū'th/foəl]: 年輕的。 |
| 0. make for: 增進。 | romantic [romān/'tɪk, rə-]: 浪漫的。 |
| religious [rɪ'lɪj'əs]: 宗教的。 | |

講 義

(A) reformation 通常作“改革”解; r 大寫時則專指歐洲的“宗教改革”。

(B) 注意 enthusiasm 指宗教方面的“熱心”; prosperity 指物質方面的“繁盛”。

(C) Malory, Sir Thomas [tɒm'əʊ]: 生卒之年未詳。

生 卒

Caxton, William (英國印刷業之始祖) . . . 1422—1491

Shakespeare, William (莎士比亞) . . . 1564—1616

Spenser, Edmund (斯賓塞) 1552—1592

Bacon, Francis (培根) 1561—1626

Sidney, Philip 1554—1586

Chapman, 名 George [jɔʊ] 1559—1634

Homer (荷馬) 希臘古代的盲詩人，週遊各地，以歌唱英雄故事詩為業。

(D) Le Morte d'Arthur (the Death of Arthur): 書名，該書大意如課文中所述。

Iliad 與 Odyssey: 均為 Homer 的故事詩。

Iliad: 述託羅伊戰爭中之一段故事。

Odyssey: 述這位英雄於託羅伊戰爭後因舟遇大風而漂流各地之遭際。

The Bible: (耶穌教的)聖經。

Faerie Queene (仙后): 詩名，內容如課文中所述。

Shepherd's Calendar (牧人的日曆): 詩名。

練 習

【解答】 (1) Who were the first historic people in Great Britain? Which people conquered them?

(2) Out of what three languages did the Modern English develop?

LESSON 59

The Age of Shakespeare

(1) The English drama grew out of the medieval [mɛd'ɪə'vl] church festival in the following manner. (2) The church celebrated [sɛl'ɪbrə'tɪd] these festivals by dramatizing [dræm'ətɪzɪŋ] the Bible stories which had some connection with the festivals, and these dramatiza-

tions [dram'ətīzā'shnz] are called miracle [mīr'əkl] plays. (3) The church also dramatized stories which would teach moral lessons, such plays are called moralities [mərəl'ītīz]. (4) Usually it gave, along with these more serious plays, some humorous scenes [sēnz] which are called interludes [īn'təlūdz]. (5) Out of these grew the different kinds of plays.

(6) The first great dramatist [drām'ətīst] was Christopher Marlowe [krīs'təfə mār'lō], but the greatest was, of course, Shakespeare, and Ben Jonson [bən jōn'sn] was another great dramatist living at the same time with Shakespeare. (7) After them the standard of drama sank [sānk] rapidly [rāp'īdlī], the most notable among the dramatists of this period were Beaumont [bō'mən] and Fletcher [flēch'ə], who wrote many plays together, and Massinger [mäs'īnjə].

(8) Shakespeare studied his audience [aw'dyəns], understood them, and tried to please them. (9) But he had creative [krīā'tīv] power, imagination, wit [wīt] and humour [hū'mə], and he described them faithfully and with tolerance. (10) He created living characters [kār'əktəz], though he used the ready made stories for the plots [plōts] of his plays.

(11) But this is only one side of his greatness [grā'tnīs]. (12) He had a very big stock of words, mastery [mah'stərī] of the art of versification [vēr'sīfikā'shən] as well as wonderful dramatic technique [drəmā'tīk tēknō'k]. (13) With the help of all these, he reflected the spirit of the age as well as the beauty of nature wonderfully well.

(14) Although he wrote comedies [kōm'īdīz], tragedies [trāj'īdīz], or historical [hīstōr'īkl] plays equally

well, yet all agree that the tragedies were written at the maturity [mətʊr'itɪ] and height [haɪt] of his creative power, and they represented [rɛp'rezɛn'tɪd] him at his best. (15) The following are a few of his best known works: COMEDIES, *Merchant of Venice* [mɛr'çənt əv vɛn'ɪs], *As You Like It*, *The Tempest* [tɛm'pɪst]; TRAGEDIES, *Roméo and Juliet* [rɔ'miɔ ən jʊɔ'lyʊt], *Macbeth* [mæk'bɛθ], *Hamlet* [həm'lɪt], *King Lear* [lɛr], *Othello* [ɔθɛ'lɔ]; and HISTORICAL PLAYS, *Julius Caesar* [jʊɔ'lyʊs sɔ'zɔ], *Richard III* [rɪç'hɔd dhə thɪrð], *Henry IV* [hɛn'rɪ dhə fɔrθ], *Antony and Cleopatra* [æn'tɔni ən klɪɔpə'trə].

(16) Besides plays, Shakespeare also wrote many beautiful sonnets [sɔn'ɪts]. (17) These sonnets he carefully printed, although he did not print his plays.

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. medieval [mɛdɪə'vi]: 中世紀的。 [式
manner [ˈnɑːnə] (=way): 樣</p> | <p>sink [sɪŋk]: 墜落。(過去時制 sank [ʌŋk], 過去分詞 sunk [sʌŋk])</p> |
| <p>2. celebrate [sɛlɪ'brɛɪt]: 慶祝。
dramatize [drəmə'taɪz]: 戲劇化。(去謂詞)
dramatization [drəmə'taɪzə'siʃən]: 戲劇化, 劇本之著作或編述。(名詞)
miracle [mɪr'əkl̩]: 奇蹟; 神跡。 — <i>miracle plays</i>: 神奇劇。</p> | <p>rapidly [rəp'ɪdli]: 很快地。</p> |
| <p>3. morality [mə'ræl'ɪti]: 道德, 倫理。(複數 moralities, 倫理劇)</p> | <p>8. audience [ɔː'dyɔːns]: 聽衆或觀衆(總稱)。</p> |
| <p>4. scene [sɛn]: 風景, 戲臺佈景, 場面;(一幕之)一場。
interlude [ɪn'tɛrlʊd]: 插戲。</p> | <p>9. creative [krɪə'tɪv]: 創造的。
wit [wɪt]: 滑稽, 機智。
humour [hʊ'mɔ]: 幽默。</p> |
| <p>5. dramatist [drəmə'tɪst]: 戲劇家。</p> | <p>10. character [kær'əktɔ]: 人品, 人格; 小說或戲劇中的人物。
<i>readily made</i>: 現成的。
plot [plɔt]: 結構。</p> |
| | <p>11. greatness [grɛ'tnɪs]: 偉大。</p> |
| | <p>12. mastery [mə'stɔri]: 精通。
versification [vɛr'sɪfɪkə'shən]: 關於詩的音節的技巧。
dramatic [drəmə'tɪk]: 戲劇的。</p> |

- technique [təknə/k]: 技巧。成熟時期。
14. comedy [kəm'idi]: 喜劇,笑劇。 height [hit]: 高,最高點。「表。」
- tragedy [træj'idi]: 悲劇。 represent [rɛp'rɪzɛnt]: 代
- historical [hɪstər'ɪk]: 歷史 15. merchant [mɛtʃənt]: 商人。
- 的。——*historical play*: 歷史劇。 tempest [tɛm'pɪst]: 暴風雨。
- maturity [mætʃr'itɪ]: 成熟。 16. sonnet [sɒn'it]: 十六行詩。

講 義

(A) 在戲劇中 scene 乃一極小段,比“幕”(act)還要小,乃一幕中之“一場”。

(B) 注意 dram'atize, dram'atist, 與 dram'atic dram'atiza"tion 四字重音之所在。

生 卒

- (C) Marlowe, Christopher 1564—1593
 Jonson, Ben (彭瓊生) 1573—1637
 Beaumont, 名 Francis 1584—1616
 Fletcher, 名 John [jɒn] 1576—1625
 Massinger, 名 Philip 1583—1640

(D) 除喜劇外,其餘各劇均以劇中主人翁之名為劇名。Julius Caesar 乃羅馬第一個破壞民國政府的將軍。Cleopatra 乃與 Julius Caesar 同時的埃及美人,其在歐洲美人中所佔的地位,猶如西施之在我國。

練 習

【背誦】 sink sank sunk

【解答】 Who were Chaucer, Spenser, Shakespeare, and Bacon?

LESSON 60

Direct and Indirect Quotation

(1) When we repeat or quote some one's saying exactly as he said it, we are using a **direct quotation**; and when we use our own words to say what some one else has

said, we are using an **indirect quotation**. (2) For instance, if I say—*Mr. Li told me, "I will go to see you this afternoon"*—I quote Mr. Li's words exactly as he used them, so "**I will go to see you this afternoon**" is a **direct quotation**. (3) If, however, I say—*Mr. Li told me that he would come to see me this afternoon*—I am using an **indirect quotation**, for I quote what he said indirectly, not using the exact [igzǎkt'] words used by him, but using my own words to repeat what he said in substance [sǔb'stǒns]. (4) The above quotations are **direct** and **indirect statements**, and we may have **direct questions** and **indirect questions**. (5) For instance, in—*Mr. Li asked me, "Shall you be at home this afternoon?"*—the question is a **direct question**; and in—*Mr. Li asked me if I should be at home this afternoon*—it is an **indirect question**.

(6) Observe that in changing a **direct quotation** into an **indirect one**, three changes take place: (A) **omit the quotation marks (" ") of the direct quotation and put a conjunction before the indirect quotation**; (B) **change the person of the pronouns**; and (C) **change the tenses of the verb**.

(7) The **conjunction** which introduces an **indirect statement** usually is *that*, while the one which introduces an **indirect question** may be *if, whether, when, what*, etc. (8) An **indirect question** ends with a **period**, not a **question mark (?)**, and has the natural order of the subject and predicate, not the inverted order.

(9) The **first person** in a **direct quotation** must, in an **indirect quotation**, be in the same person as the **subject** of the verb *say, tell, ask, inquire*, etc. in the **main clause**; the **second person**, the same person as the **indirect object** of the

verb in the main clause; the third person in a direct quotation need not be changed in the indirect quotation, unless this person becomes the hearer or speaker of the indirect quotation, in which case it is changed into the second or first person respectively. (10) For the changes of the first and second persons in the direct quotation, see the two examples given above, the change of the third person may be illustrated with the following examples. (11) If Mr. X told Mr. Y: "*Please tell Mr. Z to come to see me this evening*", then when Mr. Y sees Mr. Z, he will say something like this: "*Mr. X told me to tell you to go to see him this evening*", changing the third person in a direct quotation into the second person in an indirect quotation. (12) If Mr. Z goes to tell his father about it, he will say: "*Mr. X told Mr. Y to tell me to go to see him this evening*", changing the third person of the direct quotation into the first person in another indirect quotation.

(13) Regarding the change of tense, the rule is as follows. (14) When the verb in the main clause introducing the indirect quotation is in the present tense, the verb in the indirect quotation does not change its tense; and when the verb in the main clause is in the past tense, the following changes take place:

Direct Quotation		Indirect Quotation
the present tense	becomes	the past tense
the present perfect	becomes	the past perfect
the future	becomes	the past future
the future perfect	becomes	the past future perfect
the past tense	{ remains	the same
	{ or: becomes	the past perfect
the past perfect	remains	the same

(15) The rule for using *shall* and *will* and *should* and *would* in the **indirect quotation** is that we use *shall* or *should* in the **indirect quotation**, if it is *shall* in the **direct quotation**, and *will* or *would*, if it is *will* in the **direct quotation**. However, there is this exception: when *will* is used to form the **future tense** of a **verb phrase** with the **second** or **third person** as the **subject** in a **direct quotation**, and when the **subject** is changed into the **first person** in an **indirect quotation**, *will* should be changed into *shall* or *should*.

(16) There is yet another form of **indirect quotation**, namely the **indirect command**. (17) There are two ways of changing a **direct command** into an **indirect one**. (18) For instance, if I speak to **Mr. Li**, "*Come here*", the command may be changed into: (A) *I command* (or *commanded*) **Mr. Li to come here**, (B) *I command* (or *commanded*) **that Mr. Li should come** (or **come**) **here**.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. quote [kwōt]: 引用。
<i>direct quotation</i>: 直接引用句。</p> | <p>5. <i>direct question</i>: 直接詢問句。
<i>indirect question</i>: 間接詢問句。</p> |
| <p>3. exact [ɛgzækʷ, ɛgz-]: 準確的。
substance [süb'stəns]: 本質, 內容。</p> | <p>8. period [pēr'jōd] (或稱 Full stop): 句號(.)。
<i>question mark</i>: 問號(?)。</p> |
| <p>4. statement [stā'tmənt]: 陳述。
<i>direct statement</i>: 直接陳述。
<i>indirect statement</i>: 間接陳述。</p> | <p>16. <i>indirect command</i>: 間接命令句。
17. <i>direct command</i>: 直接命令句。</p> |

講 義

(A) 注意: 間接命令句中的云謂詞之時制, 並不視主句中的云謂詞的時制而起變化。

(B) 間接請求句之構造,完全與間接命令句相同,因為請求句原係命令句中的一種。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to I.L. 56—60):

1. Between the Age of Chaucer and the Elizabethan Age, we need to mention only the following literary works: Malory's *Le Morte d'Arthur*; King James' Version of *The Bible*; and Chapman's translations of Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey*; and William Caxton's various translations as well as his introduction of the art of printing, which helped to fix the spelling of the written English.
2. The Renaissance, the Reformation, and the discovery of the New World helped to create a society suitable for the great literature that was to come.
3. Among the great poets of the Elizabethan Age were Edmund Spenser, William Shakespeare, Ben Jonson, etc.; among the prose writers were Francis Bacon, Philip Sidney, etc.; and among the dramatists were Christopher Marlowe, William Shakespeare, Ben Jonson, Massinger, and Beaumont and Fletcher.
4. When we repeat what others said in the exact words, we are using **direct quotations**, and when we use our own words to repeat what they said, we are using **indirect quotations**.
5. An **indirect quotation** may be a **statement**, a **question** or a **command** or **request**.
6. In changing a **direct quotation** into an **indirect** one, **usually** we have to (A) omit the **quotation marks** and

- introduce it with a **conjunction**; (B) change the **person of the pronoun**; and (C) make certain change in the **verb**.
7. When the **quotation marks** are omitted, we use **conjunction** *that* to introduce the **indirect statement or command**, and *if, whether, who, what, when, etc.* to introduce the **indirect quotation**; the **period** is used in an **indirect quotation** instead of the **quotation mark of a direct quotation**.
 8. The **first person** of a **direct quotation** becomes in an **indirect quotation** the same person as the **subject of the main clause**; the **second person**, the same person as the **indirect object of the main clause**; and the **third person** does not change, unless that person becomes the **speaker or listener of the direct quotation**, in which case the **first or second person** has to be used; but this change in the person does not affect the use of *shall (should)* and *will (would)*, with one exception as explained on page 185.
 9. When the **verb of the main clause** is in the **present tense**, no change in the **tense of the indirect statement** is necessary; but when it is in the **past tense**, the following changes take place: the **present tense in the direct quotation** becomes the **past tense in the indirect quotation**; the **present perfect** becomes the **past perfect**; the **future** becomes the **past future**; the **future perfect** becomes the **past future perfect**; the **past tense** remains the same or becomes the **past perfect**; and the **past perfect** remains the same.
 10. The **indirect quotation** has the **natural order of words** not the **inverted order**.

11. In the **indirect command**, the **verb** is in the **infinitive** form with *to*, the **present** or the **future subjunctive**.
12. Sometimes to facilitate quick transaction, one firm makes a *pro forma* order as an offer or counter-offer, to be accepted by the other firm.
13. There are two kinds of prices: the free on board (f.o.b.) prices; and the cost, insurance, and freight (c.i.f.) prices.
14. There are many kinds of drafts, but in connection with business transaction with firms in other cities, there are usually two: the documents against acceptance (D/A) drafts; and the documents against payment (D/P) drafts.

* * *

LESSON 61

Complaints and Claims

(LETTER-HEAD SAME AS THAT IN LESSON 56)

12/11/194.....

Messrs. Straits Halerdashery Co.,
231, South Bridge Road,
Singapore, S.S.

GENTLEMEN,

(1) Your favour of the 5th, inst., was received a few days ago. (2) We paid your draft No. 45276 for the amount of Ticals Four Thousand Nine Hundred and Eighty-Three and Satangs Fifty-Four (Tels. 4983.54) and

took delivery of the six cases of goods, regarding [rīgār'd-īng] which we found it necessary to make the following complaints [komplā'nts].

(3) In case No. 3, we found shortage [shōr'tij] of the following articles:

- (a) Horn buttons [hōrn bū'tnz], big size, half a gross short;
- (b) Mother-of-pearl [mūdh'bræpê'l] buttons, small size, one gross short; and
- (c) Safety [sā'fī] pins, medium [mē'diəm] size, two dozens short.

(4) Case No. 4 was damaged [dām'ijd], and the threads got wet. (5) Some of them faded, and nearly all lost their lustre [lūs'tə]. (6) Three dozen packages of the needles [nē'dlz] in Case No. 6 have become rusted.

(7) The shortage of those articles was discovered at the Customs as the enclosed letter from the customs officer [ōf'īsə] will testify [tēs'tīfī].

(8) In regard to the threads which have lost their lustre, they will have to be sold at a loss [lōs]. (9) As it was due to the carelessness [kā'r'līsni:s] on your part, we do hereby reserve [hēr'bi' rīzê'v] the right to charge you for the loss, when the goods are sold.

(10) We are sorry that such causes for dissatisfaction [dīs'sā't'īsfāk'shən] should have accompanied [okūm'penīd] the first shipment [shīp'mənt]. (11) However, we hope you will be kind enough to send us the goods missing [nīs'īng], and also the three dozen packages of needles, to replace [rōplā's] the rusted ones, which we are sending you under separate cover by parcel post.

(12) We hope that more care will be taken to prevent [prívěnt'] such things from happening again. (13) For if such carelessness in packing continues, we shall be obliged [oblí'jd] to place our orders elsewhere [ěls'whār'].

(13) Yours faithfully,

South Seas Trading Co.,

T. C. Tan

TCT/kp

1 encl.

(LETTER-HEAD SAME AS THAT IN LESSON 57)

15th, Nov., 194.....

Messrs. South Seas Trading Co.,
132, New Road,
Bangkok, Siam.

DEAR SIRs,

(1) We have for acknowledgement the receipt of your favour of the 12th, inst. (2) We are sorry that such unpleasant [ŭnplěz'nt] things happened in our first shipment, however, we can assure you that it will not happen again.

(3) We are sending you, under separate cover, those goods missing or to be replaced. (4) We also agree to share your loss due to loss of the lustre of the threads fifty-fifty. (5) Again with apology [əpɔl'ɔj],

We are,

Yours faithfully,

Straits Haberdashery Co.

Kwee Pat

KF/TS

生 字

- I
9. **regarding** [rīgār/dīng]: 關於。
complaint [kəmplā'nt]: 訴苦, 控訴。 [(名詞)]
3. **shortage** [shōr'ti]: 短, 缺少。
- (a) **button** [bū'n]: 鈕子。——*horn button*: 角製鈕子。
short [shōrt]: 短, 缺少。
- (b) **mother-of-pearl** [mūdh'ērəv-pēr'l]: 珍珠母, 蚌。
- (c) **safety** [sā'fī]: 安全, 無危險。——*safety pin*: 保安針, 別針鎖。
medium [mē'diəm]: 中的, 中號。
4. **damage** [dām'ij]: 損傷。 [的。]
5. **lustre** [lūs'tə]: 光澤, 光彩。
6. **needle** [nē'dl]: 針。
rust [rūst]: 生銹。
7. **officer** [ō'fīsə]: 職員。
testify [tēs'tīfī]: 證明。
8. *in regard to*: 關於。 [虧本。]
loss [lōs]: 損失。——*at a loss*:
9. **carelessness** [kār'lisnls]: 疏忽。(名詞)
hereby [hēr'bī]: 在這裏。
reserve [rīzē'v]: 保留。
10. **cause** [kawz]: 原因。
dissatisfaction [dīs'sāt'is-fāk'shən]: 不滿意。 [着。]
accompany [əkūm'pənī]: 伴
shipment [shīp'mənt]: 裝貨。
11. **miss** [mīs]: 不遇, 不見, 遺漏。——*missing*: 遺漏的。
replace [rēplā's]: 補還, 復置。
12. **prevent** [prīvənt]: 阻止。
13. **oblige** [əblī']: 迫。 [別處。]
elsewhere [ēls'whār', -wār']:

II

2. **unpleasant** [ūnplēz'nt]: 不愉快的。
4. **fifty-fifty** [fī'tī-fī'tī]: (五十五十), 一半, 各半。
5. **apology** [əpōl'ējī]: 歉意。

講 義

(A) *carelessness on your part* 比 *your carelessness* 較為宛轉, 雖則意義是一樣的。

(B) *regarding, in regard to, with regard to*, 意義皆同。

(C) *shipment* 平常固指由船所裝之貨, 但也可指由車轉運之貨。

練 習

【背誦】	現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
	testify	testified	testified
單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
mother-of-pearl	mothers-of-pearl	carelessness	——
apology	apologies	lustre	——

【作文】 寫一封信向某書店訂購書籍。

LESSON 62

The Passive Voice

(1) We have seen that from one point of view, verbs may be divided into the **transitive** and the **intransitive**. (2) A **transitive verb** expresses an action which affects some person or thing; the **subject of a transitive verb** is the *doer of the action*, while the *receiver of the action* is the **object**. (3) But we may also make the *receiver of the action* the **subject of the verb** by a special construction of the verb. (4) This special construction is called the **passive voice**, while the ordinary construction of a verb is said to be in the **active voice**.

(5) The **passive voice of a verb** is formed by the auxiliary *be* and the **past participle of the verb**. (6) The **person, number, and tense** of a **passive voice verb phrase** are expressed in the auxiliary *be*. (7) The **passive voice** cannot have the **perfect continuous tenses**, or the **future continuous tense**, but it can have all the other **tenses**, thus:

I am loved (PRESENT TENSE).

You are being loved (PRESENT CONTINUOUS).

He has been loved (PRESENT PERFECT).

She was loved (PAST TENSE).

It was being loved (PAST CONTINUOUS).

They had been loved (PAST PERFECT).

We shall be loved (FUTURE TENSE).

He will have been loved (FUTURE PERFECT).

I said he *would be loved* (PAST FUTURE).

You said he *would have been loved* (PAST FUT. PERF.).

(8) A **transitive verb** may have **direct** and **indirect objects**. (9) Either of these two **objects** may be made the **subject**, when the **verb** is changed into **passive voice**. (10) Thus **I gave him a book** may be changed into: **A book was given him by me**, or **He was given a book**. (11) **We elected [ilēk'ti:l] him president [prēz'idənt] of our society [səsi'əti]** can be changed into: **He was elected (by us as) the president of our society**.

(12) Some **intransitive verbs** with **prepositions following**, however, may take **objects**, hence may have the **passive voice**, too. (13) **He does not look after his brother** may be changed into **His brother is not looked after by him**. (14) The **preposition** that follows an **intransitive verb** to make it **transitive** in reality is called a **prepositional complement**. (15) An **intransitive verb** and a **prepositional complement** often have a new meaning. (16) For instance, *look for* = seek [sēk], *put off* = delay [dīlā'], *run after* = chase [chās], *break off* = come to an end, *get up* = rise, *get through with* = finish, *give up* = abandon [əbān'dən], *make away (or off) with* = steal, *make out* = understand, etc.

(17) The **passive voice** is used in English much more often than it is in Chinese. (18) The **passive voice** is used especially when the doer of the action is unknown or understood, or when we prefer not to mention him.

生 字

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 11. elect [ilēk'ti:]: 選舉, | 主席。 |
| president [prēz'idənt]: 會長, | society [səsi'əti]: 會, 社會。 |

came what is known as the Restoration [rēs'terā'shon] period.

(3) The Puritans were rather stern [stêrn] in their moral standards, for instance, they closed the theaters, forbade [fôrbād'] the horse race [rās], etc. (4) On the other hand, the royalists [roi'əlīsts] of the Restoration period were very loose [lōōs] in their morals. (5) The literature under Puritan rule had the characteristics of the Puritans, and this period is called the Puritan Age, or the Age of Milton [mīl'tən], for Milton was the greatest literary figure of the period. (6) The Puritan Age in literature lasted longer than the Puritan rule. (7) The Puritan spirit found its literary expression in John Milton's poetry and John Bunyan's [būn'yənz] prose, although both of them wrote their best known works, *The Paradise* [pār'odīs] *Lost* and *The Pilgrim's Progress*, after the restoration of the royalists, and although there were greater prose writers during this period than Bunyan, notably Sir Thomas Browne [brown] and Jeremy Taylor [jēr'imī tā'lə].

(8) John Milton intended to become a poet, but he threw in his lot with the Puritans and became the Secretary of the Commonwealth. (9) He wrote many tracts [trākts] in defence [dífēns'] of the Puritan government, and because of overwork [ō'vəwêr'k] he lost his sight. (10) During the Restoration period, he was poor and blind, but fortunate [fôr'elnīt] enough to escape punishment [pūn'ishmōnt] by the royalists. (11) It was during this period that he wrote, or dictated [dīktā'tīd] rather, *The Paradise Lost*, his masterpiece. (12) Not so great as this

is *The Paradise Regained* [rɪˈɡɑːnd], also written in this period. (13) He also wrote many sonnets.

(14) *The Paradise Lost* tells the story of the “fall of man”, that is how Adam [ædˈəm] and Eve [əv] came to eat the forbidden [fəbɪdˈn] fruit and were driven [drɪvˈn] out of the Garden [gɑːdn] of Eden [ədn]. (15) But the epic describes also the creation [krɪəˈʃən] of heaven and earth, and the struggle between Satan [sɑːtən] and God, which takes up most of the epic, for it was the defeat of Satan in this struggle that caused the fall of man. (16) The poem also hints [hɪnts] at the redemption [rɪdɛmptˈʃən] of man through the Son of God.

(17) But Bunyan lived in the next age, so we will treat him in the next lesson.

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. misrule [mɪsˈruːl]: 虐政。 | 4. royalist [rɔɪˈəlɪst]: 王黨的人。 |
| revolution [rɛvˈɒləʃən, 或 -lʊʃən]: 革命。 | loose [lʊːs]: 不嚴肅, 放縱。 |
| commonwealth [kɒmˈɒnwɜːlθ]: (公衆的好處), 共和政治。 | morals [mɔːrəˈlɜːz]: 有關於道德的行為。 [閱] |
| Puritan [pɜːˈtɪtən]: 清教徒(名詞); 清教徒的(形容詞)。 | 7. paradise [pəˈrɑːdɪs]: 天堂, 樂土。 |
| 2. restoration [rɛsˈtɒrəˈʃən]: 恢復原狀, 復辟。—— <i>The Restoration</i> : 王政復古(1660年英國Charles二世歸英國而復兼王政之謂)。 | 9. tract [trækt]: 論文(特指十七世紀末有報紙以前英國政黨教徒爭辯的論文)。 |
| 3. stern [stɜːn]: 嚴肅, 板面孔的。 | defence [dɪfɛns]: 保護, 守衛。—— <i>in defence of</i> : 爲~辯護。 |
| forbid [fɔːbɪd]: 禁止。(過去時制 forbade [fɔːbæd, -bæd], 過去分詞 forbidden [fəbɪdˈn]) | overwork [ˈɔːvəwɜːk]: 工作過度。 [的] |
| race [ræs]: 賽跑。—— <i>horse race</i> : 跑馬。 | 10. fortunate [fɜːtʃənɪt]: 幸運。 |
| | punishment [pʌnɪʃmənt]: 刑罰。 [筆錄, 默寫] |
| | 11. dictate [dɪktət]: 口述而令人 |
| | 12. regain [rɪˈɡeɪn]: 再得, 收復。 |
| | 14. <i>the fall of man</i> : 人的墮落。 |

- drive** [drɪv]: 驅逐。(過去時制
drove [drɒv], 過去分詞 driven
[drɪv'n])
- garden** [gɑːdn]: 花園。
15. **creation** [kriːʃən, krē-]: 創
- 造。(名詞)
16. **hint** [hɪnt]: 暗示。
redemption [rɪdɒmpʃən, 或
把 p 音省去]: 贖回, 補救, 贖罪。
17. **treat of**: 治論, 說到。

講 義

(A) Stuart, 即 Queen Elizabeth 以後英王的姓。

	生	卒
Cromwell, 名 Oliver [ɒlɪvə]	1599	1658
Milton, John (密爾頓)	1608	1674
Bunyan, John (朋揚)	1628	1688
Browne, Sir Thomas	1605	1682
Taylor, Jeremy	1613	1667

(B) The Paradise Lost = (失掉的天堂), 失樂園。
The Paradise Regained = (復得的天堂), 得樂園。
The Pilgrim's Progress = (香客的進程), 天路歷程。

(C) Adam = 亞當(耶教聖經中的第一個男人)。
Eve = 夏娃(亞當的妻, 耶教聖經中第一個女人)。
Garden of Eden = 伊甸園, 伊甸樂園。
Satan = 撒但(魔鬼的領袖)。

(D) 依耶教的神話, 上帝最初分出水與地, 創造天空, 星辰, 日月, 草木, 獸鳥; 他又創造亞當和夏娃, 使他們兩人住在伊甸樂園, 管理一切, 園內各樣東西都可食, 惟有一顆樹的果子不許他們喫, 說, 喫了它便會死。一天, 撒但變成了蛇來誘惑夏娃, 告訴伊說, 喫了那禁果, 不一定會死, 而且會有智慧辨別喜惡; 所以夏娃採了那顆樹的果子喫了, 又給了她丈夫亞當, 亞當也喫了, 他們就曉得以赤身露體為羞恥。上帝來了, 要與他們談話, 他們卻不敢見他, 因此上帝曉得他們喫了善惡果, 便把他們趕出樂園, 叫他們努力工作才有得食。後來上帝差他的兒子降生為耶穌, 代衆人死, 人因此得再與上帝相親; 所以稱他為基督(“救主”), 只要信他便可得救。這便是所謂救贖, 救恩, 即基督教主要的“道理”。

練 習

【背誦】 forbid forbade forbidden
drive drove driven

【句法改造】 把以下的直接引用句變成間接的：

- (1) I said to Tse-yi, "Go and tell your brother to come here."
- (2) He asked me, "Shall you not come to our party?"
- (3) You told him, "I will surely come."

LESSON 64

The Age of Dryden

(1) After the Age of Milton came the Age of Dryden [dri'dən], who was the only really eminent [em'inənt] man of letters of the Restoration period.

(2) But before we study this age, let us take up what is remained of the Puritan Age, John Bunyan. (3) He wrote his masterpiece, *The Pilgrim's Progress*, when he was imprisoned for preaching [pre'chiŋg] without a license [li'səns]. (4) The book tells the story of how a man, Christian [kris'chən], tried to flee from his own city, the City of Destruction [distruk'shən], and to rid himself of the burden [bu'ɔdn] on his back, Sin [sɪn], in his attempt to achieve [əchiēv] the eternal [ēi'tɜnl] life, and how he met all sorts of obstacles [ɔb'stəklz] in the form of men as well as environments [ɪnvɪr'ɒnmənts]. (5) It is a book that describes the agony [əg'oni] of a soul in search of salvation [səlvə'shən].

(6) The poets of the royalists were known as the cavalier [käv'ɔlər] poets, they wrote beautiful lyrics [lɪr'iks] even in time of war and distress [distres']. (7)

The most important cavalier poet was Robert Herrick [rɔb/ət hɛr/ɪk].

(8) When the Puritans were in power, the royalists lived in France. (9) So when they came back to England, they brought with them the French classic [klās/ɪk] influence to the English literature. (10) The reaction [rɪākʰʃən] against Puritanism [pʊr/ɪtənɪzəm] was to take a lighter view of life which sometimes resulted in licentiousness [lɪsɛnʰʃənɪs], and which was reflected in literature.

(11) In poetry there were the metaphysical [mɛtʰə-fɪz/ɪkəl] poets who wrote in a way which is "not true to nature". (12) John Donne [dɔn] and Abraham Cowley [ā/bɾəhām kow/li] were the chief [chɛf] writers of this school, to which Robert Herrick also belonged. (13) But John Dryden and his followers [ɪd/ɔz] put a stop to the metaphysical verse [vɛs].

(14) The drama of this age was confined to the vulgar imitations [vʊl/gə ɪm/ɪtāʰʃənz] of the French comedy of manners. (15) William Congreve [wɪl/yəm kɔŋg/grəv] and John Dryden were the chief dramatists of the day. (16) But due to the public opposition [ɔp/əzɪʃən] to its licentiousness, it gave place, by the end of the 17th century, to the sentimental [sɛnʰtɪmɛnʰtl] comedy, which was less indecent [ɪn/dɛʰsnt].

(17) The greatest literary figure of the age, John Dryden, wrote satire [sət/ɪr], tragedy, comedy, and prose criticism [krɪʰɪsɪzəm], but he was chiefly [chɛʰflɪ] a poet. (18) Another prose writer of great importance, was John Locke [lɔk], a philosopher [fɪlɔs/ɔfə].

(19) This age was really an age of transition from the Age of Puritanism to the "Classic Age".

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. eminent [ɛm/ɪnənt]: 超羣的。</p> <p>3. preach [prɛch]: 傳教。</p> <p>license [lɪ'səns]: 許可狀。</p> <p>4. Christian [krɪs'tʃən, 或 krɪs'tyən]: 基督教徒。</p> <p>destruction [dɪstrʊk'shən]: 毀壞, 滅亡。</p> <p>burden [bʊr'dn]: 擔, 負擔。</p> <p>sin [sɪn]: 罪惡。</p> <p>achieve [əchɪv]: 做成, 獲得。</p> <p>eternal [ɛtər'nɪl]: 永久的。——<i>eternal life</i>: 永生。</p> <p>obstacle [ɒ'stəkl]: 阻礙。</p> <p>environment [ɪnvɪ'rənmənt, 或 ɛn-]: 環境。</p> <p>5. agony [æg'əni]: 痛苦。
<i>in search of</i>: 尋求, 追求。</p> <p>salvation [səlvə'shən]: 得救, 救恩。 「子。」</p> <p>6. cavalier [kəv'əlɪər]: 騎士, 豪華。</p> <p>lyric [lɪr'ɪk]: 抒情詩。</p> <p>distress [dɪstrɛs]: 憂患。</p> <p>9. classic [klæs'ɪk]: 古代名著(名詞), 模仿古代名著的, 古典派的(形容詞)。</p> <p>10. reaction [rɪ'æk'shən]: 反動。</p> <p>puritanism [pʊr'ɪtənɪzəm]: 清教徒的信仰或行爲。</p> | <p>lighter [lɪ'to]: 較輕便的。</p> <p>licentiousness [lɪ'sɛn'shəs-nɪs]: 放肆, 放蕩, 淫佚。(名詞)</p> <p>11. metaphysical [mɛt'əfɪz'ɪkəl]: 形而上學的。
<i>not true to nature</i>: 與自然不相符, 不近自然, 不自然。</p> <p>12. chief [tʃɪf]: 首要的</p> <p>13. follower [fɒl'əʊ]: 跟從者。</p> <p>verse [vɜrs]: 詩, 詩的一行。</p> <p>14. vulgar [vʊl'gə]: 鄙俗的。</p> <p>imitation [ɪm'ɪtə'shən]: 模仿。(名詞)
<i>comedy of manners</i>: 描寫上等社會生活之喜劇。 「對。」</p> <p>16. opposition [ɒp'əzɪʃ'ən]: 反對
<i>give place to</i>: 讓位於~。</p> <p>sentimental [sɛn'tɪmən'tɪl, 或 -təl]: 富於情感的, 假作多情的。——<i>sentimental comedy</i>: 注重情緒的喜劇。</p> <p>indecent [ɪn'dɛ'snt]: 無禮的, 淫褻的。</p> <p>17. satire [sə'tɪr]: 諷刺, 諷刺文。</p> <p>criticism [krɪ'tɪsɪzəm]: 批評。</p> <p>chiefly [tʃɪf'li]: 主要地。</p> <p>18. philosopher [fɪl'sɒfə]: 哲學家。</p> |
|---|---|

講 義

生 卒

- (A) Dryden, John (特萊頓) 1631—1700
- Herrick, Robert 1591—1674

Donne, John	1573—1631
Cowley, Abraham	1618—1667
Congreve, William	1670—1729
Locke, John (洛克)	1632—1704

(B) metaphysical verse 或譯作“哲理詩”，因為形而上學便是哲學；但這譯法不甚準確；metaphysical verse 實為寫法奇類的詩，如下課 Cherry-Ripe 之白櫻桃轉到他愛人 Julia 的嗜好。

練 習

【背誦】	單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
	agony	agonies	licentiousness	—
	classic	classics	puritanism	—

【解答】 用英文回答：

Who were John Milton, John Bunyan, John Dryden?
When did they live, what did they do, and what are they
known for?

LESSON 65

“Ariel's Song,” etc.

I. ARIEL'S SONG

WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE

Where the bee sucks [sŭks], there suck I (1)
在蜜蜂採蜜處我吸我的食物，

In a cowslip's bell [kow'lip's bĕl] I lie; (2)
在蓮香花心裏我臥着；

There I couch [kowch] when owls do cry. (3)
貓頭鷹叫時，我躺在那裏。

- On the bat's [bāts] back do I fly (4)
 在蝙蝠背上我飛着
- After summer merrily [mēr'ī.ī]. (5)
 緊追夏天,很快活地。
- Merrily, merrily shall I live now (6)
 愉快地,愉快地現在我將過我的生活
- Under the blossom [blōs'əm] that hangs on the bough (7)
 在樹枝下的花裏。
 [bow].

II. TO CELIA

BEN JONSON

- I sent thee [dhō] late a rosy wreath [rō'zī rēth], (8)
 不久以前我送你一個玫瑰花圈,
- Not so much honouring thee, (9)
 不敢說是敬你,
- As giving it a hope, that there (10)
 乃是給它一個希望,在那裏
- It could not withered [wīdh'əd] be; (11)
 使它不至凋謝;
- But thou thereon didst [dhew thārōn' dīd-st] only (12)
 但你在它上面只吹口氣,
 breathe [brōdh],
- And sent'st [sēnt-st] it back to me (13)
 送它回來與我
- Since when it grows, and smells, I swear, (14)
 自那時它生着,和吐出香氣,我大膽地說,
- Not of itself, but thee. (15)
 不是由它自己,乃是由你。

III. CHERRY-RIPE

ROBERT HERRICK

Cherry-ripe [chĕr'í rīp], ripe, ripe, I cry! (16)

櫻桃熟了,熟了,熟了,我叫着!

Full and fair ones! Come and buy! (17)

又豐滿,又美麗! 大家來買呀!

If so be: you ask me where (18)

如果這樣: 你問我, 在哪裏

They do grow, I answer—There, (19)

它們生長, 我便答——在那裏,

When my Julia's [ˈdʒʊˈljʌz] lips do smile [smɪl]; (20)

在我的 Julia 的朱唇微笑處;

There's the land, or cherry-isle [chĕr'í-īl], (21)

就在那地, 或是稱它爲櫻桃島,

Whose plantations [plāntā'shənz] fully show (22)

那裏的園地充份地顯出

All the year where cherries grow. (23)

在那裏櫻桃一年生到底。

IV. *From* THE PILGRIM'S PROGRESS

JOHN BUNYAN

INTERPRETER [ɪntɛr'prɪtə]: (24) The man whose picture this is, is one of a thousand, he can beget [bɪgɛt/]

children, travail [træv'al] in birth with children, and nurture [nɜr'tʃə] them himself, when they are born. (25)

And whereas [whɛrɔz/] thou seest [sɔst/] him with his eyes lifted to Heaven, the best of books in his hand, and

the law ['lɔw] of truth written on his lips: it is to show thee, that his work is, to know and unfold [ʊnfɔld] dark

things to sinners [sɪn'ɔz]; even as thou seest him stand as

if he pleaded [plē'di:d] with men; and whereas thou seest the world as cast behind [kəst bɪhɪ'nd] him, and that a crown [krown] hangs over his head; that is to show thee that slighting [slɪ'tɪŋ] and despising [dɪspɪ'zɪŋ] the things that are present, for the love that he hath [hæθ] for his master's service, he is sure in the world that comes next to have glory [glɔr'i] for his reward.

生 字

1. **suck** [sʌk]: 吸。
2. **cowslip** [kəʊ'slɪp]: 蓮香花。
bell [bɛl]: 花心。——*cowslip's bell*: 蓮香花的花心。
lie [li]: 臥着。(過去時制 *lay* [læ], 過去分詞 *lain* [laɪn])
3. **couch** [kəʊtʃ]: 躺著。
4. **bat** [bæt]: 蝙蝠。
5. **merrily** [mɛrɪ'li]: 快樂地。
7. **blossom** [blɒsəm]: 花。
bough [bəʊ]: 樹枝。
8. **thee** [ði:]: 你。(古 *you* 字, 單數, 受格)
rosy [rɔ:zi]: 玫瑰的。
wreath [rɛθ]: 花圈。
10. **wither** [wɪðə]: 枯萎, 凋謝。
12. **thou** [ðəʊ]: 你。(古 *you* 字, 單數, 主格)
thereon [ðɪə'reɒn]: 在其上。
didst [dɪd-st]: *do* 之過去時制的古體, 與 *thou* 連用。
breathe [brɛθ]: 呼吸, 吹氣。
sent'st [sɛnt-st, s 不與第一個 t 連成 ts] = **sentest** [sɛnt'est]: *send* 之過去時制的古體, 與 *thou* 連用。
19. **cherry** [tʃɛrɪ]: 櫻桃。
- ripe [rɪp]: 熟。——*cherry-ripe*: 櫻桃熟了。
20. **Julia** [dʒʊ'lyə]: 女人名。
smile [smɪl]: 微笑。[櫻桃島]
21. **isle** [ɪl]: 小島。——*cherry-isle*:
22. **plantation** [plæntə'sheɪn]: 園地, 農場。
23. *all the year*: 全年。
24. **interpreter** [ɪntə'prɪtə]: 翻譯者, 說明者。
beget [bɛgət]: 生。(過去時制 *begot* [bɛgət], 過去分詞 *begotten* [bɛgət'n]) [苦痛。
travail [trə'væl]: 經過分娩的
nurture [nɜ:ʃə]: 撫育。
25. **whereas** [whɛrəz]: 至於。
seest [sɛst]: 古體 *see* 的現在時制, 與 *thou* 連用。
the best of books: 書中之最好者, 指聖經。
law [lɔ:]: 法律。
unfold [ʌn'fɔld]: 展開。
dark [dɑ:k]: 真絕的。
sinner [sɪnə]: 罪人。
even as: 正如。
plead [pli:d]: 勸導, 曉諭。
cast [kæst]: 投, 擲。(過去時制

及過去分詞形式不變)

crown [krown]: 皇冕, 王冠。

behind [bīhī'nd]: 在~之後。

slight [slī]: 輕視。

despise [dīspī'z]: 厭棄。

hath [hāth]: has 之古體。

glory [glōr'i]: 榮耀。

reward [rīwō'r/d]: 報酬。

講 義

(A) Ariel 乃 Tempest 劇中主人翁之神役。

(B) 第 4 行因為有狀語短語 on the bat's back 在前, 所以用 do I fly, 雖則此句並非詢問句。又 fly after summer merrily 須一口氣讀完, 不可讀作 fly / after summer merrily, 但在 merrily 之前如欲稍停, 並無不可。

(C) **Colia** [sō'liō]: 女人名, 當係 Ben Jonson 的愛人。

(D) **thou** (主格), **thee** (受格), **thy** [dhī], **thine** [dhīn] (所有格), 皆係古字, 現在於詩歌聖經古書之外已不復見。

(E) It could not withered be = It could not be withered, 是因爲音節的關係, 所以把末兩字的位置倒置。

(F) since when 的 when 當然指上二行所述的事, 可譯爲“其後”。

(G) 本課所選的詩文, 文字較深, 所以用中文譯出。天路歷程的一段, 照美華書局的官話譯本意譯爲: “曉示說: 園中的人, 才德出來, 真神叫他能教把道理感化人, 人受了感化好像重生一樣, 他常常爲著受感化的人勞苦, 像慈母懷抱兒女似的。[至於你所看見的] 他眼睛望天; 手拿着聖書, [真理的法律寫在他唇上]: 這都是教你知道, 他的職分應當曉得真道的奧妙, 時常宜講解說, 叫罪人聽見; 故此 [正如你所見他] 站着好像苦苦勸人似的; [又至於你所看見的] 把世間的榮華擱在他背後, 金冕掛在頭上邊; 叫你知道他一心 [爲了愛] 認真做主的事, 就小看目前一切的東西, 因此到了死後必得榮光的賞。”

(H) 輕視現在世上的快樂以求來世(死後)的榮耀, 這是基督教的本色, 至少聖經中“新約”(New Testament) 有一大部分是教人這樣的。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to I.L. 61—65):

1. With the order, one usually gives some instructions regarding how to pack the goods, how to ship them, how to make the invoices, etc.
2. When the goods are found not in good order, one makes complaints.

3. When we want to make the *receiver of an action* the **subject** of the verb which expresses that action, we use the **passive voice**.
4. The **passive voice** of a verb is formed by **auxiliary be** and the **past participle of the verb**, the **person, number,** and **tense** are expressed in the **auxiliary be**.
5. Note that both the **passive voice** and the **perfect tenses** use the **past participle** form of the verb, and further that the difference lies in that in the **passive voice**, *be* is used, while in the **perfect tenses**, *have* is used.
6. The **passive voice** has no **perfect continuous** and the **future continuous tenses**.
7. Some **intransitive verbs** with **prepositions** following them may be used as **transitive verbs**, and the **prepositions** so used are called **prepositional complements**.
8. An **intransitive verb** and a **prepositional complement** taken together often have a new meaning.
9. After Queen Elizabeth, the misrule of the Stuarts caused a revolution, which ended in establishing a Puritan Republic, known as the Commonwealth, and produced the Puritan Age in literature.
10. The stern moral standards of the Puritans also marked the literature of the age, which may be represented by John Milton, the poet, and John Bunyan, the prose writer, although Sir Thomas Browne and Jeremy Taylor were greater prose writers than Bunyan.
11. Both John Milton's masterpiece, *The Paradise Lost*, and Bunyan's *The Pilgrim's Progress*, were written in

the Restoration period, i.e., after the Commonwealth had failed and the king had been restored to power again.

12. The cavalier or royalist poets wrote lyrics, even in time of war, and the most important among them was Robert Herrick.
13. Many of them were also the metaphysical poets who wrote poems "not true to nature".
14. John Dryden was the only great man of letters in the Restoration period, and he touched almost every form of literature; and it was he and his followers that put a stop to the metaphysical verse.
15. The restoration plays were vulgar imitations of the French comedy of manners, but due to the public opposition to their licentiousness they gave place, by the end of the 17th century, to the sentimental comedy which was less indecent.
16. Among the dramatists of this period we may mention William Congreve, and among the prose writers, John Locke.

* * *

LESSON 66

Moneys of Different Countries

(1) If you are in the import and export business, it will be useful, if not necessary, for you to know the names of the moneys used in different countries. (2) If you are not in this line of business, it will be interesting for you to know them too. (3) However, as we cannot study here the names of all the moneys in the world, we shall confine

[kənfi'n] ourselves to a few which are most likely to be useful to us.

(4) The following countries use dollars: Canada, the U.S.A., and Malaya, which includes the Straits Settlements and the Malay States. (5) The Canadian dollar has the same value [vāl'u] as the American dollar, but not the dollar used in Malaya; and both of them have not the same value as the Chinese or Mexican [mëk'sikən] dollar. So we usually put "G. \$" to indicate the gold dollar, which is the American dollar, "S. \$" to indicate the Straits dollar, and "M. \$", "Mex. \$", or "S. Mex. [mëks]" to indicate the Chinese dollar. (6) Although we call our dollar Mexican dollar, yet in Mexico [mëk'sikō], it is called peso [pā'sō], which is also the monetary [mũn'itərī] unit in the Philippines. (7) The smaller denomination of the dollar is, as you know, the cent, which is $\frac{1}{100}$ of a dollar, and ten cents equal to one dime [dīm], while a centavo [sëntah/vō] is $\frac{1}{100}$ of a peso.

(8) The British use, as you already know, the pound sterling, which has twenty shillings, each of which has twelve pence, each of which has four farthings [fār'dhĩngz]. (9) But in British India, people use the rupee [rōöpē'], which equals sixteen annas [än'oz], each anna equals four pice [pīs], and one pice equals three pies [piz].

(10) In Siam the unit is, as we have already seen, the tical, which has one hundred satangs. (11) The Dutch East Indies uses guilder [gĩl'də], or florin [flōr'ĩn], which is also the unit used in Holland, and which equals one hundred cents. (12) In Indo-China, the unit is piastre [pĩās'tə], which is equal to ten francs [frānks]. (13) The franc is the monetary unit in France, Belgium,

and Switzerland, although it has not the same value in these countries; but everywhere it is divided into 100 centimes [sah/'ntēmz].

(14) In Russia, they use the ruble [rōō'bl], which is divided into one hundred kopecks [kō'pēks]. (15) The Japanese dollar is called yen [yēn], and the Japanese cent, sen [sēn].

(16) The German monetary unit is called Reichsmark [rī'ksn aŭk], or simply mark [mārk], and it is divided into one hundred Reichspfennige [rī'kspfēn'īgì], or simply pfennige [pfēn'īgì]. (17) In Italy, one lira [lēr'ō] equals 100 centesimi [sēntēs'imō]. (18) In Czechoslovakia [chēk'ē-slōval'kō] one krone [krō'nē] is equal to 100 Heller [lēr'ō]. (19) One krone in Denmark and Norway [rōr'wā], or one krona [krō'nō] in Sweden [swō'dn], equals to 100 ore [ōr'ō].

(20) In Belgium five francs equal one belga [bēl'jō], and in Russia ten rubles equal to one tchervonets [chayōn'īts].

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. money [mūn'ī]: 貨幣。</p> <p>3. confine [kōnf'īn]: 限制。</p> <p>5. value [vā'v]: 價值。 [的。 Mexican [mēk'sikōn]: 墨西哥 Mex. [n'ōks] = Mexican 之簡。</p> <p>6. Mexico [mēk'sikō]: 墨西哥。
peso [pēs'ō]: 西班牙古銀幣，墨西哥及菲律賓的銀幣。 [的。 monetary [mun'itōrē]: 貨幣</p> <p>7. dime [dīm]: 角。
centavo [sēntāv'ō]: 1es. 的百分之一。</p> | <p>8. farthing [fār'dhīng]: 法興(辨士四分之一)。</p> <p>9. rupee [rōōpē]: 羅比(印度銀幣)。 [之一]，
anna [ān'ō]: 安娜(羅比十六分)。
pice [pīs]: 排士(安娜四分之一)。
pie [pī]: 排(排士三分之一)。</p> <p>11. guilder [gīl'dō] } 盾(荷蘭及荷
florin [flōr'in] } 屬東印度的
幣制單位)。</p> <p>12. piastre, 或 piaster [pīās'tō]: 安高銀(埃及銀之一種)。</p> |
|--|---|

- franc** [frānk]: 法郎。
centime [sah/ntēm]: 生丁(法郎百分之一)。
14. **ruble**, 或 **rouble** [rōō/bl]: 盧布(俄國幣制單位)。
kopeck [kō/pōk]: 俄國小銅幣。
yen [yōn]: 日金“圓”。
sen [sōn]: 錢(日金“圓”的百分之一)。
16. **Reichsmark**, **mark** [rī/ks-mārk 第一個k只呼口氣, mārk]: 馬克。
Reichspfennig, **pfennig** [rī/kspfōn/īg, pfōn/īg, k 音只呼口氣, 又 p 不讀出亦可]: 芬呢(馬克的百分之一)。 [單位]。
17. **lira** [līr/ō]: 里拉(意大利幣制)
- centesimo** [sōntēs/īmō]: 里拉百分之一。
18. **Czecho-Slovakia** [chōk/ō-slōvah/kīō]: 捷克。
krone [krō/ō]: 克羅耐 捷克, 丹麥, 挪威的幣制單位。
heller [hēl/ō]: 捷克克羅耐百分之一。
19. **Norway** [nōr/wā]: 挪威。
krona [krō/nō]: 克羅拿(瑞典幣制單位)。
Sweden [swē/dn]: 瑞典。
ore [ōr/ō]: 丹麥挪威 krone 及瑞典 krona 的百分之一。
20. **belga** [bēl/jō]: 比利時之五法郎。 [盧布]。
tchervonets [chēvōn/īts]: 十

講 義

(A) 第 5 句 but not the dollar used in Malaya = but it is not so with the dollar used in Malaya.

(B) 關於“銀元”, 說時通常用 dollars Mex. 或 Chinese dollars.

(C) Reich 乃德文“國”字, 大有“國幣”的氣味。

(D) krone, krona, 有人把它們英文化, 拼作 crown [krown]。

(E) 諸幣制的簡寫及符號如下:

Chinese (Mexican) dollar = M \$, Mex. \$, 或 \$..... Mex.

gold dollar = G. \$

Straits dollar = S. \$

cent = c., ct., 或 ¢

cents = c., cts., 或 ¢

dime = d. 或 di.

centavo = c. 或 cent.

pound = £ (Libra)

shilling = s. 或 /-

penny

pence } = d.

rupee = Re.

tical = Tel.

satang = stg.

guilder = g.

florin = fl.

franc = f. 或 fr.

francs = fres.

centime = c.

centimes = cts.

ruble = R.

yen = ¥

Reichsmark = RM.

Reichspfennig = RP.

lira = l.

centesimo = c. 或 cent.

krone } = kr.

krona }

heller = h.

ore = o.

練 習

【背誦】

單 數	複 數	單 數	複 數
peso	pesos	centavo	centavos
pice	pice	Reichsmark	Reichsmarke [-kî]
ycn	ycn	Reichspfennig	Reichspfennige [-gî]
sen	sen	centesimo	centesimi [-mō]
ore	ore	krona	kroner [-nār]
heller	heller	krona	kronor [-nōr]
lira	lire [lēr'ā]		

LESSON 67

The Age of Classicism

(1) The 18th century was the Age of Classicism [klās'isizm], that is, the age of rules and reason. (2) Even in poetry, reason instead of emotion [imō'shən] had its free play. (3) The poetry of this age is polished [pōl'isht], formal [fōr'məl], but unimaginative [ün'imāj'inətiv]. (4) The greatest poet of the age was Alexander Pope [āl'igzəl'ndə'pōp], hence it is also called the Age of Pope.

(5) Pope's masterpiece is *The Rape* [rāp] of the Lock [lōk], a mock-heroic [mōk'hērō'ik] poem. (6) It is the story of a mock battle between the ladies and gentlemen of Queen Anne's [ānz] Court to regain the lock, or curl [kūr], cut by a gentleman from a court-beauty's head. (7) In it, Pope satirized [sāt'ərīzd] the mannerism [mān'ərīzm] of the court.

(8) But the age was an age of prose. (9) In 1696 the

Licensing [lī'sənsɪŋ] Act expired [ɪkspɪr'd], and the age of journalism [jɜ'nəlɪzəm] began. (10) Modern newspapers and literary magazines appeared in great number and helped the development of a serviceable style [sɛr'vɪsəbl stɪl] in prose. (11) Among the journalists [jɜ'nəlɪsts] of this period, the best known were Daniel Defoe [dæn'yəl dɪfə'], Jonathan Swift [jɒn'əθən swɪft], Joseph Addison [jō'zɪf əd'ɪsn] and Richard Steele [rɪch'əd stɛl]. (12) The last two men jointly [jɔɪ'ntli] give us the well-known *Speciator* [spɛktə'tə], while Defoe is best known to us as the author of *Robinson Crusoe* [rɒb'ɪnsn krʊə'sə] and Swift the author of *Gulliver's* [gʊl'ɪvɜz] *Travels*.

(13) *Robinson Crusoe* tells how his ship was wrecked [rɛkt] and he was cast upon an island without human beings, how he started life single-handed [sɪŋ'gl-hænd/dɪd] with his courage and resourcefulness [rɪsɔrs'fʊðnlɪs], and how he finally made a nice home on the island, raising crops [krɒps] and even a herd [hɜrd] of goats. (14) Some people say that this is a story of Defoe's own life, how he was wrecked by the party hatred [hə'trɪd], how he had to start life all over again, and how he finally won himself a place in the literary world. (15) For he was imprisoned by the Tory [tɔr'i] or conservative [kɒnsɛr'vətɪv] government for defending the Whig [whɪg] or liberal principles [lɪbərəl prɪn'sɪplz], and it was only when the Whigs came into power that he was released, and then he was virtually [vɪr'chʊəli] unknown in London as he had been imprisoned for a long time.

(16) *Gulliver's Travels* tells the story of Captain Lemuel [kæp'tɪn lɛm'uel] Gulliver's interesting experiences on the Island of Lilliput [lɪ'lɪpʊt], the land of dwarfs

[dwɔ̃fs] (Book I), and in Brobdingrag [brɔ̃b'dĩngnãg], the land of giants (Books II, III, and IV). (17) Throughout [thrō-ow't] the work, Swift satirized the courtiers, the men of science, etc., of his own country in his time.

(18) We see in this age also a change in the character [kã'iktə] of the essay [ɛs'ã]. (19) The English essay began with Francis Bacon, and all the essayists [ɛs'ãists] coming after him in the 17th century imitated him. (20) Their themes were moral, and their tone [tɔ̃n] personal and individual. (21) But the essays of Addison and Steele as well as those who came after them in the 18th century analysed and criticized [krĩt'ĩsĩzd] their own political [pɔ̃lĩ'ĩkəl] and social life, aiming [ã'mĩng] to teach the readers. (22) The former is called informal [ĩnfɔ̃r'məl] or familiar essay, while the latter, formal essay.

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. classicism [klãs'ĩsĩzm]: 仿古主義 古典主義。</p> | <p>6. curl [kũri]: 捲髮。</p> |
| <p>2. emotion [ĩmɔ̃'sjɔ̃n]: 情感。
<i>free play</i>: 自由表現。</p> | <p>court-beauty [kɔ̃r't-bũ'ti]: 朝中的美人。</p> |
| <p>3. polish [pɔ̃lĩʃ]: 磨琢, 擦亮。
formal [fɔ̃r'məl]: 正式的, 重形式的。</p> | <p>7. satirize [sã'tɔ̃rĩz]: 譏笑。
mannerism [mã'vɔ̃rĩzm]: 拘泥的儀。</p> |
| <p>unimaginative [ĩn'ĩmãj'ĩvĩtĩv]: 缺少想像力的。</p> | <p>9. license [lĩ'sɛns]: 登記, 檢查。
act [ãkt]: 法令。 [完了。]</p> |
| <p>5. rape [rãp]: 搶劫。
leek [lɛk]: 捲髮。</p> | <p>expire [ĩkspĩr'ĩ, 或 ɛks]: 終止。
journalism [jũr'nɔ̃lĩzm]: 新聞事業。</p> |
| <p>mock [mɔ̃k]: 模擬(他人之言談有到頂的, 假的(常含戲弄或侮慢之意))。</p> | <p>10. serviceable [sɛr'vĩsəbəl]: 可用的, 合用的。
style [stãl]: (文章的)格調。</p> |
| <p>heroic [hĩrɔ̃'ĩk]: 英雄的。
<i>mock-heroic poem</i>: 戲仿敘述英雄事蹟的詩。</p> | <p>11. journalist [jũr'nɔ̃lĩst]: 新聞學家, 編輯, 記者。</p> |
| | <p>12. jointly [jɔ̃ĩntli]: 聯合地。</p> |

- spectator** [spɛktə'vətə]: 旁觀者。
13. **wreck** [rɒk]: 船破, (名詞)
human being: 人(不分男女)。
single-handed [sɪŋ'gl-hən'dɪd, 或 sɪŋ'gl-hən'dɪd]: 單身隻手, 赤手空拳。
resourcefulness [rɪsɔ'sʊʊl-nɪs]: 多應變之才。 [五穀。
crop [krɒp]: 收穫;(轉爲)產物。
herd [hɛrd]: 羣。
14. **hatred** [hæt'rɪd]: 怨恨。
all over again: 完全重新。
15. **Tory** [tɔ'ri]: (英國)保王黨(的), 保守黨(的); 保王黨員, 保守黨員。(即今之 Conservative Party)
conservative [kɒnsə'veɪtɪv]: 守舊的, 保守的。
Whig [whɪg]: (英國)民權黨(的); 民權黨黨員。(該黨後成爲 Liberal Party, 即“自由黨”)
- liberal** [lɪ'bɛrəl, 或 -lɪb'rəl]: 開放的, 寬大自由的。
principle [prɪn'sɪpl]: 原理。
virtually [vɪ'tʃuʊəli]: 事實上幾乎。
16. **dwarf** [dwɔ'ri]: 侏儒。
17. **throughout** [θru:ə'ɔʊt]: 全部。 [性質。
18. **character** [kær'ɪktə, -r'ɒk-]:
essay [esə', əs'ə]: 論文。
essayist [esə'ɪst]: 論文作家。
19. **tone** [tɒn]: 調, 語調。
20. **criticize** [krɪ'tɪsɪz]: 批評。
21. **political** [pə'ɪtɪk'əl 或 -ki]: 政治的。
aim [aɪm]: 擲擊, 瞄準; (轉爲)企圖, 志在。
22. **informal** [ɪn'fɔ'məl]: 不拘禮節的。——*informal or familiar essay*: 小品文。
formal essay: 論文。

講 義

- (A) 生 卒
 Pope, Alexander (蒲柏) 1688—1744
 Defoe, Daniel (狄福) 1661—1731
 Swift, Jonathan (斯威夫特) 1667—1745
 Addison, Joseph (愛狄生) 1672—1719
 Steele, Richard (斯帶爾) 1671—1729

- (B) **The Rape of the Lock** = 爭髮之戰。
Spectator = 旁觀者(十八世紀著名之報紙名)。
Robinson Crusoe = 魯濱孫漂流記。
Gulliver's Travels = 海外奇談錄, 格列佛遊記。
Lilliput = 小人國。
Brobdingnag = 大人國。

(C) **Tory** 與 **Whig** 僅用以指英國十八世紀之兩政黨; 如欲指普通之守舊派或改進黨, 則須用 **conservative**, **liberal** 兩字。

練 習

【解答】 用英文回答：

How many kinds of essays are there? What is the difference between them in theme and in tone?

LESSON 68

The Age of Transition

(1) After Pope, Samuel Johnson [săm'wəl jŏn'sn] dominated [dŏm'inātid] the literary world of London for the latter half of the 18th century, although he was hardly a first rate writer. (2) He is now remembered chiefly for editing [ĕd'itŭng] the first Dictionary [dĭk'shənərĭ] of the English Language and as the hero of James Boswell [jāmz bŏz'wŏl], who gave us the immortal [ĭmŏr'tl] *Life of Samuel Johnson*. (3) This was called the Age of Johnson, but really it was an age of transition from Classicism to Romanticism [romăn'tisĭzm]. (4) It saw the beginning of the reaction against the rules and against taking only the court for its subject matter, but Johnson belonged to the old school.

(5) Among the poets of the transitional [trăn'sĭzŏnl] school James Thomson [tŏm'sn] and Oliver Goldsmith [gŏldsmĭth] deserve to be mentioned [mĕn'shŏnd]. (6) Goldsmith touched nearly every type [tĭp] of writing, poems as well as essays, plays as well as novels [nŏv'ŏlz]. (7) As a poet he is remembered for *The Deserted Village*. (8) Thomson started the return of poetry to nature and of poetic forms to Milton and Spenser. (9) But the greater poet of the age was Robert Burns [bŭrnz],

who composed [kɔmpō'zɪd] poems while he ploughed the field, with the result that he was a failure as a farmer. (10) He thought he would go to America and, in order to raise the money for the passage [pās'ɪj] he published [pʌb'lɪʃt] his poems. (11) Then he suddenly found himself famous as *the* Scotch poet, for he was Scotch both in language and in the subject matter. (12) He was given a government work and did not have to go to America, but his head was turned and he failed to produce any more work of great value. (13) His best known works are *Tam O'Shanter* [tām'ə shān'tə], *Hallowe'en* [hā'lō'ē'n], both long narrative poems, and the following shorter poems: *For A' That and A' That* [for all that and all that] and *Auld Lang Syne* [awld læŋ sɪn] ["old long ago" or the "good old days" in English].

(14) *Tam O'Shanter* tells how Tam saw, on his way home after lingering in the village inn for gossip [gɔs'ɪp] after a market day, the witches [wɪtʃ'ɪz] dancing in a church. (15) He exclaimed at the excellence [ɛk'sələns] of one of the dancers and was chased by the witches, and he barely [bār'lɪ] escaped with his horse's tail pulled off by one of the witches as he crossed the bridge. (16) He finally found himself safe on the other side of the bridge, for witches could not cross waters.

(17) Among the prose writers of this age, Edward Gibbon [ɛd'wəl gɪb'ən] and Edmund Burke [ɛd'mənd bɜrk] deserve to be mentioned. (18) Gibbon is still remembered as the author of *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*, while Burke's speeches are still read, though he was a very poor orator [ɔr'ətə].

(19) This age also saw the full development of the

novel. (20) The following were the forerunners [fōrūn'əz] of the novel: Malory's *Le Morte d'Arthur*, Bacon's *New Atlantis* [ətlān'tīs], Sir Thomas More's [tōm'əʊs mōrʒ] *Utopia* [ūtō'pyə], the Italian short stories and the Spanish rogue [rōg] stories of Shakespeare's time, and Bunyan's *Pilgrim's Progress*. (21) The character-writing [kār'ik-tə-rī'ting] of the Restoration period and the sketches [skēčh'iz] in the *Spectator* also helped the development of the novel. (22) Further, Henry Fielding [fō'lding] supplied humour and vigour [vīg'ə], Samuel Richardson [rīčh'ədsn], analysis of human heart, and Laurence Sterne [lōr'əʊs stērn], brilliancy [brīl'yəʊnsī].

(23) Novels are interested in presenting plain folks [fōks] in ordinary environments, unlike romances [rɒn.ən'sɪz] which are interested in presenting heroes and heroines in extraordinary situations. (24) A novel of this age which is still very readable [rē'dəbl] is Goldsmith's *Vicar of Wakefield* [vīk'əreɪ wā'kfēld]

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. dominate [dɒm'ɪnət]: 支配。
<i>literary world</i>: 文學界, 文壇。
<i>first rate writer</i>: 第一流作家。</p> | <p>5. transitional [trān'sɪznl]: 過渡的。</p> |
| <p>2. edit [eɪt]: 編輯。</p> | <p>6. mention [mɛn'tʃən]: 指出。</p> |
| <p>dictionary [dɪkʃənəri]: 字典。
[不死的。]</p> | <p>6. type [taɪp]: 種類。</p> |
| <p>immortal [ɪmɔrtl]: 不死的。</p> | <p>novel [nɒvəl]: 長篇小說, 碑史。</p> |
| <p>life [laɪf]: 傳。(複數 <i>lives</i> [lɪvz])</p> | <p>7. desert [dɪzət]: 遺棄。</p> |
| <p>3. romanticism [rɒmən'tɪz-ɪz]: 浪漫主義。</p> | <p>9. compose [kəm'pəʊz]: 作詩。</p> |
| <p>4. subject matter: 題材。</p> | <p>10. <i>raise the money</i>: 籌資。</p> |
| | <p>passage [pɑsɪdʒ]: 船費, 車費。</p> |
| | <p>publish [pʌb'lɪʃ]: 印行。</p> |
| | <p>14. gossip [gɒs'ɪp]: 閒談。</p> |
| | <p><i>market day</i>: 市集之日。</p> |

- witch** [wɪtʃ]: 女巫(半屬妖怪)。
 15. **excellence** [ɛksələns]: 優越。
rarely [bairli]: 僅僅。
 18. **decline** [dɪklaɪn]: 傾斜; 衰敗。
orator [ɔrətɔ]: 演說家。
 20. **forerunner** [fɔrʌnə]: 前驅者。
rogue [rɔg]: 流氓, 棍徒。
 21. **character-writing** [kærɪk-tə-rɪ'tɪŋ]: 人物描寫。
sketch [skɛtʃ]: 見聞錄。
 22. **vigour**, 或 **vigor** [vɪgə]: 氣力, 體力。
brilliance [brɪl'jənsɪ]: 光輝, 輝煌。
 23. **present** [prɪzənt]: 呈現, 寫出。
folk [fɔk, 1 無音]: 人, 常人。
romance [rɔməns]: 長篇小說, 傳奇。
 24. **readable** [rɛ'dəbl]: 可讀的。
vicar [vɪkə]: 牧師, 主教之代表。

講 義

(A)

	生 卒
Johnson, Samuel (約翰生)	1709—1784
Boswell, James	1740—1795
Thomson, James	1700—1748
Goldsmith, Oliver (高爾斯密士)	1728—1774
Burns, Robert (卑斯)	1759—1796
Gibbon, Edward	1737—1794
Burke, Edmund (柏克)	1729—1797
Mere, Sir Thomas (摩爾)	1480—1535
Fielding, Henry (菲爾丁)	1707—1754
Richardson, Samuel	1689—1761
Sterne, Laurence	1713—1768

(B)

- The Deserted Village = 荒村。
 Hallowe'en = 萬聖節(即十一月一日)之前夕。
 For A' That and A' That = 雖則如此這般。
 Auld Lang Syne = 舊義重提。
 Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire = 羅馬帝國之衰亡。
 New Atlantis = 西方新大陸。注意此書並非描寫美洲的書, 與下面的書為同類的作品。
 Utopia = 烏託邦。
 Wakefield 是地名, 所以 The Vicar of Wakefield 為該處的牧師傳。

(C) 第 8 句 the return of poetry to nature 內中 poetry 當然指詩的內容。

(D) 第 11 句 the Scotch poet, the 用斜體乃強調的寫法, 其意思幾乎等於唯一的蘇格蘭的詩人。

練 習

【解答】 用英文回答：

Who were Samuel Johnson, Oliver Goldsmith,
Robert Burns, Gibbon, and Burke?

LESSON 69

"Amynta and Damon's Death," etc.

I. AMYNTA AND DAMON'S DEATH

JOHN DRYDEN

- On a bank, beside a willow [wīl'ō], (1)
 Heaven her covering, earth her pillow [pīl'ō], (2)
 Sad Amynta [āmīn'to] sighed alone; (3)
 From the cheerless [chēr'lis] dawn of morning (4)
 Till the dews of night returning, (5)
 Singing thus she made her moan [mōn]: (6)
 "Hope is banished [bān'isht], (7)
 Joys are vanished [vā'isht], (8)
 Damon [dā'mōn], my beloved [bīlūvd'], is gone!" (9)

II. *From* ESSAY ON CRITICISM

A. POPE

- A little learning is a dangerous [dā'njɾəs] thing! (10)
 To err [ēr], is human, to forgive [fəgīv'], divine (11)
 [dīvī'n].
 True ease [ōz] in writing comes from art, not chance, (12)
 As those move easiest who have learned to dance. (13)

III. ODE ON SOLITUDE

A. POPE

- Happy the man whose wish and care (14)
 A few paternal [pətê/nl] acres bound, (15)
 Content [kонтэнт'] to breathe his native [nā'tiv] air (16)
 In his own ground. (17)

IV. A LETTER FROM SWIFT TO POPE

September 29, 1725.

(18) I have employed my time (besides ditching [dich'ing]) in finishing, correcting, amending [əmэнд'-ing], and transcribing [trānskī'bīng] my [*Gulliver's*] *Travels* in four parts complete. . . .

(19) But the chief end I propose to myself in all my labours is to vex [vэks] the world, rather than to divert [divêr't] it. . . .

(20) I have ever hated all nations, professions [prоfэш'əns], and communities [kəmun'itiz]; and my love is towards individuals.

(21) For instance, I hate the tribe [trib] of lawyers; but I love Counsellor Such-a-one [kəw'nsilə sүch'əwүн], and Judge Such-a-one. . . .

(22) But principally [prin'səplі] I hate and detest [dītэst'] that animal called man, although I heartily [hār'tilі] love John, Peter [pē'tə], Thomas, and so forth [fōrth]. (23) This is the system upon which I have governed [gүv'ənd] myself many years (but do not tell), and so I shall go on until I have done with them. . . . and

I never will have peace of mind till all honest men are of my opinion [əpɪn'jən]. . . .

(24) The matter is so clear, that it will admit [ədmi't] of no dispute [dɪspu't]; nay [nā], I will hold [hōld] a hundred pounds that you and I agree in the point.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. bank [bānk]: 岸。 | transcribe [trānskri'b]: 繕 |
| willow [wɪ'lə]: 柳樹。 | end [ɛnd]: 目的。 [寫。 |
| 2. pillow [pɪ'lə]: 枕頭。 [悶。 | vex [vɔks]: 激怒。 |
| 4. cheerless [chēr'lis]: 不悅, 愁 | divert [dɪvɛr't]: 供消遣, 解悶。 |
| 6. moan [mōn]: 呻吟。 | 20. ever [ɛv'ə] (= always): 一向。 |
| 7. banish [bān'ɪʃ]: 驅逐。 | profession [prəfɛʃ'ən]: 職 |
| 8. vanish [vān'ɪʃ]: 消滅。 | 業。 [方社會。 |
| 9. beloved [bɪlɔvd/]: 所愛的人。 | community [kəmju'nɪti]: 地 |
| 10. learning [lɛr'nɪŋ]: 學問。 | towards [tɔrdz, tɔrdz, tə- |
| dangerous [dā'nərəs]: 危險的。 | wɔrdz, tɔwɔrdz]: 向。 |
| 11. err [ɛr]: 錯誤, 做錯。 | 21. counsellor [kəʊn'sɪlə]: 法律 |
| forgive [fɔgɪv/]: 饒恕。(過去時 | 顧問。 |
| 制 forgive [fɔgə/v], forgiven | such-a-one [sʊch'əwʊn]: 某 |
| [fɔgɪv'n]) | 某。某人。 [地。 |
| divine [dɪvɪn]: 神聖的。 | 22. principally [prɪn'sɪpli]: 主要 |
| 12. chance [tʃaʊns]: 機會, 偶然的 | detest [dɪtɛst/]: 痛恨。 |
| III ode [əʊd]: 短詩。 [機緣。 | heartily [hɑ:rtɪli]: 衷心地。 |
| solitude [sɔlɪ'ti:əd]: 孤獨, 隱遁。 | forth [fɔ:θ]: 前此。 |
| 14. care [kɑ:]: 憂慮。 | <i>and so forth</i> (= etc.): 等等。 |
| 15. paternal [pətɛr'nəl]: 父親的。 | 23. govern [gʊvən]: 管理。 |
| 16. content [kɔntɛnt/]: 滿足, 愉快。(形容詞) | <i>have peace of mind</i> : 安心。 |
| <i>breathe air</i> 呼吸空氣。 | opinion [əpɪn'jən]: 意見。 |
| native [nə'tɪv]: 本地的。 | 24. admit [ədmi't]: 承認。 |
| 18. employ [ɪm'plɔɪ/, 或 əm-]: 用, 僱用。 | dispute [dɪspu't]: 爭辯。 |
| ditch [dɪtʃ]: 開掘水溝。 | nay [nā]: (舊式的) 否; (現在的 |
| amend [ə'mɛnd/]: 改正。 | 意義) 不只此也。(罕用) |
| | <i>hold a hundred pounds</i> : 賭一百鎊 |
| | 鎊, 以一百鎊打賭。 |

講 義

(A) **heaven her covering, earth her pillow**=with heaven as her covering and earth as her pillow (以天爲被, 大地爲枕)。

(B) 第 10, 11 兩行是不連續的, 但第 12, 13 兩行卻是連續的。這些都是很常引用的句子。

(C) 第 23 句 **but do not tell**=**but do not tell others**。

(D) 第 24 句的 **I will hold a hundred pounds** 的 **hold**, 含有賭而得勝仍可“持有”**a hundred pounds** 的意義。

練 習

【作文】寫一封信向經理請三天假; 理由是弟弟娶親。

LESSON 70

“On the Idea of Time,” etc.

I. ON THE IDEA OF TIME (from *Spectator*)

JOSEPH ADDISON

(1) We might carry this thought farther, and consider a man as, on one side, shortening [shôr/tnîng] his time by thinking on nothing, or but a few things; so, on the other, as lengthening [lěng/thonîng] it, by employing his thoughts on many subjects, or by entertaining [ěñ/tětâ/nîng] a quick and constant succession [kõn/stant saksěsh'on] of ideas. . . .

(2) The hours of a wise man are lengthened by his ideas as those of a fool [fõol] are by his passions [păsh'enz]. (3) The time of the one is long, because he does not know what to do with it; so is that of the other,

because he distinguishes every moment of it with useful or amusing [əmū/zīŋ] thoughts; or in other words, because the one is always wishing it away, and the other always enjoying it.

II. A LETTER FROM OLIVER GOLDSMITH TO HIS BROTHER MAURICE

January, 1779.

DEAR BROTHER,—

(4) I should have answered your letter sooner, but, in truth [trōōth], I am not fond of thinking of the necessities [nīsēs'/ītīz] of those I love, when it is so very little in my power to help them. . . .

(5) You tell me there are fourteen or fifteen pounds left me in the hands of my cousin Lawder [law'də], and you ask me what I would have done with them. (6) My dear brother, I would by no means give any directions to my dear worthy [wêr'dhī] relations at Kilmore [kīl'mōr] how to dispose [dīspō'z] of money which is, properly speaking, more theirs than mine. (7) All that I can say is that I entirely, and this letter will serve to witness [wīt'nīs], give up any right and title [tī'tl] to it; and I am sure they will dispose of it to the best advantage [ədvah/'ntīj]. (8) To them I entirely leave it; whether they or you may think the whole necessary to fit you out, or whether our poor sister Johnson may not want half, I leave entirely to their and your discretion [dīskrēsh'ən].

(9) If, then, you have a mind to oblige me, you will write often, whether I answer you or not. (10) Let me

particularly [pə'tɪkʻʊləli] have the news of our family and old acquaintances [əkwā'ntənsɪz].

{11} Yours most affectionately [əfɛk'shənli],
Oliver Goldsmith

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. shorten [shɔɹ'tn]: 縮短。 | 可敬的。 |
| lengthen [lɛng'thɛn]: 拉長。 | relation [rɪlʻəʃən]: 親戚。 |
| entertain [ɛn'tɛtʻən]: 招待。 | dispose [dɪspɔɹ'z]: 處置。 |
| constant [kɔn'stənt]: 有恆的, 時常的。 | 7. witness [wɪ'tnɪs]: 作證(云謂詞), 證人(名詞)。 |
| succession [sɛksɛʃ'ən]: 連續, 連綿。(名詞) | title [tɪ'tl]: 權利。—— <i>title to it</i> : 對於它的權利。 |
| 2. fool [fɔɹ]: 愚人, 蠢漢。 | advantage [əd'vɑh'ntɪdʒ]: 利益。—— <i>to the best advantage</i> : 得到最大的利益。 |
| passion [pəʃ'ən]: 情感。 | 8. fit [fɪt]: 裝置, 設備。【意。 |
| 3. amuse [ə'mu:z]: 使快樂。—— <i>amusing</i> [ə'mu:zɪŋ]: 悅人的, 有趣的。【理。 | disc etion [dɪskɹɛʃ'ən]: 主 |
| 4. truth [tru:θ]: 真實的情形, 真 | 10. particularly [pə'tɪkʻʊləli]: 特別地。 |
| necessity [nɛsɛs'ɪti]: 需要; 必需品。 | acquaintance [əkwā'ntəns]: 相識的人。 |
| 6. direction [dɪrɛk'shən, dɔ-, dɪ-]: 命令, 指導。 | 11. affectionately [əfɛk'shənli]: 親愛地。 |
| worthy [wɛr'thi]: 有價值的; | |

講 義

(A) 第一節乃自一篇頗長的文章中選出。We might carry this thought farther 的 this thought 乃指上文所引哲學家 John Locke 之言。

(B) so is that of the other, because he distinguishes every moment of it with useful or amusing thought = “另一種人的時間也是長的, 因為他用有益的或可人的思想使這時間的一分一秒都顯得很特別。

(C) But, in truth, ... to help them = “但依實情而講, 在我沒有什麼能力可以幫助他們的時候, 我便不大愛想到我所愛的人之需要”。

(D) to fit you out = “以供你的設備”。

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 66—70):

1. Here is a table of the moneys of the different countries, which we have learned.

Country	Unit	Smaller Denomination		
China	dollar	dime	cent	
U.S.A. } Canada }	dollar	dime	cent	
Malay	dollar		cent	
Mexico } The Philippines }	peso		centavo	
Great Britain	pound sterling	shilling	penny	farthing
British India	rupee	anna	pice	pie
Holland } Dutch East Indies }	florin guilder		cent	
Siam	tical		satang	
Indo-China	piastre			
Franco } Belgium } Switzerland }	franc		centime	
Russia	ruble		kopeck	
Japan	yen		sen	
Germany	Reichsmark (mark)		Reichspfennig (pfennig)	
Italy	lira		centesimo	
Czecho-Slovakia	krone		heller	
Denmark } Norway }	krone		ore	
Sweden	krona		ore	

2. Following the Age of Dryden was the Age of Pope or Classicism which means rules and reason, and the literary works of this period were polished, formal, but unimaginative.
3. Pope was the only poet of the period we need to know, but the age produced such great prose writers

as Jonathan Swift, who gave us *Gulliver's Travels*, Joseph Addison and Richard Steele, who jointly gave us the *Spectator*, and Daniel Defoe, who give us *Robinson Crusoe*.

4. The nature of the essay, which began with Francis Bacon, was also changed; from Bacon till the end of the 17th century, the essay was chiefly of the familiar type, but with the 18th century the formal essay developed.
5. By the latter half of the 18th century the reaction against classicism began to set in, although the literary world was dominated by Samuel Johnson, who belonged to the old school.
6. Among the poets of the transition, Oliver Goldsmith and Robert Burns, the Scotch poet, deserve to be mentioned; and among the prose writers, Edmund Burke for his speeches and Edward Gibbon for *The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*.
7. Novel, which is interested in plain folks in ordinary circumstances, was also fully developed in this age, Henry Fielding, Samuel Richardson and Laurence Sterne being among the best known novelists.
8. Goldsmith touched almost every form of writing, poetry, drama, novel, essay, etc.

* * *

LESSON 71

The Moods of Verbs

(1) We have seen that **verbs** are used differently in different kinds of sentences, and the **manner** in which a

verb is used is called the **mood of the verb**. (2) In an **interrogative sentence**, the verb is in the **interrogative mood**; in **indicative and exclamatory sentences**, **indicative mood**; in an **imperative sentence**, **imperative mood**. (3) But there are two other moods, the **subjunctive mood** which expresses a **thought** rather than a fact, and the **infinitive mood**, which means no more than a verb in its **infinitive form**. (4) So we have **five moods**, although most of the grammarians [grəmār'īənz] recognize [rək'əgnīz] only three, viz. the **indicative**, the **imperative**, and the **subjunctive moods**. (5) Logically [ləj'ikəlī], there can be only two moods, the **objective mood** which tells a **fact**, and the **subjective mood**, which tells a **thought**, a **wish**, a **command**, a **possibility**, etc. (6) But we need only to study the **subjunctive mood** here, as the other moods call for no special attention.

(7) The **subjunctive mood** we may study under two headings, its **forms** and its **uses**.

(8) The **subjunctive mood** of a verb differs [dɪf'əz] from the other moods in that it has **no personal ending**, which means that it has **one form for all persons and numbers except the future tenses**, and that its **subject** is usually preceded by the word *if*. (9) The following are the different **forms** of the various **tenses** of two verbs in the **subjunctive mood**, the **subjects** are omitted, but you can easily supply them: *if I, if you, if he, if we*, etc.

Tense	To Be	To Do	
		Active	Passive
<i>Present</i>	be	do	be done
<i>Present Perfect</i>	have been	have done	have been done
<i>Present Continuous</i>		be doing	
<i>Present Perf. Cont.</i>		have been doing	

<i>Past</i>	were	did	were done
<i>Past Perfect</i>	had been	had done	had been done
<i>Past Continuous</i>	were being	were doing	were being done
<i>Past Perf. Cont.</i>		had been doing	
<i>Future</i>	should be	should do	should be done
<i>Future Perfect</i>	should have been	should have done	should have been done
<i>Future Continuous</i>		should be doing	
<i>Future Perfect Continuous</i>		should have been doing	

(10) The conjugation given here for the **future** and the **future continuous tenses**, i.e., *should* with all the **three persons**, is to be used in the **subordinate clause**, while in the **main clause**, *would* has to be used with the **second and third persons**. (11) In the **future perfect** and the **future perfect continuous tenses** *would* also has to be used with the **second and third persons**, while *should*, with the **first person**.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 2. <i>interrogative mood</i> : 詢問語氣。 | <i>objective mood</i> : 客觀的語氣。 |
| 3. <i>infinitive mood</i> : 無限制語氣。 | <i>subjective mood</i> : 主觀的語氣。 |
| 4. <i>grammarian</i> [grə'mɑ:riən]:
文法學家。 [認明, 承認。 | 5. <i>logically</i> [lədʒikəli]: 依邏輯而 |
| <i>recognize</i> [rək'əgnɪz]: 認識, | 6. <i>call for</i> (=need): 需要。 [言。 |
| | 8. <i>differ</i> [dɪfə]: 異於。 |

講 義

(A) 本課第一段完全是理論, 只須知道, 不必強記。

(B) 末段所講的是在主句, 即云謂詞之假想式的將來諸時制應如下:

		將來時制	將來繼續時制	將來完了時制
I <i>should</i>	We <i>should</i>	be	be doing	have been
You <i>would</i>	You <i>would</i>	have	將來完了繼續	have done
He	} <i>would</i> They <i>would</i>	love	時制	have been loved
She		be loved	have been	
It			doing	

但將來完了時制及將來完了繼續時制在子句中亦照此式。

練 習

【造句】 as regards, regarding, with regard to, in regard to.

LESSON 72

The Subjunctive Mood

(1) In the last lesson we have studied the **forms** of the different **tenses** of the **subjunctive**, but unlike [ŭn/lī'k] the other **moods**, these **forms of tenses** of the **subjunctive mood** do not correspond [kōr'ispōnd"] with the **real tenses**. (2) The **past perfect** is used to indicate the **past**; the **past**, to indicate the **present** or the **future**, and sometimes the **past**; the **present**, to indicate the **present** or the **future**; and the **future**, to indicate the **present** or the **future**, but more often to indicate something in general.

(3) The **subjunctive** usually expresses either a **wish** or a **supposition** [sŭp'əzīsh"ən]. (4) "God *ble*ss you" or "May you *be well soon*" expresses a **wish**. (5) There are two kinds of **suppositions**, the **condition** and the **concession** [kōnsōsh"ən]. (6) A sentence containing a **condition** or **concession** usually has two **clauses**, one subordinate clause containing the **condition** or **concession**, while the main clause makes a **statement**. (7) "If I go, he will come" is a **conditional** [kəndīsh"ənl] **sentence**, and whether the action expressed in the **main clause** will or will not come true **depend on** whether or not the condition, i.e., the action expressed in the **subordinate clause** is true; for that sentence means: "If I go, he will come", but "If I do not go, he will not come".

(8) "*Even if should I go, he will not come*" is a sentence containing a **concession**, and the action expressed in the **main clause** will take place no matter whether the concession, i.e. the action expressed in the **subordinate clause** takes place or not; for the example means: "No matter whether I go or not, he will not come."

(9) The **conditional** clause usually begins with an *if*, but it may also begin with the **auxiliary verb**, thus "*Had I known it, I would not come*", "*Were I to go, I would go now*".

(10) The clause of **concession** usually begins with *although*, *though*, *even if*, *as*, *however*, etc., thus: "*However that may be, it has nothing to do with me*".

(11) The **condition** or **concession** may be regarded as a **fact**, as **something doubtful** [dow/'fʊʊl], or **contrary** [kɔn'trɔrɪ] to fact. (12) A **supposition** that is regarded as a **fact** is expressed by a **verb** in the **indicative mood**; a **doubtful supposition** is usually expressed by a **future** or **present subjunctive**; and a **contrary-to-fact supposition**, by a **past** or a **past perfect subjunctive**. (13) The **verb** in the **main clause** may be in the **subjunctive**, the **imperative**, or the **indicative mood**, depending on whether the statement is regarded as a **supposition** or as a **fact**. (14) Examples—*Suppositions regarded as facts, verbs in the indicative mood*: "*It that is true, let me go now*". (15) "*Rich as she is, she does not help the poor*". (16) *Doubtful suppositions, verbs in the future or present subjunctive*: "*Though he be rich, he can not be happy*". (17) "*If you should come, we would meet you at the wharf [whɑ:f]*". (18) *Contrary-to-fact suppositions, verbs in the past or past perfect subjunctive*: "*If it were not for you, I might have to remain outside until now*". (19) "*Even if he had not helped me, I know he is faithful to all his friends*".

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. unlike [ʌn/'i:l'k]: 與~不同。 | 步,退一步而言,所指“一步”。 |
| correspond [kɔr/'i:spɔnd'']: 一致,符合。 | 7. conditional [kəndiʃh/'ənl]: 有條件的。 |
| 3. supposition [sʌp'əzɪʃh''ən]: 假設。 | 8. even if : 雖則。 |
| 5. condition [kəndiʃh/'ən]: 條件。 | 11. doubtful [daʊt'fʊl]: 可疑的。 |
| concession [kɔnsəʃh/'ən]: 讓 | contrary [kɔn'trɔri]: 相反的。 |
| | 17. wharf [wɔ:ɹf]: 碼頭。 |

講 義

(A) *correspond* 作“符合,一致”解時,與 *with* 或 *to* 合用;作“通訊”解時,只可與 *to* 合用。

(B) *contrary* 之後須有 *to* 字。

(C) *as*, *however* 只可用以介紹當作事實的或可疑的讓步, *even if* 只可用以介紹與事實相反的讓步, *though* 與 *although* 則可介紹各種的讓步。

練 習

【造句】 *Had he...* *Were I...* *Although...*
Even if... *As...* *If...*

LESSON 73

The Age of Romanticism

(1) The revolt against Classicism, as we shall see in this lesson, resulted in the Age of Romanticism. (2) The Romanticists' [romənti'stists] emphasis on individual genius [dʒi'nyəs] made them revolt against the rules and conventions [kɔnven'shənz] of Classicism, and they went back to the Elizabethan and earlier poets for models

[mɔd'ɪz]. (3) Their return to nature and plain humanity [hʌmən'ɪtɪ] for subject matter made them revolt against the rational [ræʃ'nɪ] and selfish [sɛl'fɪʃ] way of looking at life, and it also made them sympathetic [sɪm'pæθɛt'ɪk] to the poor and the oppressed [əprɛst'].

(4) But Romanticism did not blossom out until the arrival [əri'vəl] of William Wordsworth and Samuel Taylor Coleridge. (5) They were the leaders of the movement [mʊv'mənt], while Sir Walter Scott [waw'lɪtə skɔt] popularized [pɒp'uləraɪzd] it.

(6) Just as Wordsworth gave charm to the everyday life or common topics with simple treatment [trɔ'tmɛnt] in simple language, Coleridge gave an impression [ɪm'prɛʃh'ən] of reality to such romantic and supernatural [sʊ'pənætʃ'rəl] theme as *The Ancient Mariner* [ā'nshənt mār'ɪnə]. (7) Scott created the ballad epics, the chief among which are *The Lay* [lā] of the *Last Minstrel* [mɪn'strɛl] and *The Lady of the Lake* [lāk].

(8) Coming after Scott, George Gordon, Lord Byron [jɔrj gɔr'dn, lɔrd bɪr'ən] won public admiration [əd'mɔrə'shən] by a series of brilliant poems, voicing the spirit of revolt of the Napoleonic [nəpō'liɔn'ɪk] Age. (9) He revolted not only against the poetic convention, but also against the English society [səsi'ətɪ], religion [rɪlɪj'ən], etc., and he died fighting for the Greeks in their revolt against the Turks [tɜrks]. (10) His best known works are *Childe Harold's Pilgrimage*, *The Prisoner of Chillon* [ʃɪl'jɔn'], and *Don Juan* [dɔn dʒuː'n].

(11) Percy Bysshe Shelley, [pɛr'sɪ bɪʃh ʃɛl'ɪ], an idealist [ɪdɪ'əlɪst], was also in revolt against social insti-

tutions, and he sang the liberation [līb'ərā'shən] of mankind in his lyric drama, *Prometheus Unbound* [prəmē'thūs ūn'bow'nd]. (12) But he is better known as a lyric poet, *The Clouds*, *To a Skylark* [skī'lār̄k], *Ode to the West Wind*, and *To Night* are but a few of his best. (13) John Keats [kōts] was also a great lyric poet of rich imagination. (14) Among his best known works are *La Belle Dame sans Merci* [lah bēl dahm sah'n mēr'sō], *To a Grecian Urn* [grē'shən ūrn], *To a Nightingale* [nī'tīnggāl], and his masterpiece is *Eve of St. Agnes* [snt āg'nīs].

(15) Among the novelists [nōv'əlīsts] of the Romantic school, Scott and Miss Jane Austin [jān aw'stīn] were most prominent [prōm'īnənt]. (16) The former's best known novels are *Waverley* [wā'vəlī], *Kenilworth* [kēn'il-wōth], and *Ivanhoe* [ī'vənhō], while the latter's are *Pride* [prīd] and *Prejudice* [prēj'ōōdīs], and *Sense* [sēns] and *Sensibility* [sēn'sībīl'itī].

(17) Literary criticism became highly developed in this age too. (18) Among the great critics [krīt'iks] of the age were Coleridge, Scott, Charles [chārlz] Lamb, Thomas De Quincey [tōm'əs dəkwīn'sī], Leigh [lē] Hunt, and William Hazlitt [hāz'līt]. (19) Charles Lamb is best known for *The Essays of Elia* [ō'līō], which contains some of the best familiar essays in the English language, for he had a humour of his own. (20) De Quincey is a great stylist [stī'līst], as his *Confessions* [kənfēsh'əns] of an *English Opium-Eater* [ō'pyəm-ō'tō] clearly shows.

生 字

1. **romanticist** [romān'tisist]:
浪漫主義者。

genius [jē'njəs]: 天才。(複數加 -es [-iz])

- convention** [kən'venʃən]: 慣例。
- model** [mɒd'l]: 模型。[慣例。]
3. **humanity** [hūmən'ɪtɪ]: 人類; 人性。
- rational** [ræʃ'nɪ, ræʃ'ənɪ]: 理性的, 基於理性的。
- selfish** [sɔɪ'lɪʃ]: 自私自利的。
- sympathetic** [sɪm'pæθətɪ'k]: 表同情的。
- oppress** [ə'pres]: 壓迫。——
the oppressed: 被壓迫者。
4. **arrival** [ə'raɪvəl]: 來到(轉為)成者。[動。]
5. **movement** [məʊv'mənt]: 運動。
- popularize** [pɒp'jʊləraɪz]: 使受羣衆歡迎, 大眾化。
6. **treatment** [tri'tri:mənt]: 處理的方法。[象。]
- impression** [ɪm'preʃ'n]: 印。
- supernatural** [sʊ'pənətʃ'ə-rəl, 或 -nətʃ'rəl]: 超自然的, 神奇的。[老的。]
- ancient** [æ'nʃənt]: 古代的, 古。
- mariner** [mɑr'ɪnə]: 航海者。
7. **ballad epic**: 敘述英雄事蹟的民歌。
- lay** [lə] (=ballad): 民歌。
- minstrel** [mɪn'strəl]: 歐洲中世紀之詩人或樂師。
- lake** [leɪk]: 湖。
8. **lord** [lɔ:d]: 男爵, 伯爵之稱呼。
- admiration** [əd'mɛrə'shən]: 欣賞, 欽佩。
- voice** [voɪs]: 說, 陳述, 吐露。
- Napoleonic** [nəpə'lɪjən'ɪk]: 拿破崙的。
9. **society** [sə'saɪətɪ]: 社會。
- religion** [rɪ'lɪj'ɪn]: 宗教。
- Turk** [tɜ:k]: 土耳其人。
10. **prisoner** [prɪz'nə]: 囚犯。
11. **idealist** [ɪdɪ'əlɪst]: 理想家。
- liberation** [lɪb'ərə'shən]: 解放。
- unbind** [ʊn'bɪnd]: 解開。(過去時制及過去分詞 *unbound* [ʊn'baʊnd]: 解開, 被釋放) [鐵。]
12. **skylark** [ski'lɑ:k]: 天鵝, 百。
14. **Grecian** [grɛ'shən]: 希臘的。
- urn** [ɜ:n]: 甕, 壺。[器。]
- nightingale** [nɪ'tɪŋgæl]: 夜。
- St.** [sənt, 或 sənt, sɪnt, snt, 或 t 音不讀] = *saint* (聖人) 之簡。
15. **novelist** [nəʊvəlɪst]: 小說家。
- prominent** [prəm'ɪnənt]: 顯著的, 超羣的。
16. **pride** [praɪd]: 驕傲。
- prejudice** [preɪ'dʒʊdɪs]: 偏見。
- sense** [səns]: 感覺, 意識。
- sensibility** [sən'sɪbɪl'ɪtɪ]: 感覺性。
18. **critic** [krɪtɪk]: 批評者。
20. **stylist** [staɪ'lɪst]: 精於字句的文學家, 文體家。
- confession** [kən'fɛʃ'n]: 自認的事, 悔過, 懺悔。
- opium** [ə'pɪəm]: 鴉片。
- eater** [eɪ'tə]: 食者。[鴉片者。]
- opium-eater** [ə'pɪəm-eɪ'tə]: 吸

講 義

(A) movement 乃謾字運動，消滅文盲運動或其他的運動之“運動”，不是運動會的“運動”。

(B) 注意 George Gordon, Lord Byron 中 Lord 字之前有點號(,)。

(C) the spirit of revolt of the Napoleonic Age = “拿破崙時代的反叛的精神”。拿破崙恰在法國革命之後，他雖反與稱帝，但革命的精神於社會制度上仍有所表現。

生 卒

(D) Wordsworth, William (華茲華士)	1770—1850
Coleridge, Samuel Taylor (辜勒律已)	1772—1834
Scott, Sir Walter (史各脫)	1771—1832
Byron, George Gordon, Lord (拜倫)	1788—1824
Shelley, Percy Bysshe (雪萊)	1792—1822
Keats, John (濟慈)	1795—1821
Austin, Jane (奧斯丁)	1775—1817
Lamb, Charles (萊姆)	1775—1834
De Quincey, Thomas (第昆西)	1785—1859
Hunt, Leigh (亨脫)	1784—1859
Hazlitt, William (韓士律脫)	1778—1830

(E) Childe Harold's Pilgrimage 中 pilgrimage 一字不作“進香遊聖地”解，乃“週遊名勝之旅行”；childe 乃貴族未成爲 knight 前之暱號，按貴族未成 knight 時須週遊各地以廣見聞。

(F) Chillon 乃瑞士地名。

(G) Prometheus Unbound.—Prometheus 乃希臘半人半神之英雄，人類之好友，教人許多有用的東西，最後因爲偷了火與人而觸犯 Zeus 之怒（因爲 Zeus 要人類愚蠢受苦），被釘在石壁上，日間被鷹鳥啄食其臟腑，夜間恢復原狀，每日如此，經過了許多年代，始有名 Heracles [hēr'aklēs] 者打斷他的鎖鍊而釋放他。所以 Shelley 用這故事來謳歌人類的被解放。

(H) La Belle Dame sans Merci 乃法文，等於英文 The Beautiful Lady without Mercy（無惡心的美人）。

(I) To a Grecian Urn 的 urn 乃指火葬後盛灰燼的“壺”或“甕”。

(J) Opium-eater 幾乎成爲 De Quincey 的暱號，平常“吸鴉片者”要用 opium-smoker [smō'kə], “鴉片鬼”= opium fiend [fiend]。

練 習

【背誦】	單 數	複 數
	emphasis	emphases [-sōz]
	genius (天才)	geniuses [-sìz]
	genius (鬼仙)	genii [gē'nīi]

現在時制	過去時制	過去分詞
unbind	unbound	unbound

LESSON 74

The Age of Tennyson and Browning

(1) The Age of Romanticism was one of the two greatest creative periods in English literature, the other period being the Elizabethan Age. (2) The Victorian [vīktōr'īən] Age which came next was in reality but a continuation [kōntīn'ūā'shən] of the Age of Romanticism. (3) Some people call it the Age of Tennyson [tēn'isn] and Browning [brōw'nīng], after the two great poets of this period, although it was chiefly an age of prose.

(4) Both of these poets wrote long narrative poems as well as shorter ones. (5) Robert Browning's long poems are argumentative [ā'r'gūmēntōtīv] and somewhat [sūm'-whōt] philosophical [fīl'əsōf'īkl], but his shorter poems are, like all of Tennyson's poems, melodious [mīlō'dyəs] and emotional. (6) The best known works of Alfred, Lord Tennyson are *In Memoriam* [mēmōr'īəm], *Maud* [mawd], *The Idylls [ī'dīlz] of the King*, and *Enoch Arden* [ē'nōk ār'dn]; while those of Browning are *Pippa* [pīp'ə] *Passes*, *The Ring and the Book*, *The Pied Piper* [pīd pī'pə]. *How We*

Brought the Good News from Ghent [gěnt] to Aix [āks], etc.

(7) The prose of this age may be treated under two headings: the novel and the essay. (8) The English essays of this period included more formal than informal or familiar ones. (9) Among the best familiar essayists was Robert Louis Stevenson. (10) Thomas Carlyle [kār-lī/], Thomas Babington Macaulay [bāl/ington məkaw/li], John Ruskin [rūs'kīn], Matthew Arnold [māth/ū ārnld], were the most notable among the formal essayists.

(11) Carlyle was a very forceful [fōr/sfōōl] moral teacher and had great influence over Ruskin, the great art critic as well as writer on the economic [ē'kənōm'ik] problems of the day. (12) Lord Macaulay was a writer on many subjects, while Matthew Arnold was chiefly a literary critic. (13) Macaulay wrote long sentences, but his writing is very clear all the same, Ruskin's prose reads at times like poetry.

(14) The publication [püb/likā'shən] of Charles Darwin's [dār'wīnz] *Origin* [ōr'igin] of *Species* [spō'shōz] caused a sharp conflict between science and the so-called [sō'kawld] religion. (15) Among the noted writers who championed [chām'pyənd] the cause of science were Charles Darwin, Alfred Russel Wallace [rūs/l wōl/əs], Thomas Henry Huxley [hüks/li], and Herbert Spencer [hēi/bət spěn'sə].

(16) There were four great novelists in this age, viz., Charles Dickens [dīk'inz], William Makepeace Thackeray [mā'kpēs thāk'ərē], George Eliot [ēl'yot], whose real name was Mary Ann Evans [ān ō'vənz], and George Meredith [mēr'ədīth]. (17) Dickens's [dīk'inziz] masterpiece is *David Copperfield* [dā'vīd kōp'fōld], which is a story

of his own life, and among his other well-known works are *The Pickwick* [pɪk'wɪk] *Papers* and *The Old Curiosity* [kʊr'ɪɔs'ɪtɪ] *Shop*. (18) He created many living characters and realistic situations. (19) Thackeray's *Vanity Fair* [væn'ɪtɪ fɑː] brought him fame [fɑːm], and his *Henry Esmond* [ɛs'mɒnd] still remains one of the best historical novels. (20) George Eliot founded the psychological [sɪ'kɒləʒ'ɪkəl] novel, in which the motives [mō'tɪvz] of the characters are closely analysed. (21) Her works are at times philosophical. (22) Her best known novels are *Adam Bede* [ləd], *Silas Marner* [sɪ'ləs mɑː'nə], and *Romola*. [rɒm'lə].

(23) Dickens drew his material from the lower class people, George Eliot from the middle class, while Thackeray from the upper middle class and the aristocracy [ɑːr'ɪstɒk'rəsi]. (24) Both Dickens and Thackeray possessed humour and pathos [pɑː'thɔs] to a high degree.

(25) George Meredith was both a poet and a novelist, though he was not very popular as the one or the other. (26) His best novel is *The Egoist* [ɛg'ɔɪst]. (27) Much more popular was Robert Louis Stevenson, who wrote both romances and novels, besides familiar essays and poems. (28) Among his works of fiction [fɪk'shən], *The Treasure* [trɛz'hʊ] *Island*, *The Kidnapped* [kɪd'næpt], and *Dr. Jekyll* [dʒ'ekɪl] and *Mr. Hyde* [haɪd] deserve to be mentioned.

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>2. Victorian [vɪktɪ'ʃɪən]: 屬於英國女王維多利亞 (Victoria [vɪktɪ'ʃɪə]) 的。</p> <p>continuation [kɒntɪ'njuə'shən]: 繼續。</p> | <p>5. argumentative [ɑː'gʊməntə'tɪv]: 爭辯的, 理論的。</p> <p>somewhat [sʊm'wɒt, -wɔt]: 稍, 略。 [哲學的,]</p> <p>philosophical [fɪ'lɔ'ɒf'ɪkəl]:</p> |
|---|--|

- melodious** [mīlō'dyōs]: 音節和諧的。 [詩, 短歌。
6. **idyll** [i'dīl]: 描寫鄉村生活的短
11. **forceful** [fōr'sfōl]: 有力的。
art critic: 美術批評家,
economic [ē'kōnōm'ik]: 經濟的,
12. **literary critic**: 文學批評家。
- 4 **publication** [pub'līkə'shən]: 印行, 刊行。
- origin** [ōr'ijīn]: 原始。
- species** [spē'shēz]: 物的種類。(複數同)
- so-called** [sō'kaw'ld, sō-kaw'ld, 或 sō-kaw'ld]: 所謂。
15. **champion** [chām'pīōn]: 擁護。
- cause** [kawz]: 主張, 運動。
17. **curiosity** [kūr'īōs'ītī]: 珍品, 骨董。——*curiosity ship*: 骨董店。
19. **vanity** [vān'ītī]: 虛榮, 奢望。——*Vanity Fair*: 虛榮市(書名)。
- fame** [fām]: 名, 名譽。
20. **psychological** [sī'kə'ōj'īkōl]: 心理學的。
- motive** [mō'tīv]: 動機。
24. **pathos** [pā'thōs]: 感傷(即發起同情心或憐憫心之原動力)。(此字無複數)
23. **egoist** [ēg'ōist]: 利己主義者。
28. **fiction** [fīk'shən]: 小說。
- treasure** [trēz'ū]: 財寶。
- kidnap** [kīd'nāp]: 綁票。

講義

(A) 注意 Dickens 的所有格爲 Dickens's, 非 Dickens'。許多人名的所有格都是如此, 尤其是單音節的人名。

(B) *fiction* 乃小說之總稱, *novel*, *romance*, *short story* 皆包括在內。
生 卒

- (C) Browning, Robert (白朗寧) 1812—1889
Tennyson, Alfred Lord (丁尼生) 1809—1892
Stevenson, Robert Louis (史蒂芬生) 1850—1894
Carlyle, Thomas (加里爾) 1795—1881
Macaulay, Thomas Babington (麥果萊) 1800—1859
Ruskin, John (羅司金) 1819—1900
Arnold, Matthew (安諾德) 1822—1883
Darwin, Charles (達爾文) 1809—1882
Wallace, Alfred Russel (華萊士) 1823—1913
Huxley, Thomas Henry (赫胥黎) 1825—1895
Spencer, Herbert (斯賓塞) 1820—1905
Dickens, Charles (迭更斯) 1812—1870
Thackeray, William Makepeace (薩克萊) 1811—1863
Eliot, George (伊略奧脫) (Mary Ann Evans) 1820—1880

(D) In Memoriam 是一首悼友人的詩。

(E) Idylls of the King 是寫 King Arthur 的故事詩，雖名為短詩，但並不短，至少與中國詩比較起來。

(F) Charles Dickens 與 Stevenson 的小說，許多有中文譯本，例如 Ivanho=撒克遜以後英雄略；David Copperfield=塊肉餘生記；The Old Curiosity Shop=孝女耐兒傳；The Treasure Island=寶島，金銀島；Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde=易形奇術，二重人格。

練 習

【解答】 用英文回答：

Who were the great poets of the Victorian Age? the essayists? and the novelists?

LESSON 75

From "The Lay of the Last Minstrel," etc.

I. From THE LAY OF THE LAST MINSTREL.

SIR WALTER SCOTT

- Breathes there the man with soul so dead (1)
 Who never to himself hath said, (2)
 "This is my own, my native land!" (3)
 Whose heart hath ne'er [nār] within him burned (4)
 As home his footsteps [fōot/'stēps] he hath turned (5)
 From wandering [wōn/'drīng] on a foreign strand (6)
 [strānd]?
- If such there breathes, go, mark him well! (7)
 For him no minstrel raptures [rāp/'chōz] swell [swēl]; (8)
 High though his titles, proud [prōwd] his name, (9)
 Boundless [bow/'ndlis] his wealth [wōlth] as wish can (10)
 claim [klām]—

Despite those titles, power [pow'ə], and pelf [pɛlf], (11)
 The wretch [rɛch], concentrated [kɔn'sɛntrətɪd] all (12)
 in self,
 Living, shall forfeit [fɔr'fɪt] fair renown [rɪnow'n], (13)
 And, doubly [dʌb'lɪ] dying, shall go down (14)
 To the dust from whence [whɛns] he sprung (15)
 Unwept [ʊnwɛpt'], unhonoured [ʊn-ɔn'əd], and un- (16)
 sung [ʊnsʊŋ'].

II. ON THIS DAY I COMPLETE MY THIRTY-SIXTH YEAR

LORD BYRON

If thou regrett'st [rɪgrɛt'st] thy youth [dhi ūth], (17)
 why live?
 The land of honourable death (18)
 Is here—up to the field, and give (19)
 Away thy breath! (20)
 Seek out—less often sought than found— (21)
 A soldier's [sɔl'djɔz] grave, for thee the best; (22)
 Then look around, and choose thy ground, (23)
 And take thy rest! (24)

III. TO A SKYLARK

PERCY BYSSHE SHELLEY

Better than all measures (25)
 Of delightful [dɪlɪ'tʃʊl] sound, (26)
 Better than all treasures (27)
 That in books are found, (28)

Thy skill [skīl] to poet were, thou scorner [skōr'nō] (29)
of the ground!

Teach me half the gladness [glād'nīs] (30)

That thy brain [brān] must know, (31)

Such harmonious madness [hār'mō'nyəs mād'nīs]
nīs] (32)

From my lips would flow [flō], (33)

The world would listen then, as I am listening now. (34)

生 字

- | | |
|--|---|
| 4. ne'er [nār]: never 之簡。 | 16. unwept [ūwōpt]: 不爲人家所哀哭。 |
| 5. footstep [fōt'stōp]: 足步。 | unhonoured [ūn-ōn'ōd]: 不被尊敬。 |
| 6. wandering [wōn'dōrīng, 或 -drīng]: 遨遊。〔詩中〕。 | unsung [ūnsūng]: 不爲人家所歌頌。 |
| strand [strānd]: 海邊(只用於 | 17. regrett'st [rīgrēt'st] (regret [rīgrēt]) 青髓與 thou 合用之式): 懊悔。 |
| 8. rapture [rāp'tʃə]: 快樂, 狂喜(在此處指詩歌音樂)。 | thy [thī]: then 的所有格。 |
| swell [swēl]: 膨脹, 凸出, 充滿(在此處指唱)。 | youth [juθ]: 青春。 |
| 9. title [tītl]: 頭銜, 爵位。 | 19. field [fi:ld]: 戰場。 |
| proud [praʊd]: 驕傲, 可驕傲的(即榮耀的)。 | 20. breath [brēθ]: 氣息, 生命。 |
| 10. boundless [baʊndlīs]: 無限。 | 22. soldier [sōldjə]: 兵士, 軍人。 |
| wealth [wēlθ]: 財寶。 | 25. measure [mēzʃə] (= metre): 詩的音節。 |
| claim [klām]: 要求, 〔云〕詞。 | 〔的〕。 |
| 11. power [paʊə]: 權力。〔思〕。 | 26. delightful [dīlī'tfi:fl]: 悅人。 |
| pelf [pēl]: 金錢(含有輕蔑的意 | 29. skill [skīl]: 技藝。〔人〕。 |
| 12. wretch [rēθ]: 可憐可鄙之人。 | scorner [skōr'nō]: 輕蔑~的。 |
| concentrate [kōn'sōntrāt]: 集中。 | 30. gladness [glād'nīs]: 快樂。 |
| 13. forfeit [fōr'fīt]: 被罰而失去。 | 31. brain [brān]: 腦。 |
| renown [rīnōw'n]: 名望。 | 32. harmonious [hār'mō'nyəs]: 音韻調和的。 |
| 24. doubly [dūb'lī]: 雙倍地。 | madness [mād'nīs]: 瘋狂。 |
| 15. whence [whēns]: 從那處。 | 33. flow [flō]: 流出。 |

講 義

(A) *Breathes there a man ~? = Is there a man ~?*

(B) 第 4 行的 *burn* 乃指思念到家鄉便心血來潮,胸中覺得如火一般在燒着。

(C) 第 8 行未將詩人的意思完全說出, *swell* 實等於 *swell in the air*, 全行的意思是“沒有樂人的詩歌爲他充滿着天空”,即“沒有樂人肯爲他奏樂謳歌”。

(D) 第 15 行 *whence* = “從那裏”,再加上 *from*, 本不合邏輯,但這是爲音節的關係而用的,平時切不可用。

(E) 第 21 與 22 兩句 = *Seek out a soldier's grave which is best for you, though it is less often sought than it is found.* 末一句是說許多人戰死並非有意去追求沙場上之死。

(F) 依平常的句法第 26 至 29 行應如是: *Thy skill were, to poet, better than all measures . . . are found, thou scorner of the ground!* 又 *Thy skill were to poet* 是假設的語氣,意謂“你的藝術在詩家眼中勝過 . . .”。

(G) 注意第 30 至 34 行的句法如下: [*If you*] *teach me . . . must know, then such harmonious madness [as yours] would flow from my lips, and the world . . . listening now.* 又 *harmonious madness* 乃是稱讚百靈鳥的歌聲極其調和,宛如癡狂之非平凡。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 71—75)

1. Logically, there can be only two moods: the **objective mood** for stating a fact, and the **subjective mood** for stating a thought, a command, a wish, etc.; but most grammarians recognize only three moods: the **indicative**, the **imperative**, and the **subjunctive**, although some of them add two more to the list, the **interrogative** and the **infinitive**.
2. The **imperative mood** has only one person, the **second person**, and one tense, the **present**.
3. The **subjunctive**, except the **future tenses**, has only one form for each tense, regardless of person and number.
4. For the **future tenses**, the rule is as follows: for the **future** and the **future continuous** in a subordinate clause,

should is used for **all the three persons**; but in a **main clause**, *should* for the **first person** and *would*, for the **second and third persons**; and for the **future perfect** and the **future perfect continuous tenses** *should* is used for the **first person** and *would*, for the **second and third persons**.

5. In **subjunctive mood**, the **past perfect** form is used to indicate the **past**; the **past**, to indicate the **present or future**, and sometimes the **past**; the **present**, to indicate the **present or future**; and the **future**, to indicate the **present or future**, but more often **something in general**.
6. The **subjunctive** expresses a wish or a supposition which may be a condition or a concession.
7. A supposition may be regarded as a *fact*, as something *doubtful*, or as something *contrary to fact*; and when a supposition is regarded as a **fact**, it is expressed by a **verb in the indicative mood**; as *doubtful*, by a **present or future subjunctive**; and as **contrary to fact**, by a **past or a past perfect subjunctive**.
8. The Romanticists chose plain humanity and nature instead of the court and the courtiers for their subject matter and were sympathetic to the poor and the oppressed.
9. They emphasized individual genius, as Classicism emphasized rules and conventions, and went to the Elizabethan and earlier poets for models of their poetry.
10. William Wordsworth and Samuel Taylor Coleridge were the leading poets of the romantic movement, while Sir Walter Scott popularized it; and coming after them George Gordon, Lord Byron, John Keats,

and Percy Bysshe Shelley were also very popular as poets.

Among the essayists of this period were Coleridge, Scott, Charles Lamb, Thomas De Quincey, and William Hazlitt; and Scott was a novelist.

12. The Victorian Age was really a continuation of the Age of Romanticism; there were two great poets in this period, Robert Browning and Alfred, Lord Tennyson, but it was chiefly an age of prose.
13. Thomas Carlyle, Thomas Babington, Lord Macaulay, John Ruskin, and Matthew Arnold were famous among the formal essayists, while Robert Louis Stevenson succeeded Lamb and De Quincey in writing the familiar essays.
14. Charles Dickens, William Makepeace Thackeray, George Eliot, and George Meredith were the four great novelists of this Age, and Stevenson wrote both novels and romances.

* * *

LESSON 76

"A Letter from Charles Lamb to William Wordsworth." etc.

I. A LETTER FROM CHARLES LAMB TO WILLIAM WORDSWORTH

Colebrook Cottage, *April 6, 1825.*

DEAR WORDSWORTH,

(1) I have been several times meditating [mēd'itāt-
īng] a letter to you concerning the good thing which has

befallen [bĭfaw/'lən] me, but the thought of poor Monk-house [mŭnk/'hows] came across me. . . . (2) Here I am then, after thirty-three years' slavery [slā/'vərĭ], sitting in my own room at eleven o'clock this finest of all April mornings, a freed man. . . .

(3) I came home FOR EVER on Tuesday in last week. (4) The incomprehensibleness [ĭnkŏm/'prĭhĕn'sĭ-blŋs] of my condition overwhelmed me. (5) It was like passing from life into eternity [ĭtĕr/'nĭtĭ]. . . . (6) But that tumultuousness [tŭmŭl/'tŭosnĭs] is passing off, and I begin to understand the nature of the gift. . . . (7) I can sit at home, in rain or shine, without a restless impulse [rĕst/'lĭs ĭm/'pŭls] for walkings [waw/'kĭngz]. (8) I am daily [dā/'lĭ] steadying [stĕd/'ĭĭng], and shall soon find it as natural to me to be my own master, as it has been irksome [ĭr/'ksəm] to have had a master. (9) Mary wakes every morning with an obscure [ŏbskŭr'] feeling that some good has happened to us. . . .

Charles Lamb

II. RING OUT, WILD BELLS

ALFRED TENNYSON

Ring out, wild bells, to the sky, (10)

響呀，狂鳴的野鐘，鳴向天空，

The flying cloud, the frosty [frŏs/'tĭ] light: (11)

鳴向飛雲，鳴向帶霜的光：

The year is dying in the night; (12)

今年今夜圓寂；

Ring out, wild bells, and let him die. (13)

響呀，狂鳴的野鐘，讓他圓寂歸空。

Ring out the old, ring in the new, (14)

鳴響以驅舊，鳴響以招新，

Ring, happy bells across the snow: (15)

響呀，快樂的鐘，使你鐘聲飛越雪上：

The year is going, let him go; (16)

年華他逝，且讓他逝去：

Ring out the false [fawls], ring in the true. (17)

鳴響以驅假，鳴響以招真。

Ring out the grief [grēf] that saps [sāps] the mind, (18)

鳴響以驅那使人心不安的憂愁，

For those that here we see no more; (19)

那為懷念故人的悲感：

Ring out the feud [fud] of rich and poor, (20)

鳴響以驅貧富之爭，

Ring in redress [rīdrēs'] to all mankind. (21)

鳴響以招公道普及人類。

III. PIPPA'S SONG

ROBERT BROWNING

The vea's at the spring; (22)

The day's at the morn; (23)

Morning's at seven; (24)

The hillside's [hīl'sīdz] dew-pearled [dū'pēld]; (25)

The lack's [lāks] on the wing; (26)

The snail's on the thorn [thōrn]; (27)

God's in his heaven— (28)

All is right with the world! (29)

生 字

1. cottage [kɒtɪdʒ]: 小屋。〔思〕
 1. meditate [mɪd'ɪtæt]: 默想，沈
 2. befall [bɪfɔ:l]: 遭遇。〔過

- 去時制 befall [bɪfɔ:l], 過去分
 詞 befallen [bɪfɔ:lən, -lən]
 1. slavery [slævərɪ]: 奴隸制度。

- (在此處指)如奴隸的工作。
free [fr̩]: 釋放, 解放。(公謂詞)
for ever: 永遠。
incomprehensibleness [ɪn-kəm'prihəns'ɪbɪnɪs]: 不能了解處, 不可思議處。
life [laɪf]: 生命, 今生。 [古]
eternity [ɪtər'nɪtɪ]: 永久, 千
tumultuousness [tʌmʌlt'ʊəs-nɪs]: 騷動的樣子, 奮發的樣子。
pass off: 消失, 過去。
shine [ʃaɪn]: 好天, 晴天。(名詞)——*rain or shine*: 不管陰晴。
restless [rɛst'lis]: 不安定的。
impulse [ɪm'pʌls]: 衝動。
daily [dā'dɪ]: 每日, 日日。
steady [stɛdɪ]: 沈着, 徐徐前
 進, 成爲穩固。(公謂詞)
irksome [ɪrksəm]: 討厭的。
obscure [əbskɪr]: 不明了的
frosty [frɔstɪ]: 帶霜的,
false [fawis]: 假的。
grief [grɛf]: 憂煩。
sap [sæp]: 使不安定, 使弱。
feud [fju:d]: 相爭。 [區正]
redress [rɪdrɛs]: 補救, 賠償。
morn [mɔrn]: 早上。
hillside [hɪl'saɪd]: 山邊,
dew [dju:]: 露水。
pearl [pɛrl]: 珍珠, 結成球形。
dew-pearled [dju'pɛrlɪ]: 露
 結成珠。
lark [lɑ:k]: 百靈。
thorn [θɔ:n]: 蒺藜。

講 義

- (A) *Monkhorse* 乃 *Lamb* 的異友, *Mary* 乃 *Charles Lamb* 的姊妹。
 (B) 第一句末將全意寫出, 臨時我們可以加上“而無果”於句末。
 (C) *free man* 乃指生而自由的人, *freed man* 乃被釋放而獲自由的人。
 (D) 第 22 至 28 諸行中的 's 皆等於 is。

練 習

【背誦】 *befall* *befell* *befallen*

LESSON 77

“The Coffee-House”, etc.

I. THE COFFEE-HOUSE

(from *The History of England*)

THOMAS B. MACAULAY

(1) The coffee-house must not be dismissed [dɪsmɪst] with a cursory [kɜrsrɪ] mention. (2) It might, indeed,

at that time have been not improperly [ĩmprŏp'olĩ] called a most important political institution. (3) No parliament [pār'ləmənt] sat for years. (4) The municipal council [mūnīs'ipəl kow'nsəl] of the city had ceased [sōst] to speak the sense of the citizens. (5) Public [pūb'lik] meetings, harangues [hərāngz'], resolutions [rēz'olōō'shənz], and the rest of the modern machinery [məshŏ'nə:ĩ] of agitation [āj'itā'shən] had not yet come into fashion [fāsh'ən]. (6) Nothing resembling [rīzēm'blĩng] the modern newspaper existed. (7) In such circumstances [sĩr'kəmstənsĩz] the coffee-houses were the chief organs [ŏr'gənz] through which the public opinion of the metropolis [mĩtrŏp'olĩs] vented [vənt'ĩd] itself.

II. PINE TREES

JOHN RUSKIN

(8) The pine [pĩn] is trained to need nothing and to endure [ĩndŭr'] everything. (9) Tall or short, it will be straight. (10) Small or large, it will be round. (11) It may be permitted [pəmĩt'ĩd] to the soft, lowland [lŏ'lənd] trees that they should make themselves gay with the show of blossom and glad with pretty charities [chār'ĩtiz] of fruitfulness [frŏŏ'tfŏŏlnĩs]. (12) We builders [bĩl'dəz] with the sword [sŏrd] have harder work to do for man. . . .

(13) I wish the reader to fix his attention for a moment on these two great characters of the pine, its straightness [strā'tnĩs] and rounded perfectness [pēr'fĩkt-nĩs]; both wonderful, and in their issue [ĩsh'ũ] lovely [lŏv'ĩ].

III. THE CHEESEMAN AND CHILDREN

(from *The Christmas Book*)

CHARLES DICKENS

(14) So I went to their delightful house, and was as happy as I could possibly [pɒs'ɪblɪ] be. (15) They understand how to conduct [kɒndʌkt/] themselves towards boys, they do. (16) When they promise to take a boy to the play, for instance, they do take him. (17) They don't go in after it's begun, too. (18) Look at their own! (19) Though he is very little as yet, what a capital [kæp'ɪtl] boy he is! (20) Why, my next favourite [fɑ'vərɪt] to Mr. Cheeseman [tʃi:z'mən] and Old Cheeseman, is young Cheeseman.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. coffee-house [kɔf'i-həʊs]: 咖啡館。 「不理, | resolution [rɛz'ɒlʊ'shən]: 議決案。 |
| dismiss [dɪsmɪs/]: 辭退, 遣去, | machinery [məʃɪ'nɔ:ri]: 機構, 機關。 「人心, |
| cursor [kɜ:sɔ:ri]: 粗略的, 疏忽的。 | agitation [æj'ɪtə'shən]: 鼓動 |
| 2. improperly [ɪmprɒp'ɔ:li]: 不適宜的。 「會。 | fashion [fæʃən]: 時髦, 流行。 |
| 3. parliament [pɑ:rlə'mənt]: 議 | 6. resemble [rɪzəm'b.]: 與~相同。 |
| 4. municipal [mju:nis'ɪpəl]: 市的, 市政的。 | 7. circumstance [sɪr'kəmstəns]: 情形, 情況。 |
| council [kəʊnsəl]: 會議。—— | organ [ɔ:ɡən]: 機關。 |
| municipal council: (市會議), 市政廳。 | public opinion: 輿論。 |
| cease [si:s]: 停止。 | metropolis [mɛtrɒp'ɒlɪs]: 大 |
| 5. public [pʌb'lɪk]: 公共的。 | vent [vɛnt]: 發洩。 [城, 都會。 |
| harangue [hə'rɑ:ŋg]: 熱烈的演說。 | 8. pine [paɪn]: 松樹。 |
| | endure [ɪndʊə', ɒn-]: 忍受。 |
| | 11. permit [pə'mɪt/]: 允許。 |

- | | |
|--|---|
| lowland [lō/lɒn!]: 低地, 平原。 | 善的樣子。 |
| charity [chār/ī(ī): 慈善。 | issue [īsh/ū]: 突出點, 樹枝。 |
| fruitfulness [frūō/īfūōltnis]:
多果實的情形。 | lovely [lūv/ī]: 可愛的。 |
| 12. builder [bīl/dɔ]: 建築者。 | 14. possibly [pōs/ībī]: 可能地。 |
| sword [sōrd]: 劍, 利刃。 | 15. conduct [kōndūkt/]: 管理自己的
行爲, 處置。 |
| 13. straightness [strā/tnis]: 直
的樣子。 | 19. capital [kāp/ī(ī): 良好的; 首都。 |
| perfectness [pēr/īikttnis]: 完 | 20. favourite [fā/vōrī(ī): 所喜悅
的人或物。 |

講 義

(A) *machinery* 指“機關”, 乃談政治時之特別用法。 *organ* 與 *machinery* 同指機關, 但有這個分別: *organ* 指機關報或其他發表意見的機關, *machinery* 指辦事的機關, 尤其是政黨的機關。

(B) *charities of fruitfulness* = “多結果實之有益於人”。

(C) *We builders with the sword . . .* 這句話是用松的口氣講的, 甚至前一句也是。 因為松本是當建築的材料用的, 所以說 *we builders*; 又 *sword* 當然是指如針的松葉。

練 習

【解答】 用英文回答:

Who was Macaulay, and Ruskin, and Dickens?

LESSON 78

Auxiliaries

- (1) There is a group of **verbs** which help other verbs to form the various **tenses**, **voices**, or other **verbs phrases**.
 (2) These **verbs** are called the **auxiliaries**, or **helping verbs**, and we shall study them in this lesson. (3) *Be* helps to form the **continuous tenses** and **passive voice**, *have* helps to form the **perfect tenses**, and *do* to form the **negative**

[nĕg'atīv] and interrogative verb phrases; these we need not study here.

(4) *Shall* and *will* help, as we have already seen, to form the **future** and the **future perfect tenses**, while their **past forms**, *should* and *would*, help to form the **past future** and the **past future perfect** of the **indicative mood**, and the **future** and the **future perfect tenses** of the **subjunctive mood**. (5) But *shall*, *will*, *should*, and *would* have other uses too.

(6) *Will* is used to express the **wish of the subject** no matter in what person. For instance, *I will go* means *I want to go*, but *You (or He) will go* means either *You wish (or He wishes) to go*, or mere **futurity** [fütür'itī]; in speaking we emphasize the word *will* when we mean the **willingness** [wīl'ingnĭs] of the **subject**. (7) *Will* in any **person** is also used to indicate a **habitual** [hobĭch'ööol] **action**, without having anything to do with the **futurity** or the **wish of the subject**; for instance the sentence, *She (or You, or I) will wake up at night and will not sleep again*, means that *She is (or You are, or I am) in the habit* [hăb'it] *of waking up at night, unable to sleep again*. (8) So *I (or We) will* may express either the **willingness** or **habitual action of the subject**; and *You (He, She, It, or They) will* may express mere **futurity**, in addition to any of the two meanings indicated above.

(9) In all the **three persons**, *shall* is used to indicate (A) **futurity in subordinate clauses**, and (B) **the wish of some one other than the subject**, usually the speaker. (10) For instance: (A) in "*If you (or I, or he) shall pay for it, everything will be all right*," *shall pay* indicates mere **futurity**; and (B) "*I shall come again*" does not mean that I wish to

come again, while "*You (or He) shall come again*" usually means that I command or request you (or him) to come again.

(11) *Should* and *would*, being the **past tense** of *shall* and *will*, have the same meanings and are used in the same way, and *would* expressing a **past habitual action** is equivalent to *used to*. (12) *Should* in any person sometimes has the same meaning as *ought to*, but it is not so strong. (13) For instance, in "*I (or You, or He) would have indigestion now and then,*" *would have* equal to *used to have*, and in "*He (or I, or You) should go to see our sick friend,*" *should go* equals to *ought to go*.

(14) *Ought, must, may, might, can (could)* are the other auxiliaries. (15) They are **not inflected** to show the **person, number, and tenses**, although *can* has *could* for its **past tense**, and *might* is sometimes regarded as the **past tense** of *may*. (16) As we have studied them some time ago, we need only observe here that they, as well as *do, shall, will, should* and *would*, are followed by an **infinitive without to** with the exception of *ought*, which requires the *to* before the **infinitive**.

She <i>ought</i> (not) to	} (to this. help the poor. fight the wicked [wɪk'ɪd]. love mankind. [others. live in harmony [hɑr'məni] with like it.
He <i>does</i> (not)	
You <i>can</i> (not)	
They <i>must</i> (not)	
We <i>might</i> (not)	
I <i>may</i> (not)	

(17) These auxiliaries, which are **not conjugated** in the regular way, are sometimes called **defective** [dɪfɛk'tɪv] verbs. (18) There are two more verbs, which have some

irregularity [irɛg'ulɛr'itɪ] in their **conjugation**. (19) They are *need* and *dare*, and their following forms deserve our attention.

NEED

He *needs* to go.

He *does not need* to go.

He *need not* go.

Does he need to go?

Need he go?

DARE

He *dares* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to go.} \\ \text{go.} \end{array} \right.$

He *does not dare* $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to go.} \\ \text{go.} \end{array} \right.$

He *dare not* go.

Does he dare $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to go?} \\ \text{go?} \end{array} \right.$

Dare he go?

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. negative [nɛg'etɪv]: 反面的, 消極的。 | 16. wicked [wɪk'ɪl]: 惡的。 |
| 6. future [fʊtʃər'ɪtɪ]: 將來。 | harmony [hɑr'monɪ]: 調和。 |
| 7. habitual [həbɪ, h'ʊʊəl]: 習慣的常有。 | 17. defective [dɪfɛk'tɪv]: 不完全的。 |
| habit [əb'ɪt]: 習慣。 | 18. irregularity [irɛg'ulɛr'itɪ]: 不依規則處。 |

講 義

(A) 本課中許多的例有兩個或三個主語,用 *or* 連起來在括弧之中,這是表明任何一個主語都可用,而連語中的意義完全相同。

練 習

【解答】 用英文回答:

How many uses has *will*, and *shall*, and *would*, and *should*? Give one example for each use of any one of these words.

LESSON 79

English Literature Today

(1) The English literature of the present age is characterized [kǎr'iktörízd] by the decline of poetry and the importance of novel. (2) The chief novelists at present are Thomas Hardy [tóm'əs hǎr'di], Joseph Conrad [jō'zif kǒn'rǎd], Herbert George Wells [hér'bət jōrj wělz].

(3) Mr. Hardy was a poet as well as a novelist. (4) He was very English, while Joseph Conrad was very un-English. (5) Joseph Conrad was a Pole [pōl], who became a sailor [sā'lə] and gave the best interpretation [intē'prītā'shon] to the sailor's spirit and sea life. (6) H. G. Wells is better known to us as the author of *The Outline* [ow'tlin] of *History*, but he wrote many novels of great merit [mēr'it], some dealing with social problems and some not, while others are scientific [sī'əntif'ik] romances. (7) Hardy's best novels are *Tess* [tēs] of the *D'Urbervilles* [dêr'bävīlz] and *Jude the Obscure* [jōd dhī əbskūr']; Conrad's, *Youth* and *Twixt* [twīkst] *Land and Sea*; and Wells's, *Kips* [kīps] and *Tono-Bungay* [tōn'ō būng'gì].

(8) During 18th and 19th centuries the stage [stāj] degenerated [dijēn'ərītīd] into houses where almost only farces [fār'sīz] and melodramas [mēl'ədraməz] were produced and seen. (9) However, in the latter part of the 18th century, Goldsmith wrote *She Stoops* [stōops] to *Conquer* and Richard Brinsley Sheridan [ričl'əd brīnz'li šēr'iden] wrote *Rivals* [ri'vəlz] and *The School for Scandal* [skān'dl]; these are all the plays of this long period, which deserve to be mentioned. (10) In the eighties

[ā'tīz] of the last century plays of Henrik Ibsen [hēn'rīk ih'sn], a Norwegian [nōrwō'jən] dramatist, were produced on the English stage which then got a new life. (11) Men like Sir Arthur Pinero [ar'thə pīnār'ō] and Oscar Wilde [ōs'kə wīld] all tried to make plays a serious criticism of life. (12) The greatest dramatists today is George Bernard Shaw [hēr'nəd shaw], whose best plays are *Candida* [kän'dīdō] and *Saint Joan* [sānt jōn], while *Man and Superman* [sū'pəmān] and *Back to Methuselah* [mīthū'zələ] are most representative of his views [vūz]. (13) John Galsworthy [gaw'lwērdhī] also produced two or three good plays: *Justice* [jūs'tīs], *Strife* [strīf], and *The Skin Game*.

(14) Among the poets, besides Hardy we may mention John Masefield [mā'sfōld], John Drinkwater [drīnk'waw'tō] and Rudyard Kipling [rūd'yod kīp'līng], the poet of British imperialism [īmpēr'īolīzəm], although he also wrote many volumes of stories. (15) Among the essayists of today we may mention Gilbert K. Chesterton [gīl'bət kā chēs'tətn] and Hilaire Belloc [hīlār' bēlōk'].

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. characterize [kār'īktərīz]: 表~特性。 | scientific [sī'əntīf'īk]: 科學的。 |
| 4. un-English [ūn-īng'glīsh]: 非英國式的。 | 7. obscure [ɒbskūr]: 不顯明的, 不著名的。 |
| 5. Pole [pōl]: 波蘭人。 | 'twixt [twīkst] (= <i>between</i>): [bītwīkst] 之間: 在~兩者之間。 |
| sailor [sā'lo]: 航海的人, 水手。 | kip [kīp]: 幼獸之皮。 |
| interpretation [īntər'prī'tā'shən]: 解釋, 說明。 | 8. stage [stāj]: 戲臺, 「墮落」。 |
| sea life : 航海者的生活。 | degenerate [dījə'ərīt]: 退化。 |
| 6. outline [aʊ'tlīn]: 大綱, 大意。 | farce [fārs]: 無意義的滑稽劇。 |
| merit [mēr'īt]: 價值。 | |

- melodrama** [mə'di'ɒlədrəmə]: 善於激動觀衆的情感而有道德的結局之戲劇。 [用時] 排演。
- produce** [prə'dju:s]: 〔與戲劇結合〕
9. **stoop** [stə'up]: 屈身; 屈下, 折腰。
- rival** [ri'vəl]: 競爭者。
- scandal** [skæn'dl]: 恥辱的事, 講謗。 [年之間。]
10. **the eighties**: (19)80 年至 (19)89
- Norwegian** [nɔ'wɛ'ʤiən]: 挪威的。
11. **criticism of life**: 生活的批評。
12. **superman** [sū'pə:mən]: 超人。
- view** [vju:]: 視察, 見解。
13. **justice** [dʒʌ'stɪs]: 公道。
- strife** [straɪf]: 相爭, 鬭爭。
14. **imperialism** [ɪmpə'riəlɪzəm]: 帝國主義。

講 義

(A)	生 卒
Hardy, Thomas (哈提)	1840—1928
Conrad, Joseph (康乃特)	1857—1924
Wells, H. G. (威爾斯)	1866—
Sheridan, Richard Brinsley	1751—1816
Ibsen, Henrik (易卜生)	1828—1906
Pinero, Sir Arthur (比內羅)	1855—
Wilde, Oscar (王爾德)	1856—1900
Shaw, George Bernard (蕭伯納)	1856—
Galsworthy, John (高爾斯華綏)	1867—1933
Drinkwater, John	1882—
Masefield, John	1875—
Kipling, Rudyard (吉卜林)	1865—1936
Chesterton, G. K.	1874—
Belloc, Hilaire	1870—

(B) farce 只要人家笑, 不管劇情通理與否。melodrama 本爲「歌劇」, 現在則專指情場中壞人欲害好人而終於自害之戲劇。

練 習

【填字】 用 dare 或 need 填在空格上:

- _____ he go with her? She _____ not go with him.
- He _____ to speak to her. She _____ not talk to him.

LESSON 80

National Movements in English
Literature

(1) Ever since the nineties [nī'ntīz] many Irish authors have been trying to revive [rīvī'v] their national spirit and sentiment [sēn'tīmənt] in literature and language. (2) It has affected all branches of literature. (3) William Butler Yeats [būt'lə yāts] is the leader of the movement and the greatest poet, although he wrote some plays, too. (4) Two great dramatists of this school are John M. Synge [sīng] and Lady Gregory [grög'orī], while its novelist is George Moore [moor], and its essayist is George Russell [rūs'l].

(5) Yeats, as a poet, is best represented by his *Lake Isle of Innisfree* [in'isfrē], and as a dramatist, by *The Lind of Heart's Desire* and *Cúihleen ní Hoolihan* [kūh'lēn nī hōō'līhən]. (6) Among Synge's plays may be mentioned *Riders to the Sea*.

(7) The Scotch have also been trying to create a literature of their own and are best represented by J. M. Barrie [jā əm bār'ī], novelist and dramatist. (8) Among his novels *A Window in the Thrums* [thrūmz] may be mentioned, and among his dramas, *The Admirable Crichton* [əd'mərəbl krī'tn].

(9) The British colonies are just beginning to produce literature distinctly [dīstīnkt'lī] of their own. (10) Among the Canadian writers George Roberts is best known. (11) His writing is well represented by such

ollections of animal stories as *The Red Fox* and *The Hunters of the Silence* [sɪ'ləns].

(12) Australia has two poets and two novelists, Henry Kendall [kɛn'dl] and Adam Gordon [æd'əm gɔr'dn] being the poets, and Rolf Belderwood [rɔlf bɔ'ldəwɔd] and Steele Rudd [sti:l rʌd], the novelists.

(13) Cape Colony [kæp kɔl'əni] is represented by Oliver Schreiner [ɔl'ivə shrɪ'nə], famous for *The Story of South African Farm* and by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick [pɛr'sɪ frɪtspɑ'rɪk] who wrote *The Outspan* [ow't-spæn'] and *Jack* [jæk] *of the Bushveld* [bʊʃvɛld].

生 字

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>the nineties</i> : 1890 至 1899 年之 | admirable [æd'mərəəbl]: 可嘉 |
| revive [rɪvɪv]: 復興。 [間。 | 的, 「地。 |
| sentiment [sɛn'tɪmənt]: 情 | 9. distinctly [dɪstɪŋktli]: 卓著 |
| 感, 情操。 | 11. silence [sɪ'ləns]: 靜默。 「展, |
| 8. thrum [θrʌm]: 織布機的蹣頭。 | 13. outspan [ow't-spæn']: 向外伸 |

講 義

	生 卒
Yeats, William Butler (夏芝)	1865—
Syngé, John M. (約翰·沙孤)	1871—1909
Moore, George (喬治·摩爾)	1823—
Barrie, Sir James M. (巴雷)	1830—
其餘諸人生卒年代皆不明。	

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 76—80):

1. *Shall* in the **first person** and *will* in the **second** or **third person** help to form the **future tenses**.

2. *Will* in any person may express: (A) the *wish of the subject*, or (B) a *habitual action*.
3. *Shall* in any person may express: (A) *futurity* in a *subordinate clause*, or (B) *the wish of some one other than the subject, usually the speaker*.
4. *Should* and *would*, being the past tense of *shall* and *will*, express the meaning of the above uses in the past.
5. *Should* used in any person may express the same meaning, but not so strong, as *ought to*.
6. *Do* helps to form the *negative*, or the *interrogative, verb phrases*.
7. *Ought, must, may, might, and can* are not inflected to show *person, number, or tense*, except that *might* is sometimes regarded as the *past tense of may*, and *can* has *could* for its *past tense*.
8. All the *auxiliaries* go with *infinitive without to*, except (A) *ought*, which has to be followed by *to*, (B) *be*, which goes with either the *present or the past participle*, and (C) *have* which goes with the *past participles* to form the *perfect tenses*.
9. In the English literature today, poetry is not so important as novel.
10. Thomas Hardy, Joseph Conrad, and H. G. Wells are among the great novelists of the present day; Hardy, John Masfield, and Rudyard Kipling, among the poets; and G. K. Chesterton and Hilaire Belloc, among the essayists.
11. The drama, as a form of literature, declined since the Restoration age, but was revived in the eighties; the *only dramatists* of this long period between the

Restoration and the eighties that deserved mention were Goldsmith and Richard Brinsley Sheridan, who lived in the end of the 18th century.

12. The dramatists of today are John Galsworthy and George Bernard Shaw.
13. The Irish authors have been trying to revive their national literature since the nineties; William Butler Yeats, John M. Synge, Lady Gregory, George Moore, and George Russell are among the best known ones of this group.
14. The Scotch, too, have been trying to create a literature of their own, and are best represented by Sir James M. Barrie.
15. The British colonies are also beginning to produce literature distinctly of their own: Canada has George Roberts; Australia, Henry Kendal, Adam Gordon, Rolf Bolderwood, and Steele Rudd; and Cape Colony, Oliver Shreiner and Sir Percy Fitzpatrick.

* * *

LESSON 81

American Literature Before the Civil War

(1) American literature may be divided into two periods: (A) from the War of Independence [in'dipēn'dens] to the Civil [siv'l] War (1776—1865), and (B) after the Civil War to the present day. (2) But in both of these periods the most striking note has been the enthusiasm

for democracy [dímŏk'rəsī] and individualism [in'divídʹ-nəlizm].

(3) Among the best writers in the beginning of the first period were Benjamin Franklin [bén'jəmīn fränk'līn] and Washington Irving [wŏsh'íngton ír'víng]. (4) Franklin's *Autobiography* [aw'tobíŏg'rəfī] is still widely [wi'dli] read today, while Irving is chiefly remembered for his *Sketch Book*, which is a collection of familiar essays.

(5) The next two great writers in American literature were William Cullen Bryant [wíl'yəm kŭl'ín brí'ənt], called the "father of American poetry", and J. Fenimore Cooper [fén'ímŏr kŏŏ'pə], the author of many stories of adventures [ədven'thəz] with the American Indians. (6) The former is best remembered for *To a Waterfowl* [waw'təfowl] and *To the Fringed Gentian* [fríndʹ jén'shīən], while the latter, for *The Last of the Mohicans* [mohík'ənz], *The Pathfinder* [pəh'thí'ndə], and *The Spy* [spī].

(7) With Edgar Allen Poe [éd'gə əl'ín pŏ] American literature reached a high watermark [waw'tomàrk]. (8) He ranked high both as a poet and as a master of short stories. (9) His poems are wonderfully melodious, *The Bells* [bĕls] and *The Raven* [rā'vn] being commonly considered his best poems; and he is sometimes called the "father of short story", for he established the short story as a form of literature.

(10) Nathaniel Hawthorne [nəthán'yəl haw'thŏrn] was a great novelist and short story writer. (11) *The House of the Seven Gables* [gāb'lz] and *The Scarlet Letter* [skər'lít] are among his best novels, while among his short stories *The Twice Told Tales* is also very popular.

(12) Ralph Waldo Emerson [rahlf wŏl'dŏ ɛm'əsn] was an essayist and a moral teacher of his country; he was, in his writing, eloquent [ɛl'okwɔnt], but often lacked continuity [kŏn'tinū'itī] and reasoning power. (13) Also a moral teacher and living at the same time with Emerson was Henry David Thoreau [dā'vid thŏr'ŏ]. (14) While Emerson taught the dignity [dīg'nītī] and self-sufficiency [sɛlf'sɒfīsh'ənsī] of the individual man, Thoreau sought to perfect [pəfɛkt'] man in the solitude, in the love of nature, etc. (15) The former is best represented by his *Essays and Nature*, while the latter, by *Walden* [waw'ldən].

(16) Henry W. Longfellow [lŏng'fɛl'ŏ] is the most popular poet in America. (17) *The Village Blacksmith* [blāk'smīth], *Excelsior* [ɛksɛl'siŏr], *The Psalms* [sahmz] of *Life* are especially popular, and not less so are his long poems *Evangeline* [ɛvān'jəlīn], *The Courtship* [kŏr't-shīp] of *Miles Standish* [stān'dīsh], and *Hiawatha* [hīwah'thŏ]. (18) John Greenleaf Whittier [grɛ'nliŏt' whīt'ɛr], a Quaker [kwā'kə] poet of freedom, lived in this period too. (19) In *The Slave Ship* and *Barbara Fritchie* [bār'horə frīt'chŏ], he fought against the slavery, while in *The Snow-Bound*, his best known long poem, he described the winter farm life in Massachusetts [mās'əchŏs'ɛts]. (20) Oliver Wendell Holmes [wɛn'dəl hŏmz] was another of the New England poets, although he is better known as a humorous prose writer, *The Professor* [prɒfɛs'ə] at the *Breakfast Table* and *Elsie Venner* [ɛl'sī vɛn'ə] being among his best prose works. (21) Coming later than these and continuing his literary production [prɒdŭk'shən] into the period after the Civil War was another poet, James Russell

Lowell [lō'əl], who will be best remembered for *The Biglow* [bĭg'lo] *Papers*.

生 字

1. **independence** [in'dipən'dəns]: 獨立。——*War of Independence*: (美國)獨立戰爭。
civil [siv'l]: 公民的; 人民之間的, 國內的。——*civil war*: 內戰, 內戰; *Civil War* 指美國南北戰爭。
 2. **striking** [sti'kiŋg]: 奇特的。
democracy [dɛm'ɒk'rəsi]: 民主政治, 民主主義。
individualism [in'divɪd'ʊəlɪzəm]: 個人主義。
 4. **autobiography** [aw'tɒbi'ɒgrəfi]: 自傳。
widely [wi'dli]: 廣大, 普遍。
 5. **adventure** [əd'ven'tʃə]: 冒險。
American Indians: 美洲印地安人。 [鳥, 水禽]
 6. **waterfowl** [waw'təʊfɔl]: 水禽。
fringe [frɪŋ]: 緣。
gentian [dʒen'shiən]: 龍膽屬 (一種藍花草)。
pathfinder [pə'thfaɪndə]: 尋路的人。
spy [spi]: 密探。
 7. **watermark** [waw'təmərk]: 水紋記號, 水準。
 8. **master** [mah'stə]: 藝術大家。
 9. **bell** [bɛl]: 鐘。
raven [rə'vən]: 烏鴉, 八哥。
literary form: 文學上的格式。
 10. **gable** [gə'bɪl]: (屋頂的) 三角牆。
scarlet [skɑr'lɪt]: 腥紅, 深紅色。——*the Scarlet Letter*: 紅色
- A 字(古時用爲姦通罪之記號), 此處係書名。
 12. **eloquent** [i'lɒkwənt]: 有口才的, 滔滔雄辯的。
continuity [kən'tɪnju'ɪti]: 接續, 始終一貫。
 14. **dignity** [dɪ'ni'ti]: 尊貴, 品格, 自重。 [足。
sufficiency [sə'fɪʃi'ən-si]: 充足。
self-sufficiency [sɔlf'sə'fɪʃi'ən-si]: 自足。
perfect [pə'fɛkt]: 使成完善。(云謂詞)
 17. **blacksmith** [blæk'smɪθ]: 鐵匠。
excelsior [ɛksəl'sɪər]: 更高的, 向上的。
psalm [sahm]: 聖詩。
courtship [kɔrt'shɪp]: 求愛, 求婚。
 18. **Quaker** [kwə'kə]: 耶教中之一宗, 正式的名稱爲“友會宗”; 此宗之教友, 或屬於此宗的。 [人。
poet of freedom: 歌頌自由的詩人。
 19. **Massachusetts** [mæs'ətʃəts'ɛts]: (美國)麻省。
 20. **New England**: 新英格蘭(即美國東北五六省之總稱, Massachusetts 即其一)。 [授。
professor [prə'fɛsə]: 大學教授。
 21. **production** [prə'dʌkʃən]: 生產。(名詞)

講 義

(A)	生 卒
Franklin, Benjamin (佛蘭克林)	1706—1790
Irving, Washington (伊文)	1783—1859
Bryant, William Cullen	1794—1878
Cooper, J. Fenimore (考伯)	1789—1851
Poe, Edgar Allen (愛倫坡)	1809—1849
Hawthorne, Nathaniel (霍桑)	1804—1864
Emerson, Ralph Waldo (愛默生)	1803—1882
Thoreau, Henry David	1817—1862
Longfellow, Henry W. (郎弗羅)	1807—1882
Whittier, John Greenleaf	1870—1892
Holmes, Oliver Wendell (霍姆斯)	1809—1834
Lowell, James Russell	1819—1891

練 習

- A. Who was Bryant, and Longfellow, and Poe?
 B. Who was Franklin, and Irving, and Emerson,
 and Thoreau?

LESSON 82

American Literature After the
Civil War

(1) America produced, before and during the Civil War, two great orators, Daniel Webster [dān'yəl wēb'stə] and Abraham Lincoln [ā'brəhām līng'kən]. (2) Webster is regarded by the Americans as the best spokesman [spō'ksmən] of the American ideals, as in his *Reply to Haynes* [hānz]. (3) As a writer he ranked not as high as Edmund Burke, the English writer of speeches, however,

as a orator he was far superior [sūpēr'io] to Burke. (4) The speeches of Lincoln, the American President who freed the Negro [nē'grō] slaves, are well known for their noble yet simple eloquence [ē'okwəns], as in his *Gettysburg* [gēt'izbūrg] *Speech*.

(5) Perhaps the most powerful and effective [ifēk'tiv] novel in American literature was written by Mrs. Stowe [stō]. (6) Harriet Beecher [hār'iət bē'chō] Stowe's *Uncle Tom's Cabin* [tōmz kăb'in] was a terrible indictment [īndi'tmənt] against the slave trade, and greatly helped its abolition [ab'olish'mən].

(7) After the Civil War, America produced the most American of all the American poets, Walt Whitman [wōlt whīt'mən]. (8) His best known works are *Leaves of Grass* [grəbz] and *Drum-Taps* [drūm'tăps].

(9) Bret Harte [brēt hārt] was a poet, too, although he is better known as a humourist and a master of short story. (10) *The Luck of Roving Camp* [rōv'ing kămp] and *An Idyll of Red Gulch* [gūlch], describing the gold miners [mī'nəz] in the West, are among his best known short stories. (11) Mark Twain's [twānz] real name was Samuel Clemens [săm'ūəl klēm'ənz]; he was the popular jester [jēs'tə] of the American nation, and his jests [jēsts] are often rather coarse.

(12) The recent trend [trēnd] in American literature is toward realism [rī'alizm], no matter in poetry, novel, short story, or drama. (13) The trend set in soon after the Civil War, but is most pronounced [prənow'nst] at present.

(14) Among the dramatists of the present day Eugene O'Neil [ū'jēn ōnō'l] and William Vaughn Moody [vawn

mōd/dī] stand foremost [fōr'mōst]. (15) They may be represented respectively by *The Emperor Jones* and *The Great Divide*. (16) At the head of the short story writers stood O. Henry, whose real name was William Sydney Porter [sīd'nī | ōr'to] so far popularity [pōp'ulār'itī] is concerned; and *The Four Million* contains some of his best stories. (17) Among the novels, we many mention Booth Tarkington's [bōōdb tār'kīngtonz] *The Magnificent Ambersons* [māgnīf'isnt ām'ləənz] and Edith Wharton's [ē'dīth whōr'tnz] *The House of Mirth* [mīrth]. (18) For poetry, we have Edwin Arlington Robinson's [ēd'wīn ar'lington rōb'īnsnz] *Collected Poems*, Vachel Lindsay's [vāch'ol līnd'zīz] *A Handy Guide for Beggars* [bēg'əz] and Robert Frost's [frōsts] *North of Boston* [nōs'ten], while Amy [ā'mī] Lowell's *Pictures of the Floating World* may represent the free verse.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>2. spokesman [spō'ksmən]: 代發言者, 代言人。</p> | <p>drum [drūm]: 鼓。</p> |
| <p>3. superior [sūp'ēr'īō]: 高, 優, 勝。</p> | <p>tap [tāp]: 輕敲, 輕敲的聲音。</p> |
| <p>4. president [prēz'īdnt]: 總統。
Negro [nē'grō]: 黑人。
noble [nō'bl]: 高尚的。
eloquence [el'okwəns]: 雄辯 (名詞)。</p> | <p>10. roar [rōr]: 喧嘩。
camp [kāmp]: 營帳, 營盤, 暫時駐紮之處。
gulch [gūlch]: 谷, 壑。
miner [mī'nō]: 礦工。</p> |
| <p>5. effective [īf'ektīv]: 有效的。</p> | <p>11. jester [jēs'tō]: 嘲笑者, 戲謔者。
jest [jōst]: 嘲笑, 戲謔。</p> |
| <p>6. cabin [kāb'īn]: 小屋, 茅舍。
indictment [īndī'tmənt]: 公訴, 譴責。
slave trad: 買賣奴隸。 「除。
abolition [ā'bō'īsh'ən]: 廢</p> | <p>12. trend [trēnd]: 傾向, 趨向。
realism [ri'olīzəm]: 寫實主義。</p> |
| <p>3. grass [grahs]: 草。</p> | <p>13. renounced [prə'now'ast]: 特顯的。
14. foremost [fōr'mōst]: 最前的。</p> |

15. **divide** [dīvī'd]: 隔離, 不同處。
(名詞)
16. **popularity** [pöp'ulär'itī]: 人
望, 風行。
17. **magnificent** [mägnif'isnt]:
壯麗的, 堂皇的。
mirth [mirth]: 愉快。
18. **collected** [kōl'ekt'it]: 採集的。
handy [hän'di]: 利便的。
guide [gīd]: 指導書, 指南。
beggar [bög'ō]: 乞丐。
float [flōt]: 流動。
free verse: (自由詩), 新詩(即不
講音節吐韻者)。

講 義

(A)	生 卒
Webster, Daniel (韋伯斯脫)	1782—1852
Lincoln, Abraham (林肯)	1809—1865
Stowe, Harriet Beecher (斯吐活)	1812—1896
Whitman, Walt (惠脫曼)	1819—1892
Harte, Bret (勃蘭脫·哈脫)	1836—1902
Clemens, Samuel (Mark Twain) (馬克吐溫)	1835—1910

(B) 末段諸作家的生卒之年未詳, 除了 Edith Wharton, O. Henry (奧·亨利), Amy Lowell 三人已死外, 餘皆尚存。

練 習

【回答】 Who was Abraham Lincoln, and Walt Whitman, and Mark Twain, and O. Henry, and O'Neil?

LESSON 83

“A Letter From Washington Irving
to Benjamin Butler,” etc.

I. A LETTER FROM WASHINGTON IRVING
TO BENJAMIN BUTLER [büt'lə]

Tarrytown [tär'ītōwn], October 19, 1836.

MY DEAR SIR,

(1) This letter will be handed to you by our distinguished naturalist [näch'rolist], Mr. J. J. Audubon [aw'

dōbōn]. (2) To one so purely devoted [pūr'li dīvō'tid] as yourself to anything liberal and enlightened [līlī'tnd], I know I need say nothing in recommendation [rēk'omēndā'shən] of Mr. Audubon and his works; he himself will best inform you of his views in visiting Washington, and I am sure you will do anything in your power to promote [prōmō't] them. . . .

(3) With the highest esteem [ēstō'm] and regard, I am, dear sir,

Yours very truly,
Washington Irving

(4)

Benjamin J. Butler, Esq. [ēskwīr'],
Attorney-General [ətēr'nī jēn'ərəl] of the United States,
Washington, D. C.

II. *From* THE RAVEN

EDGAR ALLEN POE

Unhappy [ūnhāp'i] Master, whom unmerci- (5)
ful Disaster [ūnmēr'sifōōl dīzastō]

不幸的主人[八哥的主人],他[被]慘酷的災殃

Followed fast, and followed faster, till his songs one (6)
burden [būr'dn] bore—

緊追而又緊追,終於[使]他的詩只吟着——

Till the dirges [dīr'jiz] of his Hope that melancholy (7)
[mēl'ənkəli] burden bore—

終於[使]他的希望之挽歌吟着那憂鬱的語詞——

Of "Never—nevermore [nev'ənmōr']!" (8)

“休矣,休矣!”

III. *From* A PSALM OF LIFE

HENRY W. LONGFELLOW

- Tell me not, in mournful [mōr'nfōōl] numbers, (9)
 Life is but an empty dream! (10)
 For the soul is dead that slumbers [slŭm'həz], (11)
 And things are not what they seem. (12)
- Life is real! Life is earnest [ēr'nɪst]! (13)
 And grave is not its goal [gōl]; (14)
 Dust thou art, to dust returnest [rɪtŭ'nɪst], (15)
 Was not spoken of the soul. (16)

IV. *From* WORKS AND DAYS

RALPH WALDO EMERSON

(17) Write it on your heart every day is the best day in the year. (18) No man has learned anything rightly, until he knows that every day is a Doomsday [dōō'nɪzdi].

V. A LETTER FROM HENRY DAVID THOREAU

TO HORACE GREELEY [hōr'əs grō'lî]

Concord [kɔn'kōrd], May 19, 1848.

MY DEAR FRIEND GREELEY,—

(19) I have to-day received from you fifty dollars.
 (20) It is five years that I have been maintaining [mān-tā'nɪŋ] myself entirely by manual labour [mān'tŭəl lā'bə],—not getting a cent from any other quarter or employment. . . . [(21) *Here he describes his life and says it is best for man to live simply, earning his living by manual labour; he then goes on to ask:*]

(22) Why should the scholar make a constant complaint that his fate is specially hard? . . . (23) Why should not the scholar, if he is really wiser than the multitude [mũ'ltitūd], do coarse work now and then? . . . (24) If you say the wise man is unlucky [ũnlũk'i], how could you distinguish him from the foolishly unfortunate [fōō'lĩshli ũnfōr'elnit]?

(25) My friend, how can I thank you for your kindness? (26) Perhaps there is a better way,—I will convince [kənvĩns'] you that it is felt and appreciated [əprē'shĩātĩd]. (27) Here have I been sitting idle, as it were, while you have been busy in my cause, and have done so much for me. (28) I wish you had a better subject; but good deeds are no less good because their object is unworthy [ũnwōr'dhĩ].

生 字

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>1. naturalist [nāch'rołĩst]: 研究自然的人, 生物學家(動物學家及植物學家)。</p> <p>2. purely [pũr'li]: 純粹地。
 devote [dĩvō'ti]: 致力於, 專攻。
 enlighten [ĩnlĩ'tn, ũn-]: 教化, 文明。
 recommendation [ək'əmēndā'shōn]: 推薦, 介紹。
 promote [prōmō'ti]: 增進。</p> <p>3. esteem [ōstĩ'm]: 重視, 尊重。</p> <p>4. Esq. (=esquire [ēskwĩr']) 之前: 英國對地主階級之稱呼, 現常等於 Mr., 不過要放在姓名之後, 若非 Mr. 之置於姓名之前。
 attorney [ətēr'nĩ]: 律師, 代辦人。</p> | <p>Attorney-General [ətēr'nĩ jōn'ərə] 檢察長。</p> <p>Washington, D.C. [wōsh'ĩngtən, dō'sē']: 華盛頓(美京)。</p> <p>5. unhappy [ũnhāp'i]: 不快活的。
 unmerciful [ũmũr'sĩfōōl]: 不慈悲的, 慘酷的。 「事件。」
 disaster [dĩzā'stō]: 不幸的。</p> <p>6. burden [bũr'dn]: 重擔;(詩中) 主旨。</p> <p>7. dirge [dĩʒi]: 悲歌, 挽歌。
 melancholy [mēl'ənkōlĩ]: 憂鬱的。</p> <p>8. nevermore [nēv'əmōr']: 不復, 不再, 完了, 休矣。 「的。」</p> <p>9. mournful [mōr'nfōōl]: 悲哀
 number [nũm'bō]: 音節。</p> |
|---|--|

11. **slumber** [s.ŭm'bə]: 輕睡。
 13. **earnest** [ɛr'nɪst]: 真誠的, 誠懇。
 14. **goal** [gōl]: 目的。 [的,]
 15. **art** [ɑrt] (be 之一式, 與 thou 合用): 是。
returnest [rɪ'tʉr'nɪst] (=return 古體之一式, 與 thou 合用): 回歸。
 18. **doomsday** [dū'mzɪdɪ]: 末日 (即耶穌所謂“世界末日,”人在世上的善惡都要在那日子受審判並定賞罰)。 [話,]
 20. **maintain** [māntə'n]: 維持, 養。
manual [mān'uəl]: 手工的。
labour [lā'bə]: 工作。
quarter [kwɔr'tə]: 地方。
22. **specially** = especially (這是從前的用法)。
 23. **multitude** [mʉl'tɪtʉd]: 羣衆。
 24. **unlucky** [ʉnlʉs'i]: 不幸的。
foolishly [fū'ʉʃli]: 愚蠢地。 [不幸的。]
unfortunate [ʉnfɔr'tʉnɪt]:
 25. **convince** [kɔnvɪns']: 使相信。
appreciate [ɔprɛ'shiʉt]: 尊重, 感激。
 27. **as it were** (=so to speak): 可這樣說的。
cause [kawz]: 事情。
 28. **subject** [sʉb'dʒɪkt]: 目的物。
unworthy [ʉnwɔr'di]: 不配。

講 義

(A) 自 5 至 8 四行的詩恰是 Poe 氏自己的寫照。

(B) 第 11 行 **slumbers** 乃指“死”, 因為那教中的人說死只是“睡覺”, 將來還可復活。第 15 行也是布教的“道理”, 因為據他們說, 人的始祖亞當是上帝用土造成的, 他與妻夏娃犯罪之後上帝就咒咀他們死後仍歸於土。

(C) Thoreau 從前作一篇關於 Carlyle 的論文, 請他的友人 Greeley 代找發表的機會, 論文發表後約一年, Greeley 始自該雜誌掣到五十元美金而轉交與 Thoreau, 所以 Thoreau 寫這封信答覆他。

練 習

【作文】寫一信給朋友, 約他到附近的勝蹟一遊。

LESSON 84

Infinitives and Participles

(1) We shall take up here the uses of two special forms of verbs, the **infinitives** and the **participles**. (2) How

the **infinitives**, with or without *to*, and the **present** and the **past participles** are used to form **verb phrases** we have already seen, so we shall discuss below only their other uses.

(3) The **infinitive** may be used as a **noun**, an **adjective**, or an **adverb**. Examples: (4) *To read and review books is his profession* (NOUN). (5) *But he has something else to do today, so he cannot review his book* (ADJECTIVE). (6) *That is, he is too busy to read and review the book, and he came to ask me to review it for him*. (ADVERBS, the first two **infinitives** modifying *busy*, an **adjective**; the third modifying *came*, a **verb**.) (7) It must be pointed out that the **infinitive** *to ask* not only modifies the **verb**, but also completes the meaning of the **verb**, so it is also called a **complement**. (8) Further, *me* is, logically though not grammatically, the **subject** of *to review*; some grammarians call such construction as *me to review* the **infinitive clause**, while others regard the **infinitive** as an **object complement**, i.e., a **complement** modifying an **object**. (9) In this sentence—*And I, to be sure, promised to review it for him*—the phrase *to be sure* is a **parenthetical expression**.

(10) The **present participle** may be used as an **adjective** or a **verbal noun**. Examples: (11) *This is an interesting book* (ADJECTIVE). (12) *Seeing is believing* (NOUNS). (13) The **past participles** may also be used as an **adjective** and, by way of **adjective**, a **noun**. Examples: (14) *A tired look was on their faces, and I said to them, "Go and rest yourselves, for the tired surely deserve a rest"* (as an **ADJECTIVE** and a **NOUN**). (15) A **past participle** is seldom used as a **noun**, but the **verbal noun** is very common.

(16) Although both the **past** and the **present participles** may be used as **adjectives**, yet there is this difference.

(17) The **past participles**, being used to form the **passive voice**, or the **perfect tenses**, often carry these meanings even when they are used as **adjectives**. Thus, (18) A *faded* [fā'did] flower (i.e. a flower which has faded) is never so beautiful as a fresh one. (19) We should send our *picked troops* [pikt trōps] (i.e. the best soldiers that are picked out from all our troops) to fight our enemy. (20) But the **present participle** even used as an **adjective** is active in meaning. Example: (21) The *rising sun* (i.e. the sun which is rising) tells us to get up.

(22) The **participles** used as **adjectives** are usually placed before the **nouns** which they modify, as in the foregoing examples, but when they take **objects** or are themselves modified by other phrases, they have to be placed after the **nouns**. (23) The patient *lying on the bed* speaks feebly [fō'blî]. (24) I always like food *prepared by a good cook*. (25) A woman *bearing many children* is likely to be weak [wēk].

(26) There are a few peculiar constructions in which **participles** are used. (27) I saw him *entering the room* (OBJECT COMPLEMENT). (28) *Have it done* (cause it to be done) *at once please*. (29) *The end of the month drawing near*, we shall soon get our pay. (30) In the last example, *the end of the month* is called the **nominative absolute**, because it is in the **nominative case**, being the **logical subject** of the **participle** *drawing near*, and it is **absolute**, having no grammatical relation with other words in the sentence. (31) And the whole phrase, *the end of the month drawing near*, is called an **absolute participial** [pā'ʌl'sīp'iəl] **phrase**, because it has *no grammatical connection with the clause*

following it, although in meaning it modifies the **verb** of that clause.

生 字

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------|--|---|
| 4. review [rīvū']: | 評論。 | 23. patient [pā'shənt]: | 病人。 |
| 8. infinitive clause : | 無限式子句。 | feebly [fē'bli]: | 軟弱地,輕輕地。 |
| 18 fade [fād]: | 褪色。 | 25. weak [wōk]: | 軟弱。 |
| 19 pick [pīk]: | 拾,選。 | 30. nominative absolute : | 絕對主格。 |
| troops [trōōps]: | 軍隊,部隊。 | 31. participial [pā'tisip'iəl]: | 屬於分詞的。—— <i>absolute participial phrase</i> : 絕對分詞短語。 |
| —— <i>picked troops</i> : | (特選之軍隊),精兵,精銳。 | | |

講 義

(A) *Have it done* 一類的說法乃美國人的,英國人很少如此說法。

(B) *absolute participial phrase*, 有的文法家叫 *nominative absolute*. 但無論如何,這種句子在現代文之中很少看見,還是少用爲佳。

練 習

【造句】用 *present participle* 與 *infinitive* 做句主,各造兩句;又含有 *infinitive clause* 的一句;又 *present participle* 做 *object complement* 的一句。

LESSON 85

Position of Adjectives, Adverbs, etc.

(1) The **position of adjectives** we have studied already, and we may briefly [brō'flī] summarize the rules here.

(2) An **adjective** may be used either **attributively** [ə'trib/-ūtivlī] or as a **predicate adjective**. (3) When used attri-

butively, it regularly precedes, but sometimes follows, the noun. (4) If the adjective (often a participle) has an adverbial modifier which follows it, then this adjective follows the noun; if, however, the adverbial modifier comes before the adjective, then the adjective precedes the noun. Example: (5) This is a book *written for the general public, and is a very well written one.*

(6) A prepositional phrase used as an adjective phrase follows the noun it modifies. Examples: (7) This pair of shoes is not so good as the one *on your right.* (8) There you can buy all kinds of books *for students.*

(9) An adverb usually follows the auxiliary unless for emphasis when it comes at the beginning of the sentence, but it sometimes follows the whole verb phrase; an adverbial phrase usually follows the whole verb phrase, but sometimes follows the auxiliary; and an adverbial clause usually comes after the whole verb phrase. Examples: (10) He *is easily* the best student in the class. (11) *Easily* he is the best student in the class. (12) He *is severely* beaten. (13) You may *always* come to me, *when you need my help.* (14) He has come *at last.*

(15) Adverbs like *almost, always, hardly, never, etc.* regularly precede the verb; and *sometimes, often, generally, usually, etc.* precede the verb more often than follow it; otherwise, an adverb which modifies an intransitive verb usually follows it. Examples: (16) He *almost* fell, *for he ran too fast.* (17) He *often* smiles and speaks *low.*

(18) An adverb modifying a transitive verb usually comes either before the verb or after the object; but when the object is modified by a clause, the adverb may come between the verb and its object. Example: (19) I *clearly*

see the ship, or I see the ship *clearly*, but I see *clearly* the ship *which is in the river*.

(20) An adverb modifying an adjective, adverb, etc. precedes the word it modifies; only *enough* is an exception. Example: (21) This is a *very* good book. (22) And it is good *enough* to command a very high price.

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. briefly [brɪfˈli:] 簡要地, 簡短地。 | 2. attributively [ə'trɪb'ju:tɪvli:] 附加用法。 |
|--|--|

講 義

(A) 本課所舉的規則須了解實用, 無須強記。但須記得這個: modifier 與 modified 的位置須儘量地接近。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 81—85)

1. American literature may be divided into two periods: before and after the Civil War.
2. Among the early writers were Benjamin Franklin and Washington Irving, and coming after them were William Cullen Bryant and J. Fenimore Cooper.
3. Next came Nathaniel Hawthorne and Edgar Allen Poe, then Ralph Waldo Emerson, Henry David Thoreau, and the New England poets: Henry W. Longfellow, John Greenleaf Whittier, Oliver Wendel Holmes, and James Russell Lowell, the last two were also well-known prose writers.

4. Before the Civil War the most effective American novel, *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, was written by Harriet Beecher Stowe; and America had two great orators, Daniel Webster and Abraham Lincoln, living both before and during the Civil War.
5. After the Civil War came Walt Whitman, the most American of all the American poets, Bret Harte, a poet as well as a short story writer, and Mark Twain, the popular jester of the American nation.
6. Among the present-day dramatists were William Vaughn Moody and Eugene O'Neil; short story writers, O. Henry; novelists, Booth Tarkington and Edith Wharton; poets, Edwin Arlington Robinson, Vachel Lindsay, Robert Frost, and Amy Lowell, who wrote in free verse.
7. Besides helping to form a **verb phrase**, the **infinitive** may be used as a **noun**, an **adjective**, or an **adverb**, and sometimes as a **complement** or a **parenthetical expression**.
8. The **present participle** may be used, besides helping to form a **verb phrase**, as an **adjective** or a **verbal noun**; and the **past participle** may also be used as an **adjective**.
9. The **past participle** used as an **adjective** carries the meaning of a **perfect tense** or **passive voice**.
10. A **nominative absolute** is a **noun**, which is the **logical subject** of a **present participle** and therefore in the **nominative case**, but has no grammatical relation with the rest of the sentence and therefore **absolute**.
11. A **nominative absolute** and the **present participle** following it are called an **absolute participial phrase**.
12. An **adjective** is usually **placed before the noun** it

modifies, but sometimes **after** it; if the **adjective** has an **adverbial modifier** which precedes it, it is **placed before the noun**, but if the **adverbial modifier** comes after it, then it **follows the noun it modifies**; a **prepositional phrase** which modifies a **noun** comes **after the noun**, and an **adjective clause** also **follows the noun it modifies**.

13. An **adverb**, or an **adverbial phrase**, usually **follows the auxiliary**, but it sometimes **follows the whole verb phrase** and sometimes **comes at the beginning of the sentence for emphasis**; and an **adverbial clause** usually **follows the verb phrase**.
14. An **adverb** usually **follows the intransitive verb**, though some regularly precede it.
15. In case of a **transitive verb**, the **adverb** either **precedes the verb** or **follows the object**; but when the **object** is modified by an **adjective clause**, the **adverb** may **come between the verb and the object**.
16. An **adverb** usually **precedes the adjective or adverb it modifies**.

* * *

LESSON 86

Formal and Informal Invitations and Replies

(1) The invitation and reply may be either formal or informal. (2) We shall take up the formal ones first and then the informal ones. (3) Here is a formal invitation to a dinner:—

*Mr. and Mrs. John Lee
request the pleasure of
Mr. William King's
company at dinner
on Friday evening,
June the Twenty-second
at eight o'clock.
1000 Avenue Road*

(4) The address is the host's. (5) If the dinner or luncheon [lūn'ehən] is given in honour of Mr. or Mrs. So-and-so, you begin your invitation with "*In Honour of Mr. or / and Mrs. So-and-so*", and then the invitation as given above. (6) If you want your guest to let you know whether he or she can come, you may write "R.S.V.P." [âr'ēs'vō'pē'] in the same line as your address, or one line below it but at the left. (7) If your dinner or ball [bawl] is to be given at a club or hotel, then the name of the club or hotel and its address appear in your invitation instead of your home address.

(8) A formal reply begins with the address of the guest and the date as in a letter, it then reads:—

*Mr. William King
accepts with pleasure
Mr. and Mrs. John Lee's
kind invitation to dinner on
Friday evening, June the Twenty-second
at eight o'clock.*

(9) If Mr. King cannot accept the invitation, the second line of the reply will read "*regrets that a previous engage-*

ment prevents his acceptance of", or he may, of course, state specifically [sp̄isif'ikolì] what prevents him from accepting the invitation.

(10) The informal invitations and replies are just friendly letters written for the occasion. (11) The invitation is usually written by the hostess, and addressed to the wife, if a couple [küp'l] is invited. (12) E.g.,

999 Avenue Foch,
Nov. 3, 194.....

My dear Mrs. Goldsmith:

Will you and Mr. Goldsmith give us the pleasure of your company at dinner on Wednesday, the ninth, at half past seven?

*Cordally¹ yours,
Mary J. Johnson*

¹ [kōr'diəl]

(13) The body of the letter may also read: "*It would give us great pleasure to have you and Mr. Bookman dine with us on Wednesday the ninth, at half past seven.*" (14) The reply may read like this:—

123 Tsingtao Street,
Nov. 4, 194.....

Dear Mrs. Johnson:

It will indeed give us great pleasure to accept your kind invitation to dinner (or We will be most happy to dine with you) on Wednesday, the ninth, at eight o'clock.

*Sincerely yours,
Jane K. Bookman*

(15) In an informal reply to decline [dīklī'n] an invitation, one usually gives the reason of his inability [īn'əbīl'itī] to accept it. (16) Such a reply usually begins with "I regret to say that..." or "Mr. Goldsmith and I are extremely [īkstrō'mlī] sorry that..."

生 字

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. company [kūm'panī]: 同伴; 到場; 儀容。 | 9. specifically [spīsīf'īkəli]: 透一指明地。 |
| 5. luncheon [lūn'ebən]: 中餐。 | 11. couple [kūp'l]: 一對, 夫婦。 |
| 6. R. S. V. P. [ā'r'əs/vō', ē]: 法文 <i>répondez s'il vous plaît</i> [rē-paw'ndā sī vōō plā] 之簡, 等於英文 reply if you please (敬乞賜覆)。 | 15. decline [dīklī'n]: 謝絕。
inability [īn'əbī'itī]: 不能夠。(名詞) |
| 7. ball [bawl]: 跳舞會。 | 16. extremely [īkstrō'mlī, əks-]: 非常地, 極其。 |

講 義

(A) 非正式的請柬及答覆, 當然儘可照寫者的意見而寫, 不過通常總與課文中的例相差不遠。

(B) 第 5 句中 or / and 等於 or, or and, 該短語的意義是 "In honour of Mrs. So-and-so" or "In honour of Mrs. So-and-so", or "In honour of Mr. and Mrs. So-and-so".

(C) 第 13 節括弧中的 We... with you 諸字可代替 It... dinner 諸字。We 字之前的 or 則用以說明者。

練 習

【造句】用以下諸字及短語當形容詞用: important, written by your brother, behind you, well written, for me.

用以下諸字及短語當狀詞用: often, never, at first, usually, enough, with pleasure, regularly.

LESSON 87

Wedding Invitations and Replies

(1) Here is an invitation to a wedding:—

*Mr and Mrs. Robert Jones
request the honour of your presence¹
at the marriage of their daughter*

Mary Anne

to

*Mr. Johnny Longfellow
on Tuesday afternoon, October the tenth
at four o'clock.*

Union Church²,

Soochow Road.

¹ [pröz'əas]

² [ū'njən chûrch]

(2) If the wedding is to take place in a hotel or at home, then the hotel or home address is given instead of the church address; and in case of a home wedding, "*the presence*" should be changed into "*the honour, or the pleasure, of your company*". (3) As a rule, church wedding does not require a reply to the invitation, but a hotel or home wedding does.

(4) Here is a reply to the above:—

*Mr. and Mrs. Franklin Pope
accept with pleasure the kind invitation of*

Mr. and Mrs. Robert Jones

to the wedding of their daughter

on Tuesday afternoon, October the tenth

at four o'clock.

(5) If, however, they cannot accept the invitation, then the second line should read “*regret their inability to accept the kind invitation of*”, or better still give their reason why they cannot accept it.

(6) A few general observations on the formal invitation and reply will be useful. (7) First, both the inviters [ɪnvɪ'təz] and the repliers [rɪpli'əz] speak of themselves in the **third person**, and it follows, of course, that if there should be only one inviter or one replier, the **verb should have the personal ending**. (8) The address of the inviter or where the dinner, wedding, etc. will take place, is put at the end of the invitation, but that of the replier may either precede or follow the invitation.

(9) In case of a luncheon, tea party, dance [dahns], birthday [bɪ'θdā] party, etc., the name of the party will take the place of the word “dinner” in both the invitation and the reply. (10) In case of tea party or dance, these words may be placed in the same line as the address, but at the left-hand corner with R.S.V.P. below them; also instead of a definite time, the period of time during which tea will be served or dancing will take place is mentioned, e.g., “four to six o'clock” or “ten to two o'clock”.

生 字

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. presence [prɛz'əns]: 到場。 | replier [rɪpli'ə]: 答覆者。 |
| union [u'nyən]: 聯合, 組合, 合一。 | 9. tea party: 茶會。 [跳舞。 |
| 3. as a rule: 通常, 照例。 | dance [dahns, 美國人讀 dāns]: |
| 7. inviter [ɪnvɪ'tə]: 請者。 | birthday [bɪ'θdā]: 生日, 生辰。 |
| | —birthday party: 生日宴會。 |

講 義

(A) 照西洋的禮制, 婚禮的費用由女家負擔, 請帖也是由女家發出的。

(B) 第 2 句的 the honour, or the pleasure, of your company = the honour of your company, or the pleasure of your company.

練 習

【作文】 寫一張正式的請帖，與一張正式的答覆。

LESSON 88

Medicines and Diseases

(1) A drug store sells medicines, it compounds [kəm-pow'ndz] medicines according to doctor's prescription [prɪskrɪp'shən] and sells patent [pā'tənt] medicines too.

(2) There are all sorts of patent medicines for all sorts of diseases, some for treating cholera [kɒl'ərə] and some, dysentery [dɪs'ɛntrɪ]. (3) Some are said to be able to cure [kūr] asthma [əs'mə] and some, rheumatism [rōō-matɪzəm]. (4) Some will cure, it is so advertised [əd'vɔtɪzɪd], Hongkong foot and some, corns [kɔrnz].

(5) There are patent medicines for nearly every kind of disease, though very few medicines are specifics [spɪsɪf'ɪks]. (6) So in case of sickness, it is best to consult [kɒnsʌlt] doctors. (7) However, not all the doctors are trustworthy [trʌst'wɛr'dhɪ], for there are quacks [kwæks] and quacks. (8) The best thing for one to do is, of course, to keep oneself fit [fɪt] and save the doctor's bills or the money spent on patent medicines. (9) But many people won't do it just because of some inconvenience!

A: (10) What is he suffering [sʌf'ərɪŋg] from?

- B: (11) Nobody knows, not even the best doctor in town. (12) He feels tired, giddy [gɪd'ɪ], etc. when he works for two or three hours; and if he works longer, the giddiness [gɪd'ɪnɪs] grows and he will be aching all over the body.
- A: (13) The best thing for him to do, then, would be to take a vacation and go elsewhere for a rest.
- B: (14) That is what he is going to do next week. I am going with him, for I need a rest too, I get some symptoms [sɪm'təmz] that look like I am going to get T.B. [tə'bē'] too.
- A: (16) You don't mean that, do you?
- B: (17) Yes, I do. (18) I cough continuously [kəntɪn'juəsli], I got fever at night regularly, and all that, aren't they symptoms for tuberculosis [tʊbɪ'kʊlə'sɪs]?
- A: (19) Well then, you had better be careful, it's no joke [jɔk] to get consumption [kənsʌmp'shən].
- B: (20) That's why I am going to take a vacation, though I can hardly afford [əfɔ'd] it. (21) By the way, what has become of Z—?
- A: (22) He is in a [ə] v. d. hospital [vɔ'dɔ' hɔs'pɪtl] still.
- B: (23) Which hospital did you say, the [dhə] V. D. Hospital, where is it?
- A: (24) No, not *the* [dhə], but *a* [ə] v. d. hospital. (25) It's Dr. T—'s Hospital, which specializes [spɛʃ'əlɪzɪz] in treating venereal [vɪnɪr'ɪəl] diseases, that's why I call it a v. d. hospital. (26) He has been there for nearly two months now without any prospect [prɔs'pekt] of getting better.
- B: (27) What a pity!

生 字

1. **compound** [kəm-pəʊnd]: 複合 配合。(六語詞)
prescription [prɪskrɪpʃən]: 診單, 藥方。
patent [pə'tent]: 專利。——*patent medicine*: 便藥。 [拉, 霍亂, 虎列]
2. **cholera** [kə'lɒrə]: 霍亂, 虎列
dysentery [dɪs'entri]: 痢疾。
3. **cure** [sɜː]: 醫愈。
asthma [æs'mə]: 氣喘。
rheumatism [rɪə'mætɪzəm]: 風溼病。
4. **advertise** [əd'vetɪz]: 登廣告。
Hongkong foot: 是種同徑癩病。
corn [kɔːn]: 雞眼。
5. **specific** [spɪsɪfɪk]: 特效藥。
6. **consult** [kənsʌlt]: 商議, 諮詢, 就診。 [可靠的]
7. **trustworthy** [trʌst'wɜːðɪ]:
quack [kwæk]: 江湖郎中, 庸醫。
8. **fit** [fɪt]: 適合。——*keep fit*: 使身體強壯。
10. **suffer** [sʌfə]: 受苦。
12. **giddy** [gɪdɪ]: 眩暈。
giddiness [gɪd'ɪnɪs]: 眩暈。
15. **symptom** [sɪm'təm]: 徵候, 症候。 [之簡稱。
T. B. [tɪ'bɛː] = tuberculosis
18. **continuously** [kən'tɪn'juəsli]: 接連地。
tuberculosis [tʊbɪ'kjuːlə'sɪs]: 肺癆。
19. **joke** [jəʊk]: 笑話。——*It's no joke*: 不是玩。
consumption [kənsʌmpʃən, -sʌmʃən]: 肺癆。
20. **afford** [əfɔːd]: 堪支持, 供應。
23. **v. d.** [vɔːdɛː] = venereal disease 之簡。
hospital [hɒs'pɪtl]: 醫院。
25. **specialize** [spɪʃə'ləɪz]: 專門, 專門化。
venereal [vɪnɪə'ɪəl]: 花柳病的。——*venereal disease*: 花柳病, 梅毒。
v. d. hospital: 花柳病醫院。
26. **prospect** [prɒs'pekt]: 形勢, 光景, 希望。

講 義

(A) **specific** 原為形容詞, 其義為“逐一指出”, “指定”, 或“顯著”。用以指“特效藥”時, 乃言此藥用以治某病一定有效, 如金雞納霜之治瘧疾, 藥特靈之治痢疾。據說, 西藥中此類的藥恐怕不到十種。

(B) **a** 之泛指“某一”, **the** 之確指“該個”的不同, 可於 22, 23 兩句看得很清楚。注意 22, 23, 24 三節中 **a**, **the** 兩字各有輕重兩種讀法。

練 習

【作文】寫非正式的請帖和答覆各一張。

LESSON 89

How to Write Telegrams, etc.

(1) When we have something important to communicate [kəmū'nīkāt] with others in other cities or ports, we can send the message [mēs'ij] by telegraph [tēl'igrāf], cable, or radio [rā'diō], and the message is then called telegram [tēl'igrām], cablegram [kābl'grām], or radiogram [rā'diōgrām] respectively. (2) A telegram, cablegram, or radiogram must be brief, because the longer it is, the more it costs. (3) However, under no circumstance should clearness [klēr'nīs] be sacrificed [sāk'rīfist].

(4) For instance, if your sister got sick, and you have sent her to a hospital and are now in need of \$200, you will telegraph your home for money, but you need not tell all the symptoms of her sickness, the circumstances which led to her sickness, how much money you have spent already, etc., you need only say:

SISTER SICK IN HOSPITAL SEND 200
IMMEDIATELY

(5) Instead of the word "sister" you may put the name of your sister, and instead of "sick", the name of her sickness, e.g., typhoid or whatever disease she is stricken [strīk'n] with; you may add the name of the hospital too; and 200 means two hundred dollars of course, but you may name any other sum or leave it to the judgement [jūj'ment] of your parents. (6) The telegram must be preceded by the name and address of your parents and followed by your name.

(7) If you are going to Tientsin by a steamer called Tsinan, and you want your brother who is in Tientsin to come to meet you, you may cable him as follows:

MEET ME TSINAN

(8) Or you may ask your friend to cable your brother after your steamer left the port, in which case your friend will most probably [pröb'öbli] cable the following:

MEET T— TSINAN

(9) But if you have already written your brother about your trip [trīp], asking him to meet you on the steamer, then your name and the name of the steamer will be enough.

(10) In a telegram, cablegram, or radiogram, you may violate [vī'olāt] many rules of grammar by omitting verbs, especially *to be*, prepositions, etc., but be sure that the meaning is clear and the receiver of such a message shall not misunderstand [mīs'ündeständ"] it.

生 字

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. communicate [komū'nikāt]: 交通, 通消息。
 message [mös'ij]: 消息, 信息。
 telegraph [töi'igräfi, -grä]: 電報; 打電報給某人。(名詞或云謂
 radio [rā'diō]: 無線電。 [詞)
 telegram [töi'igräm]: 電報, 電信。 [電信。
 cablegram [kā'blgräm]: 海底
 radiogram [rā'diōgräm]: 無線電報。</p> | <p>5. stricken [stri:k'n]: strike 之過去分詞, 但祇與“疾病”, “饑饉”, “老邁”等字連用。
 judgement [jūj'mənt]: 評判, 判決, 判決力。
 7. Tsinan [tsē'nän']: (山東) 濟南; 此指“濟南號”輪船。
 8. probably [pröb'öbli]: 大半會, 可有地。
 9. trip [trīp]: 旅行。
 10. violate [vī'olāt]: 違背。
 misunderstand [mīs'ündəstænd"]: 誤會。</p> |
| <p>3. under no circumstance: 無論何種情況都不可~。 [自。(名詞)
 clearness [klēr'nis]: 清晰, 明</p> | |

講 義

(A) 寫電文時,各字字母須一律用大寫,因為電報中不分大寫小寫,全用大寫較整齊,不容易讀錯。

(B) 英文電文中姓名儘可連寫一字,不必用“連號”(-)。

練 習

【作文】寫一張電文給朋友,告訴他已代謀得位置,叫他速來。

LESSON 90

Rhetoric

(1) Grammar helps us to make correct expressions of our ideas, but our aim is to make not only correct, but also effective, expressions. (2) Rhetoric [rēt'orik] teaches us how to make effective expressions.

(3) Before it can be effective, our writing or saying must be correct and clear. (4) And to make it effective, our writing or saying, no matter long or short, must have **unity** [ū'nītī], **coherence** [kōhēr'əns] and **emphasis** at certain point or points. (5) We must not say too many things at once; a sentence must try to say one thing and say it well; this is **unity** in the sentence. (6) We group a number of sentences into one paragraph, and again the paragraph must have its **unity**, i.e., all the sentences in a paragraph must contribute [kōntrīb'ūt] to make one point. (7) It usually takes paragraphs to form a composition [kōm'pōzīsh'ən], and all these paragraphs must lead to a central point; this is the **unity** of the composition.

(8) When all these points lead logically one to the other, no matter in a paragraph or in the whole composition, then the writing is said to have **coherence**.

(9) It needs hardly be said that some point or idea is more important than others, we have, therefore, to give more **emphasis** to the important point.

(10) We must have clear and logical thinking before our writing or saying can be clear and correct and can have **unity** and **coherence**. (11) The usual rhetorical devices [rītōr'īkəl dīvī'sīz] to give **emphasis** to an idea are to put the idea at the beginning or the end of a sentence or a paragraph, and to change the usual **sentence construction** or **word-order**, to attract the reader's attention.

(12) But there is something else to help us make our expressions effective and even beautiful. (13) For this, rhetoric teaches us to choose the right word for the right occasion and to employ **figures of speech**.

(14) Rhetoric also teaches us how to treat the different kinds of composition. (15) There are according to rhetoric, four kinds of composition: **description** [dīskrīp'shən], **narration** [nārā'shən] or story-telling, **exposition** [ēks'pōzīsh'ən] which explains things, and **argumentation** [ār'gūmētā'shən]. (16) It is useful to classify compositions into these four classes, although we often mix them all in our writing.

(17) A composition usually begins with an introduction and ends with a conclusion. (18) This is true with all kinds of composition, even in case of **pure description**.

生 字

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 2. rhetoric [rə'torik]: 修辭學。 | coherence [kōhē'rēns]: 結合, 連貫。 |
| 4. unity [ū'nīti]: 單一, 純一, 和諧。 | |

6. **contribute** [kən'trīb'ūt]: 貢獻。
7. **composition** [kəm'pəzɪʃ'ən]: 作文。
11. **rhetorical** [rɪ'tɔ'ɪkəl]: 修辭學的, 合於修辭學的。 [法, **device** [dɪ'vi's]: 機謀, 策略, 方
13. **figures** [fɪg'əz]: 譬喻, 詞藻。——*figures of speech*: 譬喻, 詞藻。
15. **description** [dɪ'skrɪp'shən]: 描寫事物; 描寫法; 敘述文。
narration [nə'rɑ'shən]: 講故事, 敘說, 記事文。
exposition [ɒks'pəzɪʃ'ən]: 解釋事理, 說明文。
argumentation [ɑr'gʌməntə'shən]: 辯論文。

講 義

(A) 很可惜, 因為材料擁擠不過, 修辭學不能多講; 但是修辭學是易講難用的東西, 又初中課程標準中並無英文修辭學。就是本講義所講的文法也有許多深於初中的程度者; 這是因為恐怕諸位再進而研究英文的機會不多, 所以多教一點。

* * *

REVIEW (Corresponding to LL. 86—90)

1. The formal invitation and reply are written in the **third person**, i.e., the writer speaks of himself as Mr., Mrs., or Miss So-and-so.
2. Both the invitation and the reply give the nature, time, and place of the invitation; and when one wants a reply one writes "R.S.V.P." at the left lower corner of the invitation.
3. The informal invitation and reply are letters written for such purposes, and usually contain nothing else, hence very short.
4. Here are a few more common diseases: cholera, dysentery, asthma, rheumatism, Hongkong foot, corns, tuberculosis or consumption, and the venereal diseases.

5. There are patent medicines, most of which will not cure the diseases for which they are advertised, though some will; but there are a few specifics, which will surely cure the diseases for which they are used.
6. There are good doctors, but there are also quacks, who are most interested in getting money from you than in curing you.
7. When you consult a doctor, he usually asks you about the symptoms of your trouble, such as fever, giddiness, ache, the motion of bowels, etc.
8. In sending a telegram, cablegram, or radiogram, one says only the important things and in as few words as possible, omitting the unimportant.
9. **Grammar** helps us to make **correct expressions**, while **rhetoric** helps us to make **effective expressions**.
10. **Rhetoric** teaches us how to make our writing clear and correct, and how to have **unity, coherence, and emphasis**; it also teaches us how to make the **right use of words and figures of speech**; and it treats the different kinds of writing: **description, narration, exposition, and argumentation**.

字 彙

(第一二兩冊中已見之生字及成語，概不錄入，惟意義不同者仍行注出，讀音則從略。人名以姓氏爲首字，但人名用作書名或戲劇名時，則依全名之次序。其他應行注意事項，請參閱第一冊字彙凡例。)

A, a [ä]

abandon [əbän'dən]. 【云】放棄 52

A. B. C. [ä'bē'sē]. 【名】電報密碼名 1

abode [əbō'd]. 【名】居處 41

abolition [äb'olish'ən]. 【名】廢除 82 【對的】 84

absolute [äb'sələōt, -lūt]. 【形】絕

absolute participial phrase:
絕對分詞短語 84

absorb [əbsōɹ'b]. 【云】吸收 49

accent [äksənt']. 【云】讀重音 53

accept [äksəpt']. 【云】接受 書押 15 【接收的】 53

acceptable [äksəpt'təbl]. 【形】可

acceptance [äksəpt'təns]. 【名】接收, 書押 56

accompany [äkümp'əni]. 【云】伴
著 61 【64

achieve [əchē'v]. 【云】做成, 獲得

acknowledgement [äknə'lidʒmənt].
【名】承認 4

acme [äk'mi]. 【形】頂, 最高; 【名】
電報密碼名 1

acquaintance [äkwä'ntəns]. 【名】
相識的人 70

acre [ä'kə]. 【名】英畝 44

act 【名】律令 67

active [äk'tiv]. 【形】主動的 12

active voice: 主動態 12

activity [äktiv'itī]. 【名】行動, 事情 52

actor [äk'tə]. 【名】男優 31

actress [äk'tris]. 【名】女伶 31

actually [äk'tüəli, äk'tüli]. 【狀】
實實在在 30

Adam [äd'əm]. 【名】亞當(上帝所
造的第一個男人) 63

Adam Bede [äd'əm bēd]: Eliot 小
說 74

Addison, Joseph [jä'zif äd'isn]: 愛
狄生(英國新聞學家, Spectator 編
者, 1672—1719) 67

additional [äd'ish'ənəl]. 【形】另
加的 82 【的】 80

admirable [ädmərəbl]. 【形】可嘉

Admirable Crichton, The [äbī
äd'mərəbl kri'tn]: Barrie 著戲
劇 80

admiration [äd'mirä'shən]. 【名】
欣賞, 欽佩 73

admit [ädmit']. 【云】承認 69

advantage [ədvah'nti]. 【名】利
益 70

adventure [əd'vən'chə]. 【名】冒
險 81 【88

advertise [äd'vətiz]. 【云】登廣告

- advertisement** [əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt, 美 -tīz-]. 【名】廣告 42
- affectionately** [ə'fekʃənətli]. 【狀】親愛地 70
- afford** [ə'fɔ:rd]. 【云】支持, 供應 88
- against**. 【介】相對; 對換 3, 66
- Age of Chaucer, the** [dʒi: əj əv tʃəʊ/sə:]. 高索時代 52
- Age of Classicism, the** [dʒi: əj əv klæsɪsɪzəm]. 古典主義時代 67
- Age of Dryden, the** [dʒi: əj əv dri'dən]. 特萊登時代 64
- Age of Johnson, the** [dʒi: əj əv jɒn'sn]. 約翰生時代 68
- Age Milton, the of** [dʒi: əj əv ni:l'tən]. 密爾頓時代 63
- Age of Pope, the** [dʒi: əj əv pɔ:p]. 蒲伯時代 65
- Age of Puritanism, the** [dʒi: əj əv pʊrɪ'tənɪzəm]. 清教時代 64
- Age of Romanticism, the** [dʒi: əj əv romən'tɪsɪzəm]. 浪漫主義時代 68, 73
- Age of Shakespeare, the** [dʒi: əj əv shə'kspɛr]. 莎士比亞時代 69
- Age of Spencer, the** [dʒi: əj əv spɛn'sə:]. 斯賓塞時代 68
- Age of Tennyson and Browning, the** [dʒi: əj əv tɛn'sn ən braʊnɪŋ]. 丁尼生及布魯寧時代 74
- Age of Transition, the** [dʒi: əj əv trænziʒhən]. 過渡時代 68
- agency** [ə'dʒensi]. 【名】媒介物 39
- agent** [ə'dʒənt]. 【名】代理人 1
- agitation** [ə'dʒɪ'teɪʃən]. 【名】鼓動人心的行為 77
- agony** [ə'ɡɒni]. 【名】痛苦 64
- agriculture** [æ'ɡrɪkʌltʃə:]. 【名】農業 9
- aim** [aɪm]. 【云】企圖, 志在 67
- Alfred** [əl'frɪd]. 【名】男子名 15
- Alfred, King** [kɪŋ əl'frɪd]: 英國古代國王 61
- all over again**: 完全重新 67
- all the year**: 全年 65
- all-round** [əw'ɪ-row'nd]. 【形】面面齊全, 多才多藝 52
- allow** [ə'ləʊ]. 【云】准許 3
- almost** [əw'lmɔ:st, əl', -məst]. 【狀】幾乎 6
- amend** [ə'mɛnd]. 【云】改正 69
- American Indians**: 美洲印地安人 81
 | 在~之中 30
- amidst** [ə'mɪd'st əmɪts/t]. 【介】
- amuse** [ə'mu:z]. 【云】使快樂 70
- amusing** [ə'mu:zɪŋ]. 【形】悅人的, 有趣的 70
- ancient** [ə'nʃənt]. 【形】古代的; 老 6, 73
- Ancient Mariner, The** [dʒi: ə'nʃənt mɑ:ri'nə:]. 古代舟子 (Coleridge 詩) 73
- and so forth (= etc.)**: 等等 69
- Anglo** [æŋ'ɡl]. 【名】盎格魯人 49
- Anglo-Saxon** [æŋ'ɡlɔ:-sæksn]. 【名】盎格魯撒克遜族 (Anglo 與 Saxon 之合稱) 49
- animal** [ə'nɪməl]. 【名】動物 5
- anna** [ən'ə]. 【名】安娜 (羅比十六分之一) 66
- Anne, Queen** [kwɛn ən]: 安 (英國女王, 1702—14 在位, 生卒年代 1665—1714) 67
- antecedent** [æn'tɪsɛ'dənt]. 【名】前詞, 先行詞 37

- Antony and Cleopatra** [ˈæntɒni ɒn kliˈɒpəˈtrɔː]. 【名】安東尼與克利奧佩特刺(莎翁歷史劇名) 59
- Aphrodite** [ˈæfrəˈdɪti]. 【名】希臘女神 19
- Apollo** [əˈpɒlə]. 【名】希臘神祇 22
- apology** [əˈpɒləʒi]. 【名】道歉, 陪不是 61 [記號 24]
- apostrophe** [əˈpɒstərəʊf]. 【名】()
- apothecary** [əˈpɒθɪkəri]. 【名】藥劑師 44
- appease** [əˈpiːs]. 【云】使息怒 60
- apple** [ˈæpl]. 【名】蘋果 41
- appreciate** [əˈpreʃiəteɪt]. 【云】尊重, 感激 83
- archer** [ˈɑːtʃə]. 【名】弓箭手 40
- archer-god** [-gɒd]. 【名】弓神 40
- architect** [ˈɑːtʃɪtekt]. 【名】建築師 8 [a.]
- are** [ɑː]. 【名】公畝, 安 43; 簡作
- Areopagus** [ˈɑːrɪˈɒpəɡəs]. 【名】古希臘雅典之小丘 36
- Ares** [ˈæˈrɛz]. 【名】希臘神祇 9
- argue** [ˈɑːɡuː]. 【云】辯論 5
- argumentation** [ˈɑːɡjūməntəˈʃən]. 【名】辯論文 90
- argumentative** [ˈɑːɡjūməntəˈtɪv]. 【形】爭辯的, 理論的 74
- Ariel** [ˈæriəl]. 【名】Tempest 一劇中主人翁之神役名 65
- aristocracy** [ˈærɪstəkrəsi]. 【名】貴族階級 74 [貴族的 46]
- aristocratic** [ˈærɪstəkrəˈtɪk]. 【形】
- arm**. 【云】持械, 武裝 33 [甲 41]
- armour, armor** [ˈɑːmə]. 【名】盔
- Arnold, Matthew** [ˈmæθˈu ɑːnld]. 安諾德(英國詩人兼散文作家, 1822—1888) 74
- arrival** [əˈrɪvəl]. 【名】來到, (轉爲) 成名 73
- arrow** [ˈɑːrə]. 【名】箭 40
- art** [ɑːt]. 【名】美術, 藝術(複數 arts [ɑːts]); 技藝 10, 36
- art critic**: 美術批評家 74
- art**. 【云】(古體 be 之一式, 與 thou 合用) 是 83 [神 22]
- Artemis** [ˈɑːtɪmɪs]. 【名】希臘女
- Arthur** [ˈɑːtʃə]. 【名】男子名 51
- Arthur, King** [kɪŋ ɑːtʃə]. 英國古代國王 51 的 50
- artificial** [ˈɑːtɪʃiəl]. 【形】人工
- artist** [ˈɑːtɪst]. 【名】藝術家 8
- as a rule**: 通常, 照例 87
- as follows**: 如下 3 [說 83]
- as it were** (=so to speak): 可這樣
- as regards**: 關於 3
- as to**: 至於, 關於 24
- As You Like It** [æz ũ lɪk ɪt]: 如那(莎翁喜劇名) 59
- ass** [æs]. 【名】驢子 32
- assure** [əˈʃʊə]. 【云】向~鄭重宣言, 保證 2
- asthma** [ˈæsmə]. 【名】氣喘 88
- at a loss**: 虧本 61
- at any rate**: 無論如何 15
- at par**: 額面的價 47
- at sight**: 現天的, 見票 56
- at thirty days' sight**: 三十天期(的支票) 56
- at this end**: 在這邊 2
- at times**: 有的時候 14 [22]
- Athena** [əˈθɪnə]. 【名】希臘女神
- Athens** [ˈæθɪnz]. 【名】雅典城 36
- athlete** [ˈæθli:t]. 【名】運動家 8
- athletic** [ˈæθlɪtɪk]. 【形】運動的 21

- attacker** [ətək'ə]. 【名】攻擊者 36
- attend** [ətənd'ɪ]. 【云】輕從 41
- attend to**: 注意, 留心; 服務 47
- attorney** [ətét'ni]. 【名】律師, 代辦人 83
- attorney-general** [-jə'n/orəi]. 【名】檢察長 83
- attributively** [əttrib'ütivli]. 【狀】附加用法 85
- audience** [aw'dyəns]. 【名】聽衆; 觀眾 59
- Audubon, John James** [jɔn jəmz aw'doobən]: 美國生物學家, 1780—1851) 83
- Auld Lang Syne** [awld læng sɪn]: 舊義重提 (Burns 詩) 68
- Austin, Jane** [jæn aw'stɪn]: 奧斯丁 (英國小說家, 1775—1817) 73
- autobiography** [aw'tɔbiɔg'roʊfi]. 【名】自傳 81
- Autobiography, The** [ðɪ aw'to-biɔg'roʊfi]: “自傳” (佛蘭克林著) 81
- auxiliary** [awgzɪ'yəri, awks-, awkz-, əg-, ək-]. 【名】輔助字 53
- Avenue Road** [äv'ɪnū rɔd]: (上海) 愛文義路 86 [均 4
- average** [äv'əri], äv'ri]. 【形】平均 4
- avoirdupois** [äv'ɔdɔpɔi'z]. 【形】貨重 44 [44
- avoirdupois weight**: 貨重衡, 常衡
- B, b** [bɔ]
- bachelor** [bäch'ələ, bäch'lə]. 【名】未婚男子 32
- Back to Methuselah** [bäk tɔ mɪθu'zələ]: 蕭伯納戲劇名 79
- Bacon, Francis** [frəh'nsɪs bə'kən]: 培根 (英國散文大家, 1561—1626) 57, 58
- ball**. 【名】跳舞會 86
- ballad** [bäl'əd]. 【名】民間歌謠 52
- ballad epic**: 敘述英雄事蹟的民歌 73
- banish** [bän'ɪʃ]. 【云】驅逐 69
- bank** [bänk]. 【名】銀行; 岸. 【云】經營銀行事業 28, 69
- banking** [bäng'kɪng]. 【形】經營銀行事業的 28
- Barbara Fritchie** [bär'berə frɪch'i]: Whittier 詩 81
- barbarian** [bär'bär'iən]. 【名】夷狄, 半開化的民族 46
- barbarism** [bär'berɪzəm]. 【名】野蠻的風俗或行爲 39
- bard** [bärd]. 【名】唱歌的詩人 7
- barely** [bär'i]. 【狀】僅僅 68
- Barrie, Sir James Matthew** [sɪr jəmz mətθ'u bär'i]: 巴雷 (蘇格蘭小說家兼戲劇作家, 1860—) 80
- base** [bäs]. 【云】根據 43
- bat** [bät]. 【名】蝙蝠 65
- battle** [bätl]. 【名】交戰 36
- bear**. 【云】生 19 (～, bore, born)
- Beaumont, Francis** [frəh'nsɪs bɔ'mənt]: 英國戲劇作家 (1584—1616) 59
- beauty** [bü'ti]. 【名】美; 美人 6
- beauty of nature**: 自然之美 6
- bee** [bɔ]. 【名】蜜蜂 45
- befall** [bɪfaw'l]. 【云】逢, 臨 76 (～, befell, befallen)

- befallen** [bɪfaw'fɔ:n]. 【云】(be all 的過去分詞) 逢, 臨 76
- befell** [bɪfɛl]. 【云】(befall 的過去時制) 逢, 臨 76
- beget** [bɪgət]. 【云】生 65 (~, begot, begotten)
- beggar** [bɛg'ə]. 【名】乞丐 82
- begot** [bɪgət]. 【云】(beget 的過去時制) 生 65
- begotten** [bɪgətən]. 【云】(beget 的過去分詞) 生 65 [65]
- behind** [bɪhɪ'nd]. 【介】在~之後
- being** [bɪ'ɪŋ]. 【名】物 67
- belga** [bɛl'jə]. 【名】比利時之五法郎 66
- bell** [bɛl]. 【名】花心; 鐘 65, 81
- Belloc, Hilaire** [hɪlɑr'fɛlɔk]. 英國現代散文作家(1870—) 79
- Bells, The** [dhɛ bɛlz]. Poe 詩 81
- beloved** [bɪlʌvd]. 【名】所愛的人 69 [24]
- beneath** [bɪnə'th]. 【介】在~之下
- Bentley** [bɛntlɪ]. 【名】人名; 電報密碼名 1 [者之間] 79
- betwixt** [bɪtwɪks]. 【介】在~兩
- Beowulf** [bɛ'fowʊlf]. 【名】人名(盎格魯撒克遜民族古代半神話的英雄); 敘述這位英雄的事蹟的詩 51
- best of books, the**: 書中之最佳者, 聖經 65 [經] 68
- Bible, the** [dhɛ bɪ'bl]. (耶教的) 聖
- Biglow Papers, The** [dhɛ bɪg'ɔ pa'pɜz]. Lowell 著 81
- bill of lading**: 提貨單 67
- bind** [bɪnd]. 【云】縛 41 (~, bound, bound)
- birth** [bɜr'th]. 【名】生產 20
- birthday** [bɜr'thdeɪ]. 【名】生日 87
- birthday party**: 生辰聚會 87
- bitch** [bɪtʃ]. 【名】母狗 30
- blacksmith** [blæk'smɪθ]. 【名】鐵匠 81
- blame** [blɑm]. 【云】譴責; 歸咎 42
- blood** [blʊd]. 【名】血 19
- bloom** [blʊm]. 【名】花 45
- blossom** [blɔsəm]. 【名】花; 【云】開花 65, 73
- board** [bɔrd]. 【名】板 28
- boisterous** [bɔɪ'stɔrɪ]. 【形】騷亂的, 喧囂的 56
- Bolderwood, Rolf** [rɔlf bɔldəwʊd]. 澳大利亞小說家 80
- bone** [bɔn]. 【名】骨 46
- Bookman, Jane K.** [jæn kɑ bʊk'mən]. 女子名 86 [27]
- book-post** [bʊk'pɔst]. 【名】書郵
- bore** [bɔr]. 【云】(bear 的過去時制) 生 19
- born** [bɔrn]. 【云】(bear 的過去分詞) 生 19
- Boston** [bɔs'tɔn]. 【名】波士頓(美國麻省城名) 82
- Boswell, James** [jæn z bɔz'wɛl]. 英國文學家(1740—1795) 68
- bough** [baʊ]. 【名】樹枝 65
- bound** [baʊnd]. 【云】(bind 的過去時制及過去分詞) 縛 41
- boundless** [baʊndlɪs]. 【形】無限的 75
- brackets** [bræk'ɪts]. 【名】方括弧, 即 [] 16 (單數 bracket 罕用)
- brain**. 【名】腦 75
- branch**. 【名】支店, 分行 29
- brave** [bræv]. 【形】勇敢的 46
- bravery** [brə'vorɪ, brə'vrɪ]. 【名】勇敢 7

- breath** [brēth]. 【名】氣息, 生命 75 [65, 69]
- breathe** [brēdh]. 【云】吹氣, 呼吸
- bride** [brid]. 【名】新娘 31
- bridegroom** [brī'dgrōom]. 【名】新郎 31
- bridge** [brīj]. 【名】橋 56
- brief** [brēf]. 【形】簡要的, 簡短的 11
- briefly** [brē'flī]. 【狀】簡要地, 簡短地 85 [輝煌 68]
- brilliance** [brīl'yōnsī]. 【名】光輝
- bring up**: 養活 20
- Brodingnag** [brōb'dīngnāg]. 【名】大人國 67
- Browne, Sir Thomas** [sī tōm'əs brown]: 英國散文作家 (1606—1682) 63
- Browning, Robert** [rōb'ət brōw'nīng]: 白郎寧 (1812—1889) 74
- Bryant, William Cullen** [wīl'yəm kūl'īn brī'ənt]: 美國作家 (1794—1875) 81
- bucca: ear** [būk'ōnēr#]. 【名】海賊: 【云】偷竊 45
- buccaneering**. 【形】偷竊的 45
- build fire**: 生火 5
- builder** [bīl'də]. 【名】建築者 77
- bull** [bōō]. 【名】牝牛 32
- Bunyan, John** [jōn būn'yōn]: 朋揚 (英國清教時代散文作家, 1628—1688) 63
- burden** [bēr'dn]. 【名】担, 負擔, 重擔: 詩中主要的意義 64, 88
- Burke, Edmund** [əd'n.əul būr'k]: 柏克 (英國散文作家兼演說家, 1729—1797) 68, 82
- Burns, Robert** [rōb'ət būr'nz]: 明斯 (蘇格蘭詩人, 1733—1796) 68
- bushel** [bōōsh'əl, bōōsh'vl]. 【名】蒲式耳 44 (簡寫作 bu.)
- business**. 【名】商業, 商店 1
- business house**: 商店 1
- business letter**: 商業信札 1
- business man**: 商人, 商家 1
- Butler, Benjamin J.** [bōn'jəmīn jā bŭt'lə]: 人名 (美國檢察長, 與歐文同時, 惟生卒年代不詳) 83
- button** [bŭt'n]. 【名】鈕子 61
- buying department**: 進貨部 2
- By Jove**: 指 Jove 立誓的方式 21
- by lot**: 抽籤 21
- by no means**: 決不, 決非 4
- by popular request**: 出於公眾的請求 15
- Byron, Lord George Gordon** [lōrd jōrj gōdn bī'rən]: 拜倫 (英國詩人, 1788—1824) 73

C, c [sō]

- cabin** [kāl'īn]. 【名】小屋, 茅舍 82
- cable** [kābl]. 【名】海底電線: 海電: 【云】打海電 1, 56
- cable address**: 海電掛號住址 1
- cablegram** [kā'blgrām]. 【名】海底電信 89
- Caesar, Julius** [jōō'lyōs sē'zə]: 該撒 (古羅馬大將, 政治家, 兼著作家, 100—44 B.C.) 59
- calculate** [kāl'kŭlāt]. 【云】算, 計算 29
- calf** [kāl]. 【名】小牛 32 (複數 calves [kahlvz])
- call for (=need)**: 需要 71
- call your attention to**: 請你注意 29

- camp** [kämp]. 【名】營帳,營盤,暫時駐紮之處 82
- can** 【名】罐頭,裝頭的空盒 1, 23
- Canterbury** [kän'təbəri]. 【名】英國地名 52
- Canterbury Tales, The** [dhə kän'təbəri tälz]: Chaucer 名著 52
- capacity** [kəpəs'itī]. 【名】容量 43
- Cape Colony** [kəp kəlfəni]: 南非殖民地(英屬) 80
- capital**. 【名】京城,省城;【形】良好的 51, 77
- carat** [kär'ət]. 【名】克辣 44
- carat-grain** [grän]. 【名】克辣釐 44
- cardinal** [kär'dīnəl, -nəl] 【形】基數的;【名】主教 48
- care**. 【名】憂慮 69 【忽 61
- carelessness** [kär'lisnīs] 【名】疏忽
- Carlyle, Thomas** [tə'məs kārli'l]: 加萊爾(蘇格蘭散文作家兼歷史家, 1795—1881) 74
- case**. 【名】箱 53
- Cassandra** [kasän'drə]. 【名】希臘女子名 40
- cast** [kahst, 美 kăst]. 【云】投,擲 65 (過去及過去分詞皆同)
- Cathleen ni Hoolihan** [kəth'liēn nī hū'lihan]: Yeats 著戲劇 80
- cattle** [kät'l]. 【名】家畜,(特指)牛 59
- cause** [kawz]. 【云】致使,使惹起;【名】原因;主張,運動;事情 13, 61, 74, 83 【豪華子 64
- cavalier** [käv'əliē']. 【名】騎士;
- Caxton, William** [wīl'yəm kaks'tən]: 英國印刷業之始祖(1422?—1491) 58
- cease** [sēs]. 【云】停止 77
- celebrate** [səl'ibrā't]. 【云】慶祝 59
- celebration** [səl'ibrā'shon]. 【名】慶祝會 21
- Celia** [səl'iyə]. 【名】女子名(想係 Ben Jonson 之愛人) 65
- Celt** [kəlt]. 【名】大不列顛島在歷史上最早的居民 49 【的 49
- Celtic** [kəl'tik]. 【形】屬於 Celt 人
- centare** [sən'tāi]. 【名】公釐百分之一,釐安 43 簡作 (ca.)
- centavo** [sən'tah'vō]. 【名】peso 百分之一 66
- centesimo** [səntēs'imō]. 【名】里拉百分之一 66
- centigramme** [sən'tigrām]. 【名】一克百分之一,公毫,釐克 43 (簡作 cg.)
- centilitre** [sən'tilē'tō]. 【名】一公升百分之一,公勺,釐升 43 (簡作 cl.) 【分之一 66
- centime** [sən'tēm]. 【名】法郎百
- centimetre** [sən'timē'tō]. 【名】一米突百分之一,公分,釐米 43 (簡作 cm.) 【47
- century** [sən'tʃəri]. 【名】世紀
- Ceres** [sēr'ez]. 【名】羅馬女神 22
- challenge** [chəl'ind]. 【云】要求;挑戰 47 【護 74
- champion** [chām'pyən]. 【云】擁護
- chance** [chāns, 美 chāns]. 【名】機會,偶然的機緣 52
- channel** [chānl, -nəl]. 【名】海峽,河道 49
- chaos** [kə'ōs, kə'ōs]. 【名】渾沌 19
- Chapman, George** [jərdʒ chāp'mən]: 荷馬 (Iliad 及 Odyssey 兩書之英譯者, 1559?—1634) 58

- character** [kär'æktə]. 【名】人品，人格；小說或戲劇中的人物。性質 69, 67
- character-writing** [rī'ŭŋ]. 【名】人物描寫 68
- characteristic** [kär'ik'ərīs'tik, -trīs'-]. 【名】特徵 8
- characterize** [kär'ik'teriz]. 【云】表~特性 79
- charge**. 【云】控告 39 【神】33
- Charites** [chär'itēz]. 【名】希臘女神
- charity** [chär'itī]. 【名】慈善 77
- charm** [chärm]. 【名】悅人或迷人的魔力 31
- charming** [chär'mŋŋ]. 【形】悅人的，迷人的 31
- chase** [chäs]. 【云】追逐 62
- Chaucer, Geoffrey** [jē'ri chaw'tsə]. 喬索(英國古代大詩人, 1340?—1400) 51, 52
- cheerless** [chēr'lis]. 【形】不快樂的 69
- Cheeseman** [chō'zmən]. 【名】人名 77 (複數 -s 指其一家人)
- cherry** [chō'rī]. 【名】櫻桃 65
- cherry-isle** [-i'1]. 【名】櫻桃島 65
- cherry-ripe** [-rī'p]. 【名】櫻桃熟了(叫賣櫻桃的口號) 65
- Chesterton, Gilbert Keith** [gīl'bet kēth chōs'tōtən]. 英國現代散文作家(1874—) 79
- chief** [chōf]. 【形】首的要 64
- chiefly** [chō'fī]. 【狀】主要地 64
- Childe Harold's Pilgrimage** [chīl' hār'ldz pīl'grīmij]. 哈羅德旅行記(Byron 著) 73
- chilly** [chī'lī]. 【形】寒冷的 13
- chirp** [chē'p]. 【云】鳥叫 14
- chirping** [chēr'pŋŋ]. 【名】鳥鳴，鳥啼 14
- chivalry** [shīv'əlri]. 【名】歐洲中世紀武士階級的制度及其精神 46
- cholera** [kōl'ərə]. 【名】霍亂，虎列拉 88
- Christian** [k'ris'chən, -tyən]. 【名】基督教徒；人名(The Pilgrim's Progress 一書之主角) 64
- Christianize** [k'ris'chəniz, -tyən-]. 【云】化為基督教的 51
- chum** [chūm]. 【名】同室生，摯友 14
- c.i.f** [sō'f'ō'f]. 【簡】(=cost insurance, & freight) 包括物價，保險及運費之價格 56
- circumstance** [sī'kəmstəs]. 【名】情形 77
- citizen** [sī'vīzn]. 【名】市民 公民 8
- City of Destruction, the** [dhə sī'vī əv dīstrū'shən]. 毀滅之城 64
- civil** [sīv'ī]. 【形】文明的；公民的；人民之間的，國內的 40, 81
- civil war**: 內戰 81
- Civil War**: (美國)南北戰爭 81
- civilization** [sīv'īlīzə'shən]. 【名】文化，文明 8
- civilize** [sīv'īlīz]. 【云】開化 8
- civilizing** [sīv'īlīzŋŋ]. 【形】開化的 39
- claim** [klām]. 【名】要求 75
- class**. 【名】階級 31
- classic** [klās'ik]. 【名】古代名著；【形】模仿古代名著的，古典派的 64
- Classic Age, the** [dhə klās'ik əj]. 古典時代 64
- classicism** [klās'isizm]. 【名】仿古主義，古典主義 67
- clean** [kiēn]. 【云】使清潔，蕩滌 13

- clearness [klēr/'nɪs]. 【名】清楚, 明白 89
- cleft [klef]. 【名】石隙 39
- Clemens, Samuel [sām/'nɔ:l klēm-'
ənz]. Mark Twain 的眞姓名 82
- climate [klaɪ/'mɪtɪ]. 【名】氣候 6
- Clouds, The [ðə kləʊdz]. 雲 (Shelley 詩) 73
- clover [klɒvə]. 【名】三葉草 45
- Co. 【簡】(=company) 公司 1
~ Co., Ltd. (=company limit-
ed): ~有限公司 28
- coast [kəʊst]. 【名】海岸海邊 6
- cock [kɒk]. 【名】雄鷄 59
- code [kəʊd]. 【名】電報密碼 1
- coffee-house [kəʊ'fi-həʊz] 【名】
咖啡店 77
- coherence [kəʊərəns]. 【名】結合,
連貫 90
- Coleridge, Samuel Taylor [sām-'
nɔ:l taylor kɒlɪdʒ]. 【名】幸勒律
己(十九世紀的英國詩人, 1772—
1834) 46, 73 [的 82
- collected [kə'lektɪd]. 【形】採集
- Collected Poems [kə'lektɪd pə-'
ɪmz]. Robinson 詩集 82
- collection [kə'lektʃən]. 【名】蒐
集, 結集 58 [劑 59
- comedy [kə'mɪdi]. 【名】喜劇, 笑
comedy of manners: 描寫上等社
會生活之喜劇 64
- commission [kə'mɪʃən]. 【名】委
託, 佣金, 佣金 1 [代辦人 1
- commission-agent [ə'ʃjənt]. 【名】
- common. 【形】共同的 21
- common gender: 通性 11
- commonwealth [kə'mənwélth].
【名】共和政治 63
- communi'cate [kə'mju:'nɪkət]. 【云】
交通, 通消息 89
- community [kə'mju:'nɪti]. 【名】地
方社會 69
- company [kəm'pəni]. 【名】同伴;
到場, 儀容 86
- comparative [kəm'pærətɪv]. 【形】
比較的, 較級的 12
- comparative degree: 較級 12
- comparison [kəm'pærɪsn̩]. 【名】
比較 12
- competition [kəm'pɪtɪʃən].
【名】比賽 21
- complaint [kəm'pleɪnt]. 【名】訴
苦, 控訴 61
- compose [kəm'pəʊz]. 【云】作詩 68
- composition [kəm'pəʊzɪʃən].
【名】作文 90
- compound [kəm'paʊnd]. 【云】使
成複合的, 配合 43, 88
- conceive [kən'seɪv]. 【云】懷孕 33
- concentrate [kən'sentrət]. 【云】
集中 75 [觀念 33
- conception [kən'sepʃən]. 【名】
- concession [kən'seshən]. 【名】讓
步, 退一步會, 所謂“退一步” 72
- conclusion. 【名】結論, 斷論 24
- Concord [kən'kɔ:rd]. 【名】美國麻
省東部城名 88
- condition. 【名】條件 29
- conditional [kən'dɪʃənəl]. 【形】
有條件的 72
- conduct [kən'dʌkt]. 【名】行爲 47
- conduct [kən'dʌktɪv]. 【云】管理自
己的行爲, 處置 77
- confess [kən'fes]. 【云】承認 14
- confession [kən'feshən]. 【名】自
認的事, 懺悔 73

- Confessions of an English Opium-Eater** [kən'fɛʃn'ɔnz ðv ən ɪŋ'glɪʃ ə'pjəm-ə'tə]: 鴉片服用者之懺悔 (De Quincey 小說) 73
- confine** [kənfi'n]. 【云】限制 66
- congratulate** [kɒŋgrə'tʃlæt, kɒn-]. 【云】賀, 恭祝 5
- Congreve, William** [wɪl'yəm kɒn'grɛv]: 英國戲劇作家 (1670—1729) 64
- conjugate** [kɒn'jʊgət]. 【云】變化云謂詞的字形 12
- conjugation** [kɒn'jʊgə'shən]. 【名】云謂詞字形之變化 12
- connection** 【名】貿易上的關係: 有往來的商號 28
- conquer** [kɒŋ'kɔ]. 【云】征服 8
- conquered, the:** 被征服者 46
- conqueror** [kɒŋ'kɔrə, -krɔ]. 【名】征服者 45 [服 46]
- conquest** [kɒŋ'kwɔst]. 【名】征服
- Conrad, Joseph** [jɔ'zɪf kɒn'krɔd]: 康乃特 (英國現代小說家, 1857—1924) 79 [穿孔的 67]
- conservative** [kɒnsə'vətɪv]. 【形】
- considerably** [kə'sɪlərəblɪ, kɒn-, -drəblɪ]. 【狀】頗, 甚 3
- consideration** [kɒnsɪ'dɔrə'shən]. 【名】考慮 2 [音 18]
- consonant** [kɒn'sənənt]. 【名】輔
- constant** [kɒn'stənt]. 【形】有恆的, 時常的 70
- constipation** [kɒn'stɪpə'shən]. 【名】便秘 13
- consult** [kɒnsʌlt]. 【云】與~商量: 就診 27, 88
- consumption** [kɒnsʌmp'shən]. 【名】肺癆 88
- content** [kəntənt]. 【形】滿足, 愉快 69
- contentment** [kəntənt'mənt]. 【名】滿足, 愉快 58
- contest** [kɒntɛst]. 【云】比賽 36
- continuation** [kəntɪn'juə'shən]. 【名】繼續 74
- continue** [kəntɪn'ju]. 【云】繼續 20
- continuity** [kɒn'tɪnju'ɪtɪ]. 【名】連續, 始終一貫 81
- continuous** [kəntɪn'juəs]. 【形】連續的, 連續式 12
- continuously** [kəntɪn'juəsli]. 【狀】接連地 88
- contrary** [kɒn'trəri]. 【形】相反的 72 [跋 90]
- contribute** [kɒn'trɪb'ju:t]. 【云】貢獻
- contribution** [kɒn'trɪbju'shən]. 【名】貢獻 52
- convention** [kəvən'shən]. 【名】慣例 73 [83]
- convince** [kɒnvɪns]. 【云】使相信
- Cooper, James Fenimore** [jamz fənɪmɔr kəʊ'pɔ]. 考伯 (美國作家, 1789—1851) 81
- cooperation** [kəʊpə'reɪ'shən, kə-]. 【名】合作 4
- corn.** 【名】鷓眼 88
- ~ Corp.** 【簡】(= corporation) ~公司 3
- corporation** [kɔr'pɔrə'shən]. 【名】公司 2 (簡寫作 Corp.)
- correction** [kɔr'ɔk'shən]. 【名】改正 26 [致, 符合 72]
- correspond** [kɔr'ɪspɒnd]. 【云】一
- correspondence** [kɔr'ɪspɒn'dəns]. 【名】通信 26 [23]
- correspondence course:** 函授課程

- correspondence school**: 函授學校 26
- cost** [kawst, kɔst]. 【名】物價 59
- cottage** [kɔt/ɪdʒ]. 【名】小屋 76
- couch** [kəʊtʃ]. 【云】躺著 65
- cough** [kawf, kɔf]. 【云】咳嗽 13
- council** [kəʊnsl]. 【名】會議 21
- counsel** [kəʊnsl, -sl]. 【名】商議, 勸告; 轉爲)智謀 33
- counsellor** [kəʊnslɪə]. 【名】法律顧問 69
- counter-** [kəʊntə(-)]. 【形】反的, 復的 56 [53]
- counter-offer** [-ɔfə]. 【名】還價
- couple** [kʌpəl]. 【名】一對, 夫婦 86
- course** 【名】程序; 轉爲)課程 26
- court** [kɔ:t]. 【名】法庭; 朝廷 56, 47
- court-beauty** [-bju:ti]. 【名】朝中的美人 67
- courtier** [kɔ:tiə]. 【名】朝臣 52
- courtship** [kɔ:ʃɪp]. 【名】求愛, 求婚 81
- Couship of Miles Standish, The** [dɪə kɔ:ʃɪp əv mi:z stændɪʃ]. 【名】君子好逑 (Longfellow 詩) 81
- cover**. 【名】蓋封 23, 27
- cow** [kəʊ]. 【名】母牛 14
- cowhide** [kəʊhaɪd]. 【名】牛皮 28
- Cowley, Abraham** [əˈbrəhəm kəʊli]. 【名】英國哲理詩人 (1618—1667) [65]
- cowslip** [kəʊslɪp]. 【名】蓮香花
- cowslip's bell**: 蓮香花心 65
- create** [kri:ə't, krɔ:ɪt]. 【云】創造 7 [創造 63]
- creation** [kri:ə'si:ən, krɔ:ɪ-]. 【名】
- creative** [kri:ə'ti:v]. 【形】創造的 59
- credit** [krɛdɪt]. 【名】信用; (轉爲) 財源上的通融力 3
- critic** [krɪ'tɪk]. 【名】批評者 73
- criticism** [krɪ'tɪsɪzəm]. 【名】批評, 評語 64
- criticism of life**: 生活的批評 79
- criticize** [krɪ'tɪaɪz]. 【云】批評 67
- crocodile** [krɒkə'lɪl]. 【名】鱷魚 25
- crocodile's tears**: 偽哭的淚 25
- Cromwell, Oliver** [ɔ'lɪvə krɒm-wəl]. 【名】克倫威爾 (英國將軍兼政治家, 1653—55 年間出任共和政體之領袖, 1599—1658) 63
- Cronus** [krɒn'ə]. 【名】希臘神祇 19
- crop** [krɒp]. 【名】產物, 五穀 67
- cross**. 【形】暴戾. 【云】相左; 越過(路或海等) 31, 55, 49
- crown** [kraʊn]. 【名】皇冕, 王冠 65
- cry**. 【云】哭 39 (過去時制及過去分詞 cried [kraɪd])
- cubic** [kju:ɪk]. 【形】立方的 43
- cuckoo** [kʊkə'u]. 【名】杜鵑 41
- Cupid** [kju:pɪd]. 【名】羅馬神祇 41
- cure** [kjʊə]. 【云】醫愈 88
- curio** [kjʊə'ɪə]. 【名】古玩 18
- curiosity** [kjʊə'ɪɒsɪ'ti]. 【名】珍品, 骨董 74
- curiosity shop**: 骨董店 74
- curl** [kɜ:əl]. 【名】捲髮 67
- cursor** [kɜ:sa:ri]. 【形】粗略的, 疏忽的 77
- customs** [kʌs'təmz]. 【名】海關 56
- Cyclops** [sɪ'kloʊps]. 【名】獨目巨人 20 (複數 Cyclopes [sɪklo'peɪz])
- Czechoslovakia** [tʃɛk'ə-s.ləvə'kiə]. 【名】捷克 66

D, d [dō]

d. 【簡】=penny, pence 29

D/A [dɔ̃'ã/]. 【簡】(= documents against acceptance) 電押交換領貨文件 5;

daffodil [dãf'əʊlɪ]. 【名】淡黃的水仙花 45

daily [dã'i]. 【狀】每日 日日 76

damage [dãm'i]. 【云】損傷 61

dance [dãhns, 美 dãns]. 【名·云】跳舞 87

dangerous [dã'njɔ̃s]. 【形】危險的 69

dark. 【形】奧秘的 65

darkness [dãr'knɪs]. 【名】黑暗 39

Darwin, Charles [chãrɪz dãr'wɪn]. 達爾文 (1809—1882) 74

date. 【云】注明日期 4

David Copperfield [dã'vɪd kɔ̃p'fɔ̃fɪld]. 塊肉餘生迷 (Dickens 小說) 74

dead [dɔ̃d]. 【形】死的 30

dead body: 屍身 30

decagramme [dɔ̃k'ɔ̃grãm]. 【名】公斤百分之一, 公錢, 什克 43 (簡作 Dg.)

decalitre [dɔ̃k'ãlɪ'tã]. 【名】十公升, 公斗, 什升 43 (簡作 dl.)

decametre [dɔ̃k'ãmɪ'tã]. 【名】十米突, 公尺, 什米 43 [表的 11

decent [dɔ̃'sɛnt]. 【形】適當的, 過得

decide [dɔ̃'sɪd]. 【云】解決 15

decigramme [dɔ̃s'ɪgrãm]. 【名】一克十分之一, 公釐, 分克 43 (簡作 dg.)

decilitre [dɔ̃s'ɪlɪ'tã]. 【名】一公升十分之一, 公合, 分升 43 (簡作 dl.)

decimal [dɔ̃s'ɪmɔ̃l]. 【名】十進法; 【形】小數的 44

decimetre [dɔ̃s'ɪmɪ'tã]. 【名】一米突十分之一, 公寸, 分米 43 (簡作 dm.)

decline [dɪklɪ'n]. 【名】傾斜; 衰敗; 【云】譯絕 68, 86

Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire, The [dɪθ dɪklɪ'n ɔ̃n faʊl ov dɪθ rɔ̃mən ɔ̃mp'aɪr]. 羅馬帝國衰亡史 (Gibbon 著) 68

deed [dɪd]. 【名】事, 行爲 43

defeat [dɪfɪ't]. 【云·名】打敗, 擊敗 20, 63 [的 78

defective [dɪfɛk'tɪv]. 【形】不完全

defence [dɪfɛns']. 【名】保護, 守衛 63 [護的 49

defenceless [dɪfɛns'lɪs]. 【形】無保

defend [dɪfɛnd']. 【云】保守, 保護 46

Defoe, Daniel [dãn'yol dɪfɔ̃']. 狄福 (英國新聞學家, 1661—1731) 67

degenerate [dɪjɛn'ɔ̃rãt]. 【云】退化, 墮落 79

degree [dɪgrɪ']. 【名】度数, 度, 級 12

degree of comparison: 比較的等級 12

delay [dɪlã']. 【名·云】遲延 62

delight [dɪlɪ't]. 【云】使~快樂 33

delightful [dɪlɪ'tfʊl]. 【形】悅人的 75 [交貨, 領貨 3

delivery [dɪlɪv'ərɪ, -ɪv'ɪ]. 【名】

Delos [dɔ̃'lɔ̃s]. 【名】希臘地名 39

Delphi [dɔ̃'lfi]. 【名】希臘地名 40

demand [dɪmãh'nɔ̃, 美 -mãnd']. 【名·云】需要 56

- Demeter** [dīmē'tə]. 【名】希臘神祇 22
- democracy** [dīmōk'rōsī]. 【名】民主政治,民主主義 81
- demonstrative** [dīmōn'strōtīv]. 【形】指示的 46
- demonstrative pronoun**: 指示代名詞 16 [國] 51
- Denmark** [dō.'mārk]. 【名】丹麥
- denomination** [dīnōm'īnā'shōn]. 【名】分級的單位 41
- denominator** [dīnōm'īnātō]. 【名】分母 48
- department** [dīpārt'mēnt]. 【名】部,部份 1 (簡作 dept.)
- De Quincey, Thomas** [dōm'əs dō-kwīn'ī]. 第昆西(英國文學批評家兼小說家, 1788—1859) 78
- description** [dīskrīp'shōn]. 【名】描寫事物,描寫法;敘述文 90
- desert** [dīzət'v]. 【名】遺棄 68
- Deserted Village, The** [dho dī-zət' id vil'ij]. 荒村(Goldsmith 著) 8
- despise** [dīspī'z]. 【名】厭棄 65
- despite** [dīspī't]. 【介】雖則~仍 33
- destruction** [dīstrōk'shōn]. 【名】毀壞,滅亡 64
- detest** [dītēt'v]. 【名】痛恨 69
- dethrone** [dīthrō'n]. 【名】廢君 19
- develop** [dīvō'p]. 【名】發達 7
- device** [dīvīs]. 【名】機謀,策略,方法 40 [83]
- devote** [dīvō't]. 【名】致力於,專攻
- dew** [dū]. 【名】露水 76
- dew-pearled** [dū'pērl'd]. 【形】露精成珠 76
- Diana** [dīān'ə]. 【名】羅馬女神 22
- Dickens, Charles** [chārlz dīk-īnz]. 迭更斯(英國小說家, 1812—1870) 74
- dictate** [dīktā't]. 【名】口述而令人筆錄,默寫 63 [典] 68
- dictionary** [dīk'shōnərī]. 【名】字典
- didst** [dīdst]. 【名】do 古體之過去時制與 thou 連用者 65
- die** [dī]. 【名】死 30
- die young**: 夭折 30
- differ** [dīf'ə]. 【名】異於 71
- dignity** [dīg'nītī]. 【名】尊貴,品格,自重 81
- dime** [dīm]. 【名】角 66
- dimple** [dīm'pl]. 【名】窩,頰窩; 【名】壓之成窩 45
- Dione** [dī'ni]. 【名】希臘女神 32
- direct command**: 直接命令句 60
- direct question**: 直接詢問句 60
- direct quotation**: 直接引用句 60
- direct statement**: 直接陳述 60
- direction**. 【名】命令,指導 70
- dirge** [dīrj]. 【名】悲歌,輓歌 83
- Dis** [dis]. 【名】希臘神祇 21
- disaster** [dīzə'stō]. 【名】不幸的事件 83 [滿意] 52
- discontent** [dis'kōntēt'v]. 【名】不滿意
- discount** [dīs'kōwnt]. 【名】折扣 4
- discovery** [dīskūv'ərī, -kūv'rī]. 發現 58 [意] 70
- discretion** [dīskrēsh'ōn]. 【名】主
- disease** [dīzō'z]. 【名】病症 13
- dislike** [dīsli'k]. 【名】不愛 41
- dismiss**. 【名】辭退,遣去,不理 77
- dispel** [dīspēl'v]. 【名】驅散,使消散 39
- dispose** [dīspō'z]. 【名】處置 70
- dispute** [dīspūt'v]. 【名】爭辯 69

- disregard** [dis'ri:gə't]. 【云】不顧及, 不管 32
- dissatisfaction** [dɪs'sætɪ'sfækʃən]. 【名】不滿意 61
- distinctly**. 【狀】卓著地 80
- distress** [dɪ'strɛs]. 【云】使獲憂患; 【名】憂患 46, 64
- distressed, the**: 受難者 46
- ditch** [dɪtʃ]. 【云】開掘水溝 69
- divert** [dɪvɜ't]. 【云】使娛樂 60
- divide**. 【名】隔離; 分野 82
- divine** [dɪ'vaɪn]. 【形】神聖的 69
- division** [dɪ'vɪʒən]. 【名】部份 12
- do away with**: 除去 43
- doctor** [dɒk'tə]. 【名】醫生 13
- document** [dɒk'ʌmənt]. 【名】文件 56
- documents against payment**: 付款交換領貨文件 56 [人 12]
- doer** [doo'ə, doo'ə]. 【名】做事的
- dollar gold**: 美金, 金元 4
- domestic** [də'mɒs'tɪk]. 【形】家中的 22
- domestic animal**: 家畜 39
- dominate** [dɒm'ɪnət]. 【云】支配 68
- Don Juan** [dɒn juː'ən]: 約翰先生 (Byron 著) 73
- donkey** [dɒŋg'ki]. 【名】驢子 30
- Donne, John** [dɒn dɒn]: 英國哲理詩人 (1573—1631) 64
- doomsday** [doo'mzdeɪ]. 【名】末日 (即耶教所謂世界末日, 人在世上的善惡都要在那日子受審判並定賞罰) 83
- doubly** [dubli]. 【狀】雙倍地 75
- doubtful** [dow'tɪfəl]. 【形】可疑的 72
- dove** [dʊv]. 【名】鴿 41
- D/P** [dɒ'pɒ]. 【簡】 (= documents against payment) 付款交換領貨文件 56 [票 56]
- D/P draft**: 付款交換領貨文件的匯票
- Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde** [dɒk'tə jɛ'ki:l ən mɪs'tə hɪl]: 易形奇術, 二重人格 (Stevenson 小說) 74
- draft** [draʃt]. 【名】草稿; 匯票 26, 56
- dragon** [drægən]. 【名】龍 51
- drake** [dra:k]. 【名】雄鴨 30
- drama** [dra'h'mə]. 【名】戲劇 58
- dramatic** [drə'mætɪk]. 【形】戲劇的 59 [家 59]
- dramatist** [drə'mətɪst]. 【名】戲劇家 59
- dramatize** [drə'mətɪz]. 【云】戲劇化 59
- draw**. 【云】取, 引取; 支取 24, 56 (~, drew, drawn)
- draw conclusion**: 論斷, 伸論而取得斷案 24
- draw on us**: 向我們支取 56
- dream**. 【云】做夢 22 (過去時制及過去分詞 dreamed 或 dreamt)
- dreamt** [drem't]. 【云】dream 的過去時制及過去分詞) 夢 22
- Drinkwater, John** [dɪŋ dɪ'wɔ:wətə]: 英國現代詩人 (182—) 79
- drive** [draɪv]. 【云】驅逐 63 (~, drove, driven)
- driven** [draɪv'n]. 【云】(drive 的過去分詞) 驅逐 63
- drop**. 【名】點, 點滴 19
- drove** [drov]. 【云】(drive 的過去時制) 驅逐 63
- drug** [drʊg]. 【名】藥

drum [drŭm]. 【名】鼓 82 [82
drum-tap [drŭm'táp]. 【名】鼓聲
Drum-Taps [drŭm'táps/]: Whit-
 man 詩集 82 [44
dry measure: 乾量(量穀類的容積)
Dryden, John [jŏn drí'dɔn]: 特萊
 頓(英國復興時期大文學家, 1631—
 1700) 64

duck [dŭk]. 【名】鴨, 母鴨 30
due. 【形】適宜的, 相當的 2
duel [dŭ'ɔl]. 【名】決鬪 47
dust [dŭst]. 【名】塵埃 43
dwarf [dʷɔr'f]. 【名】侏儒 67
dysentery [dís'ɔntrí]. 【名】痢疾
 88

E, e [ĕ]

eagle [é'gl]. 【名】鷹 41
earnest [ér'níst]. 【形】真誠的, 誠
 懇的 83 [19
earth [ēr'th]. 【名】大地, 地球; 泥土
ease. 【名】自在, 自如 39
easily [é'zīli]. 【狀】容易地 34
eastern [é'stɔn]. 【形】東方的 21
eater [é'tɔ]. 【名】食者 73
eave [ēv]. 【名】檐 24
E. C. 4 [é'sé'fɔr']. 【簡】(= Eastern
 Central Four) 倫敦城市內郵政
 區域名 28
eclipse [íkli'ps/]. 【云】蒙蔽, 使晦 33
economic [é'kɔnɔm'ík]. 【形】經
 濟的 74
Eden [é'dɔn]. 【名】伊甸園 63
edit [éd'ít]. 【云】編輯 68
edition [ídī'h'ɔn]. 【名】刊版, 版
 本; (初版, 再版的) 版 1

effective [í'fèk'tív]. 【形】有效力
 的 82 [者 74
egoist [ég'ɔíst]. 【名】利己主義
Egoist, The [dhí'ég'ɔíst]: Mere-
 dith 小說 74
eighties, the [dhí'ā'tíz]: (19)80年
 至(19)89年之間 79
elect [í'èk't]. 【云】選舉 62
electricity [í'èk'trís/í'tí]. 【名】電,
 電氣; 電學 27
elevate [é'í'vát]. 【云】提高 33
Eliot, George [j'ɔr'í'ɔt]: 伊略奧
 脫(英國小說家兼詩人, 1820—1889)
 74 [省略的] 19
elliptical [í'íp'tíkəl, -kl]. 【形】
Elizabeth, Queen (Anne Boleyn)
 [kwɔn (án bóɔl'ín) í'líz'əbɔth]:
 英國女王依利薩伯(1558—1603)
 58
Elizabethan Age, the [dhə'í'líz-
 əbɔ'thɔn'ā]. 依利薩伯時代 58
elegance [é'l'ɔkwəns]. 【名】雄辯
 82 [的 81
eloquent [é'l'ɔkwənt]. 【形】有口才
elsewhere [éls'whā'r]. 【狀】別
 處 61
Elsie Venner [é'l'sí'vɔn'ɔ]:
 Holmes 散文集 81
Emerson, Ralph Waldo [rahlf
 wɔl'də'ɔn'ɔsn]: 愛默生(美國作
 家, 1803—1882) 81
eminent [ém'ínənt]. 【形】超羣
 的 61
emotion [ím'ɔ'shɔn]. 【名】情感 67
emperor [ém'pɔrə, -pərə]. 【名】
 皇帝, 君主 32
Emperor Jones, The [dhí'ém'pərə
 jɔnz]: 瓊斯皇帝(O'Neil 戲劇) 82

- emphasis** [ɒn/'fæsɪs]. 【名】注重, 着重的語勢, 強調 42 (複數 *emphases* [-səz])
- emphatic** [ɪm'fætɪk]. 【形】加重語勢的, 強調的, 到人的 38
- emphatic pronoun**: 強調語的代名詞 42
- employ**. 【云】用, 使用 69
- empress** [ɒm/'prɪs]. 【名】皇后 32
- enclose** [ɪn'kləʊz]. 【云】包入, 封入 3
- enclosure** [ɪn'kləʊʒə]. 【名】包圍; (信封內) 附件 3
- end**. 【名】目的 69 [17]
- ending** [ɒn'dɪŋ]. 【名】結尾, 字末
- endure** [ɪndʊr', ɒn-]. 【云】忍受 77
- English Channel, the** [dʰɪŋɡlɪʃ'ʃhænəl]: 英吉利海峽 49
- engulf** [ɪŋɡʊl'f, ɒn-]. 【云】吞入 45 [進 33]
- enhance** [ɪnhɑ:ns, ɒn-]. 【云】促
- enjoyment** [ɪn'jɔɪ'mənt, ɒn-]. 【名】賞樂, 享用 33
- enlighten** [ɪnli:t'n, ɒn-]. 【云】教化, 啓迪 83
- enlightenment** [ɛnli:t'mənt]. 【名】光明; 文化 22
- Enoch Arden** [ɛ'nɒk ɑ:rdn]: Tennyson 詩 74 [70]
- entertain** [ɛn'tə'teɪn]. 【云】接待
- enthusiasm** [ɪnθʊ'zɪəzɪzəm]. 【名】熱心 58
- entity** [ɒn'tɪtɪ]. 【名】整個 55
- environment** [ɪn'vaɪr'ɒnmənt, ɒn-]. 【名】環景 64 [詩 51]
- epic** [ɛp'ɪk]. 【名】敘述英雄事蹟的
- equivalent**. 【名】等價物, 同義語 21
- Eros** [ɛr'ɒs]. 【名】希臘神祇 41
- err** [ɛr]. 【云】錯誤, 做錯 69
- especially** [ɪsp'ɒʃh'əli, ɒs-, -sh'li]. 【狀】特別地 5
- Esq.** 【簡】(= esquire 之簡, 現常等於 Mr., 不過要放在姓名之後, 非若 Mr. 之置於姓名之前) 83
- esquire** [ɪskwɪr', ɒs-]. 【名】老爺, 先生 (英國對地主階級之稱呼) 83
- essay** [ɛsə', ɒs'ə]. 【名】論文 67
- essayist** [ɛs'əɪst]. 【名】論文作家 67
- Essays and Nature** [ɛs'əz ɒn nə'tʃə]: 散文與自然 (Emerson 著) 81
- Essays of Elia, The** [dʰi ɛs'əz ɒv ɛ'liə]: 伊利亞散文 (Lamb 著) 73
- establish** [ɪstəb'lɪʃ, ɒs-]. 【云】開設 2
- establishment** [ɪstəb'lɪʃmənt, ɒs-]. 【名】開設 2 [重 83]
- esteem** [ɪst'ɛm, ɒs-]. 【云】重視, 尊
- eternal** [ɛt'ɛr'nəl]. 【形】永久的 64
- eternal life**: 永生 64
- eternity** [ɪt'ɛr'nɪtɪ]. 【名】永久, 千古 76 [女神 33]
- Eurynome** [jʊrɪn'ɒmə]. 【名】希臘
- Evangeline** [ɪvən'jɒlɪn]. 【名】福音, 喜信 (Longfellow 詩) 81
- Evans, Mary Ann** [mɑ:ri ʌn ɛ'vənz]: George Eliot 之真姓名 74
- Eve** [ɛv]. 【名】夏娃 (上帝所造的第一個女人) 63
- Eve of St. Agnes** [ɛv ɒv snt æg'nɪs]: 聖阿格尼節之前夕 (Keats
- even as**: 正如 65 [詩] 73
- even if**: 雖則 72
- event** [ɪvənt']. 【名】事件 58
- ever**. 【狀】嘗; 一向 7, 69

- exact** [ɪgzækt/, ɔgz-]. 【形】準確地 60
 【狀】恰恰 14
- exactly** [ɪgzækt/ɪ, ɔgz-, -zək/ɪ].
- exceed** [ɪksə'd, ɔks-]. 【云】超過 4
- excellence** [ɔk'sələns]. 【名】優越, 美妙 68
 【高的, 向上的】 81
- excelsior** [ɔksəl'siɔr, ɪk-]. 【形】更
- Excelsior** [ɔksəl'siɔr]. 【名】Long-fellow 詩 81
- exceptionally** [ɪksəp'shənəli, ɔk-, -shənəli]. 【狀】例外地 15
- excitement** [ɪksɪ'tmənt, ɔk-]. 【名】興奮的事情 14
- excursion** [ɪkskɜr'shən, ɔks-]. 【名】旅行 34
 excursion party: 旅行團 34
- expect** [ɪkspɛkt/, ɔks-]. 【云】守待 34
- expel** [ɪkspəl/, ɔks-]. 【云】逐出 46
- experience** [ɪkspɛr'iəns, ɔks-]. 【名】經驗 29
 【了】 67
- expire** [ɪkspɪr/, ɔks-]. 【云】終止, 完
- export** [ɔks'pɔrt]. 【名】輸出, 出口 1
 【2】
 export company: 出口公司或商店
 export department: 出口部 1
 exporter [ɔkspɔr'tɔ]. 【名】輸出商, 出口商 1
- exposition** [ɔks'pəzɪʃən]. 【名】解釋事理, 說明文 90
- extremely** [ɪkstrə'mli, ɔks-]. 【狀】非常地 88
- F, f** [ɛf]
- facilitate** [fo'ɪlɪtət]. 【云】使容易辦 56
- factory** [fækt'ɔrɪ, -trɪ]. 【名】廠 34
- fade** [fæd]. 【云】褪色 84
- Faerie Queen** [fæ'ɔrɪ kwɔn],
Fairy Queen [fæ'ri kwɔn]: 仙后 (書名, Spenser 之名著) 58
- failure** [fæ'ljə, -lɪr]. 【名】失敗, 倒閉 3
- faint** [faɪnt]. 【云】昏暈 30
 faint o'f: 暈倒 30
- fair** [fæ]. 【形】美麗 45
- fairy** [fæ'ri]. 【名】神童; 【形】神童的 18
- faithful** [fæ'thʃʊl]: 忠心 5
- faithfully** [fæ'thʃʊli, -li]. 【狀】忠誠地 3
- faithfulness** [fæ'thʃʊlnɪs]. 【名】始終不渝, 忠心 7
- faithless** [fæ'thɪsɪ]. 【形】不忠心, 不貞節 41
 【41】
- fall in love with:** 與某人發生戀愛
- fall of man, the:** 【名】人的墮落 63
- false** [fawls]. 【形】假的 76
- fame** [fæm]. 【名】名, 名譽 74
- familiar essay:** 小品文 67
- famous** [fæ'mə]. 【形】著名的 39
- farce** [fɑrs]. 【名】無意義的滑稽劇 59
- farthing** [fɑr'dhɪŋ]. 【名】法與 (辨士四分之一) 66
- fashion** [fæʃən]. 【名】時髦, 通行 77
 【56】
- fastener** [fæ'snɔ]. 【名】使結附者
- fat** [fæt]. 【形】肥 26 (較級 **fatter** [fæt'ə], 最級 **fattest** [fæt'ɪst])
- fate** [fæt]. 【名】命運 33
- Fates** [fæts]. 【名】司命運之神 33
- Father Time:** 司時之神 20

- favour.** 【名】(在商業尺牘中)尊函, 惠書 3
- favourite** [fā'vərɪt]. 【名】所喜悅的人或物 77 [地 84
- feebly** [iə'bi:li]. 【狀】軟弱地, 輕輕
- female** [fē'mā:l]. 【名】女性, 陰性, 牝性 11
- feminine** [fēm'inɪn]. 【形】女性的, 陰性的 11
- feminine gender:** 陰性 11
- festival** [fēs'tɪvəl]. 【名】節 34
- feud** [fju:d]. 【名】相爭 76
- feudalism** [fju:'dɒlɪzəm]. 【名】封建制度 46
- fever** [fē'və]. 【名】熱病, 熱 13
- fiction** [fɪk'shən]. 【名】小說 74
- field.** 【名】戰場 75
- Fielding, Henry** [hɒn'rɪ fēldɪŋ]: 菲爾丁(英國小說家, 1707—1754) 68
- fifty-fifty.** 【狀】一半, 各半 61
- fig** [fɪg]. 【名】無花果; 無價值的東西 45
- fight.** 【云】相打 36 (~, fought, fought)
- fight it out:** 解決; 奮鬥到底 47
- fighter** [fɪ'tɔ]. 【名】戰士 7
- figures.** 【名】譬喻 90
- figures of speech:** 詞藻 90
- fill the order:** 照定單配貨 56
- financial** [fɪnān'shəl]. 【形】財政上的 28
- financial standing:** 信用 28
- fine time:** 有趣的經驗(反語) 14
- finite** [fɪ'nɪt]. 【形】有限定的 17
- finite verb:** 限定云謂詞 17
- firm** [fɪrəm]. 【名】商號; 合資商號 28
- first rate writer:** 第一流作家 68
- fit** [fɪt]. 【云】裝置, 設備; 【形】適合 88
- fix** [fiks]. 【云】使固定 58
- fled** [fled]. 【云】(flee 的過去時制及過去分詞) 逃 39 [fled)
- flee** [fli:]. 【云】逃 39 (~, fled
- Fletcher, John** [jɒn flɛtʃ'ə]: 英國戲劇作家(1576—1625) 59
- fling** [flɪŋg]. 【云】投, 擲 47 (~, flung, flung)
- float** [fləʊt]. 【云】流動 82
- flock** [flɒk]. 【名】(家畜的)羣 39
- florin** [flɔr'in]. 【名】盾; 荷蘭幣制單位) 66
- flourish** [flʊr'ɪʃ]. 【云】繁盛 51
- flow** [fləʊ]. 【云】流出 75
- flung** [flʌŋg]. 【云】(fling 的過去時制及過去分詞) 投, 擲 47
- f.o.b.** [ɔf'ɔ'bɔ:]. 【簡】(=free on board) 到船(或火車)上交貨不另開費用 28
- folk** [fɒk]. 【名】人, 常人 68
- follower** [fɔl'əʊ]. 【名】跟從者 64
- fool.** 【名】愚人; 蠢漢 70 [83
- foolishly** [fʊə'lɪʃli]. 【狀】愚蠢地
- footstep** [fʊt'stɒp]. 【名】足步 75
- for a change:** 以變換環境 14
- For A' That and A' That** [fɔr aw dhæt ən aw dhæt]: 雖則如此這般(Burns 詩) 63
- for ever:** 永遠 76
- for years:** 數年 2
- forbade** [fɔrbə'd, -bəd]. 【云】(forbid 的過去時制) 禁止 63
- forbid** [fɔr'bɪd]. 【云】禁止 63 (~, forbade, forbidden)
- forbidden** [fɔbɪ'dn]. 【云】(forbid 的過去分詞) 禁止 63

- forbidden fruit, the** [dʰə fəbɪd'n frʊt]: (伊甸園中之禁果) 63 [74]
- forceful** [fɔ:rs'fʊl]. 【形】有力的
- foregoing** [fɔ:rgə'ɪŋ]. 【形】在前邊的 32 [82]
- foremost** [fɔ:rmɔ:st]. 【形】最前的
- forerunner** [fɔ:rʌn'ə]. 【名】前驅者 68 [75]
- forfeit** [fɔ:rfɛɪt]. 【云】被罰而失去
- forgave** [fɔ:gə'v]. 【云】(forgive 的過去時制) 饒恕 69
- forgive** [fɔ:gɪv]. 【云】饒恕 69 (~, forgave, forgiven)
- forgiven** [fɔ:ɪv'n]. 【云】(forgive 的過去分詞) 饒恕 69
- formal** [fɔ:rməl]. 【形】正式的, 重形式的 67
- formal essay:** 論文 67
- formation** [fɔ:rmə'shən]. 【名】組成 24
- forth** [fɔ:θ]. 【狀】前進 69
- fortunate** [fɜ:'tʌnɪt]. 【形】幸運的 63
- fortunately** [fɜ:'tʌnɪtli]. 【狀】幸運地 14
- fortune.** 【名】命運 36
- fought** [fɔ:wt]. 【云】(fight 的過去時制及過去分詞) 相打 35
- foundation** [fəʊndə'shən]. 【名】建設 40
- Four Million, The** [dʰə fɔ: mɪljən]: 四萬萬 (O. Henry 小說) 82
- fourth uncle:** 四叔, 四伯, 或四姑丈, 四姨丈, 四舅父等 26
- fowl** [fəʊl]. 【名】禽類 32
- fraction** [fræk'shən]. 【名】分數 48
- framework** [frɑ:mwɜ:k]. 【名】骨幹 52
- franc** [fræŋk]. 【名】法郎 66
- Franklin, Benjamin** [bɒn'jæmɪn fræŋk'lɪn]: 佛蘭克林 (美國作家, 1706—1790) 81
- free** [fri:]. 【云】釋放, 解放 76, 82
- free on board:** 到船上 (或火車上) 交貨不另開費用 28
- free play:** 自由表現 67 [82]
- free verse:** 新詩 (即不講音節吐韻者)
- freight** [fraɪt]. 【名】運費 56
- frequent** [frɛ'kwɛnt]. 【形】常常的 47 [58]
- freshness** [frɛʃ'nɪs]. 【名】新鮮
- friendly** [frɛnd'li]. 【形】和順的, 親熱的, 友誼的 1
- friendly letter:** 友誼的信, 朋友間的通信 1
- Frigga** [frɪg'ə]. 【名】條頓民族的女神, Odin 的妻 9
- fringe** [frɪŋdʒ]. 【名】緣 81
- Fritzpatrik, Sir Percy** [sɪr pɜ:rsɪ frɪtspɑ:trɪk]: 南非聯邦作家 80
- frog** [frɒg]. 【名】蛙 25
- Frost, Robert** [rɒb'ət frɒst]: 美國現代詩人 82
- frosty** [frɒs'ti]. 【形】帶霜的 75
- fruitfulness** [frʊt'fʊlnɪs]. 【名】多果實的情形 77
- fulfil** [fʊl'fɪl]. 【云】履行, 實踐 40
- full stop** [fʊl stɒp]: 句點 60
- funeral** [fʊ'nərəl, fʊ'nrl, fʊ'nrl]. 【名】葬禮 30
- fur** [fɜ:]. 【名】皮貨; 皮衣 34
- further** [fɜ:dhə]. 【狀】更進一層; 【形】較遠 4, 55

fuse [fúz]. 【云】溶合 51 [4, 27]
 future [fú'chə]. 【名】將來 前程
 futurity [fütür'ití]. 【名】將來 78

G, g [jō]

gable [gá'bɪ]. 【名】屋頂三角牆 81
 gallantry [gál'əntri]. 【名】豪俠,
 對於婦女之有禮貌 47
 gallon [gál'ən]. 【名】加倫 44
 Galsworthy, John [jən gaw'ɪz-
 wérðhi]. 高爾斯華綏 (英國戲劇
 家, 1867—1933) 79

game 【名】遊戲 7
 gander [gán'də]. 【名】雄鵞 30
 garden [gár'dn]. 【名】花園 63

Garden of Eden, the [ðə gár'dn
 əv 'ɛdn]. 伊甸園 63

garrison [gá'risn]. 【名】衛戍兵,
 守備隊 49

gas [gás]. 【名】氣 40
 gate [gát]. 【名】門, 城門, 隘門 28

gauntlet [gaw'nɪltí]. 【名】武士的
 手套 47

gay [gá]. 【形】歡樂的 50 (較級
 gayer [gá'ə], 最級 gayest [gá'-
 íst])

Ge [jō]. 【名】希臘女神 19

gender [jən'də]. 【名】文字的性別
 general. 【名】將軍 46 [11]

genius [jə'nyəs]. 【名】天才 73
 (複數加 -es [-ɪz])

german [jən'shɪən]. 【名】龍膽屬
 (一種藍花草) 81

gentleness [jən'tɪnɪs]. 【名】溫良,
 柔和 33 [的 23]

genuine [jən'ʌɪn]. 【形】真的, 非假

get angry: 動怒 5
 get tired of it: 對於它發生厭倦 14
 Gettysburg Speech [gət'ɪzbərg
 spəʊtʃ]. 林肯演說詞 82

giant [jɪ'ənt]. 【名】巨人 19
 Gibbon, Edward [ɪ'wəd gɪb'ən]:
 英國散文作家 (1737—1794) 68

giddiness [gɪd'ɪnɪs]. 【名】眩暈 88
 giddy [gɪdɪ]. 【形】眩暈 88

gift [gɪft]. 【名】禮物, 贈物 36
 Gigantes [jɪ'gɪn'tɪs]. 【名】希臘神
 祇 19

gill [jɪl]. 【名】及耳 (量器) 44
 give place to: 讓位給 64

gladness [gləd'nɪs]. 【名】快樂 75
 glory [glɔ'ri]. 【名】榮耀 66

go to court: 起訴, 爭訟 47
 goal [gəʊl]. 【名】目的 83

goat [gəʊt]. 【名】山羊 8
 God [vɔd]. 【名】上帝 63

god [gɔd]. 【名】神 7
 goddess [gɔd'ɪs]. 【名】女神 9

gold dollar: 美金, 金元 4 [86]
 Goldsmith [gɔl'dsmɪθ]. 【名】姓

Goldsmith, Oliver [ɔl'ɪvə gɔl'd-
 smɪθ]: 高爾斯密士 (英國詩人兼
 戲劇家, 1728—1774) 68, 79

Gordon, Adam [æd'əm gɔr'dn]: 澳
 大利亞詩人 89

gossip [gɔs'ɪp]. 【名】閒談 68
 govern [gʊv'ən]. 【云】管理 69

government [gʊv'ənmənt]. 【名】
 政府 43

grace [grās]. 【名】優雅 33
 Graces [grə'ɪz]. 【名】希臘女神 33

grain [græn]. 【名】英畝 41 (簡作
 gr.) [文法學家 71]

grammarian [grəmər'ɪən]. 【名】

grasp [grahsp]. 【云】握,執 47
 grass [grahs]. 【名】草 82
 grateful [grā'tfōol, -d]. 【形】感激
 grave [grāv]. 【名】墳 30 [5
 Great Divide, The [dīhə grāt dī-
 vī'd]: 分水嶺 (Moody 戲劇) 82
 greatness [grā'tnīs]. 【名】偉大 59
 Grecian [grē'shən]. 【形】希臘的
 Greece [grēs]. 【名】希臘 6 [73
 Greek [grēk]. 【名】希臘人 6
 Greeley, Horace [hōr'əs grē'lī]:
 美國新聞記者 (1811—1872) 83
 Gregory, Lady [hā'dī grōg'ə:lī]:
 愛爾蘭戲劇作家 80
 grief [grēf]. 【名】憂煩 76
 grown [grōn]. 【形】已長成的 33
 guide. 【云】嚮導; 指導書; 指南 52,
 82
 guilder [gūl'də]. 【名】盾 (荷蘭及荷
 屬東印度的幣制單位) 66
 gulch [gūch]. 【名】谷, 壑 82
 Gulliver, Captain Lemuel [kāp-
 tīn lōm'vōl gū'līvə]: 格列佛 (游
 記中之主人翁) 67
 Gulliver's Travels [gū'līvəz
 trāv'lz]: 格列佛游記 (Swift 著)
 67
 gymnastics [jīm'nās'tīks]. 【名】拳
 術, 體操 7

H, h [āch]

haberdashery [hāb'ədāshə rī].
 【名】雜貨 56
 habit [hāb'it]. 【名】習慣 78
 habitual [həb'itʃ'vōol]. 【形】習慣
 的, 常有的 78

Hales [hā'lez]. 【名】地獄 21
 Hallowe'en [hāl'vō'n]. 【名】萬聖
 節之前夕 (十一月二日) (Burns 著
 敘事詩) 68
 Hamlet [hām'līt]. 【名】哈姆雷特
 (莎翁悲劇名); 丹麥王子, 即該劇之
 主角 59
 handle. 【云】處理 29
 handsome [hān'səm]. 【形】美的
 31, 40 (較級 handsomer [-mə].
 最級 handsomest [-mīst])
 handy [hān'dī]. 【形】利便的 82
 Handy Guide for Beggars, A [hān'dī
 gūl fə bēg'əz]: 乞丐指南
 (Lindsay 詩) 82 [演說 77
 harangue [hərāng']. 【名】熱烈的
 Hardy, Thomas [tōm'əs hār'dī]:
 哈提 (英國現代小說家兼詩人, 1840
 —1928) 79
 harmonious [hārmō'ayəs]. 【形】
 音韻調和的 75 [78
 harmony [hār'mōnī]. 【名】調和
 Harte, Bret [brēt hārt]: 勃蘭脫·哈
 脫 (美國詩人, 1856—1902) 82
 has had: 已得到 183
 hath [hāth]. 【云】has 之古體 65
 hatred [hā'trīd]. 【名】怨恨 67
 have a great time: 快樂, 樂哉 7
 have peace of mind: 安心 69
 have something to do with: 與~
 有關係 20
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel [nəthā'n-
 yəl haw'thōrn]: 霍桑 (美國小說
 家, 1804—1864) 81
 hay [hā]. 【名】乾草 5
 Hazlitt, William [wīl'yəm hāz-
 līt]: 哈士律脫 (英國文學批評家,
 1778—1830) 73

- head**. 【名】主任 2
- head office**: 總店 29 「頭 45
- health** [hēlth]. 【名】康健; 健康之祝
- healthy** [hōs/thū]. 【形】強壯的, 健康的 7 「壯 22
- hearth** [hārth]. 【名】壁爐, 爐
- heartily** [hār'tīlī]. 【狀】盡心地 69
- heaven** [hōv'n]. 【名】天 9
- hectare** [hōk'tār]. 【名】一百公畝, 公頃, 佰安 43 (簡作 ha.)
- hectogramme** [hōk'togrām]. 【名】公斤十分之一, 公兩, 佰克 43 (簡作 hg.)
- hectolitre** [hōk'tolō'tō]. 【名】一百公升, 公石, 佰升 43 (簡作 hl.)
- hectometre** [hōk'tomō'tō]. 【名】一百米突尺, 公引, 佰米 43 (簡作 hm.)
- hectostere** [hōk'tōstēr]. 【名】一百立方米突, 佰立方米 43 (簡作 hs.)
- height** [hit]. 【名】高, 最高點 59
- held** [hōld]. 【云】(hold) 的過去時制及過去分詞 執, 持; 舉行, 開(會) 21
- Helios** [hō/liōs]. 【名】希臘神祇 39
- hell** [hēl]. 【名】地獄 20
- heller** [hēl'ō]. 【名】捷克克羅耐百分之一 66
- he met** [hōl'mēt]. 【名】頭盔 47
- Henry Esmond** [hōn'rī ōs'mōnd]: Thackeray 歷史小說 74
- Henry IV** [hōn'rī dīō fōrth]: 亨利四世(英國國王, 1399—1413 在位, 生卒年代 1369—1413); 莎翁歷史劇名 59
- Henry, O.** [ō hōn'rī]: 奧·亨利(美國現代小說家, 1867—1919) 82
- Herhaestus** [hīfō'stōs] 【名】希臘神祇 22 「的妻 9
- Hera** [hē'rē]. 【名】希臘女神, Zeus
- herd** [hērd]. 【名】羣 67
- hereby** [hēr'bī] 【狀】在這裏 61
- Hermes** [hēr'mēs]. 【名】希臘神祇 22
- hero** [hēr'ō]. 【名】英雄, 劇中男主角, 小說中的主人翁 7, 31
- heroic** [hīrō'īk]. 【形】英雄的 67
- heroine** [hēr'ōīn]. 【名】女英雄; 劇中的女主角, 小說中的女主人翁 31
- hers** [hēr'z]. 【代】伊的 23
- Herrick, Robert** [rōb'ət hēr'īk]: 英國抒情詩人(1591—1634) 64
- Hestia** [hēs'hīə]. 【名】羅馬女神 22
- hide**. 【名】獸皮, (此指) 牛皮 28
- highlander** [hī'lōndə]. 【名】高原的人 49
- hill** [hīl]. 【名】小山 6
- hillside** [hīl'sīd]. 【名】山邊 76
- hint** [hīnt]. 【名·云】暗示 63
- historic** [hīstōr'īk]. 【形】有歷史上的價值 34 「的 59
- historical** [hīstōr'īkl]. 【形】歷史
- historical play**: 歷史劇 59
- Hiwatha** [hīwah'thə]. 【名】Long-fellow 詩 81
- hold** [hōld]. 【云】執, 持; 舉行, 開(會); 打賭 21, 69, 21 (～, held, held)
- hold a hundred pounds**: 以一百鎊打賭 69
- hold out one's hand**: 伸手 47
- Holmes, Oliver Wendell** [ōl'ivə wōn'dəl hōmz]: 霍姆斯(美國詩人兼幽默散文作家, 1809—1894) 81

- Homer** [hō'mə]. 【名】荷馬(古希臘詩人) 18 [港 28]
- Hongkong** [hōng'kōng']. 【名】香港
- Hongkong and Shanghai Banking Corporation**: 匯豐銀行 28
- Hongkong foot**: 足趾間癢癢症, “香港腳” 85
- honour** [ōn'ə]. 【名】榮耀; 名譽; 尊敬; 【云】尊敬, 表示尊敬 2, 9, 46, 47
- honourable** [ōn'ərəbl]. 【形】可尊敬的; 有榮耀的 46
- Hoüd, Robin** [rōl'ín hōüd]: 羅賓漢(英國古代的俠盜) 62
- horn** [hōrn]. 【名】角 8
- horn button**: 角製鈕子 61
- horse** [hōrs]. 【名】馬 5
- horse race**: 跑馬 63
- horseman** [hō'smən]. 【名】騎馬的人 46 (複數 -men [-mən])
- hospital** [hō'spítl]. 【名】醫院 88
- hostess** [hō'stís]. 【名】女主人 31
- House of Mirth, The** [dhə həʊs əv mɪrθ]: 歡娛之家 (Wharton 小說) 82
- House of the Seven Gables, The** [dhə həʊs əv dhə sɛv'n gæ'blz]: Hawthorne 小說 81
- house wife**: 女家主, 主婦 31
- How We Brought the Good News from Ghent to Aix** [həʊ wə brəʊt dhə gōʊd nɪz frəm ɡɛnt təʊ əks]: 報喜訊 (Browning 詩) 74
- howl** [həʊ]. 【云】叫喊 50
- Hrethgar, King** [kɪŋg hrøθ'gær]. 【名】丹麥某處古代的王 51
- human** [hū'mæn]. 【形】有人性 67
- human being**: 人(不分男女) 67
- humanity** [hū'mæn'ítī]. 【名】人類 人性 73
- humble** [hūm'bəl]. 【形】低微的 46
- humorous** [hū'mərəs, hū'mrə]. 【形】幽貴的 52
- humour** [hū'mə]. 【名】幽默 59
- Hundred Years' War, the** 英法之百年戰爭 (1338—1455) 51
- Hunt, Leigh** [lɛ hʌnt]: 亨脫(英國文學批評家, 1784—1859) 78
- Hunters of the Silence, The** [dhə hʌn'təz əv dhə sɪ'ləns]: 追求靜默之人 (George Roberts 小說集) 80
- huri** [hūrī]. 【云】擲 20
- hurt** [hɜrt]. 【云】傷害 37 (過去及過去分詞皆同)
- Huxley, Thomas Henry** [təm'əs hən'rɪ hʌks'li]: 赫胥黎(英國生物學家, 1825—1895) 74

I i [i]

- Ibsen, Henrik** [hɛn'rɪk ɪb'sn]: 易卜生(挪威戲劇家, 1828—1906) 79
- idea** [ɪdɪ'ə]. 【名】思想; 意象; 概念 27
- ideal** [ɪdɪ'əl, ɪdɪ'əl, ɪdɪ'ɪ]. 【形】完美的; 理想的; 模範的
- idealist** [ɪdɪ'ɔɪlɪst]. 【名】理想家 73
- identify** [ɪdɪ'n'tɪfɪ]. 【云】視為同一 8
- idyll** [ɪ'dɪl]. 【名】描寫鄉村生活的短詩或短歌 74
- Idyll of Red Gulch, An** [ən ɪ'ɪ əv rɛd ɡʌlʃ]: 詩紅谷 (L. Arto 詩) 82

- Idylls of the King. The** [ɪdɪl 'ɪdɪlz əv ðə kɪŋ]: 王者之歌 (Tennyson 詩) 74 [39]
- ignorance** [ɪg'nɔərəns]. 【名】愚義 74
- Iliad** [ɪ'lɪəd]. 【名】賦詠征伐 Troy 之詩 相傳爲 Homer 氏所作 58
- illustrate** [ɪ'ləstrət]. 【云】舉例說明, 例證 23
- imagination** [ɪmæj'ɪnə'shən]. 【名】想像力 7
- imaginative** [ɪmæj'ɪnətɪv]. 【形】幻想的, 想像的, 富於想像力的 7
- imaginatively** [ɪmæj'ɪnətɪvli]. 【狀】富於或善於運用想像力的 7
- imitate** [ɪm'ɪtət]. 【云】模仿 52
- imitation** [ɪm'ɪtə'shən]. 【名】模仿 64 [18]
- imitator** [ɪm'ɪtətə]. 【名】模仿者
- immortal** [ɪmɔ'tɔ:l]. 【形】不死的, 不朽的 68
- imperative** [ɪm'pɛrətɪv]. 【形】命令的 12 [法 12]
- imperative mood**: 命令語氣, 命令
- imperialism** [ɪmpɛrɪ'ɔ:lɪzəm]. 【名】帝國主義 79
- impetus** [ɪm'pɪtəs]. 【名】動力 38
- import** [ɪm'pɔ:t]. 【名】輸入, 進口 2
- import and export company**: 進出口公司 3
- importer** [ɪmpɔr'tə]. 【名】輸入商, 進口商 1 [象 78]
- impression** [ɪm'preʃən]. 【名】印
- imprison** [ɪm'prɪzən]. 【云】下獄, 拘禁 19 [適宜的 77]
- improperly** [ɪm'prɔpə'li]. 【狀】不
- improved** [ɪm'prɔv'd]. 【云】改良 28
- improved**. 【形】被改良過的, 改良的 25
- improvement** [ɪm'prɔv'mənt]. 【名】改良的地方 42
- impulse** [ɪm'pʊls]. 【名】衝動 76
- in defence of**: 爲~辯護 63
- in honour of**: 以表示尊敬某人 9
- In Memoriam** [ɪn mɪmɔrɪ'əm]: 悼亡友 (Tennyson 詩) 74
- in regard to**: 關於 61
- in return for**: 以交換 46
- in search of**: 尋求, 追求 64
- in the future** 將來 4
- in turn**: 依着秩序 49
- in view of this**: 有此種情境中 29
- inability** [ɪn'əbɪlɪ'tɪ]. 【名】不能 够 86
- include** [ɪn'klʊd]. 【云】包括 8
- incomprehensibleness** [ɪnkəm'prɪhən'sɪbɪləns]. 【名】不能了解處, 不可思議處 76
- inconvenience** [ɪn'kɔnvə'nɪsəs]. 【名】不方便的地方 14
- inconvenient** [ɪn'kɔnvə'nɪənt]. 【形】不方便 14 [蒙恩 28]
- indebt** [ɪndɛt]. 【云】負債 (轉爲)
- indebted to X for Y**: 負 Y 的債於 X; 蒙 X 的恩惠以 Y 見賜 28
- indecent** [ɪn'dɛsnt]. 【形】無禮的, 淫褻的 64
- independence** [ɪn'dɪpən'dəns]. 【名】獨立 81
- indicate** [ɪn'dɪkət]. 【云】指明 12
- indicative** [ɪndɪkətɪv]. 【形】指明的 12 [法 12]
- indicative mood**: 直述語氣, 直述
- indictment** [ɪndɪ'tʃmənt]. 【名】公訴, 譴責 82
- indigestion** [ɪn'dɪdʒəs'tʃən, 美 -dʒ-]. 【名】不消化 13

- indirect command:** 間接命令句 60
- indirect question:** 間接詢問句 60
- indirect quotation:** 間接引用句 55
- indirect statement:** 間接陳述 60
- individualism** [ɪn'dɪvɪdʒ'ʊəlɪzəm].
【名】個人主義 81 [32]
- infant** [ɪn'fɑnt]. 【名】嬰孩, 嬰兒
- infinitive** [ɪnfɪn'ɪtɪv]. 【名】無限定的; 【名】無限式或謂詞 17
- infinitive clause:** 無限式子句 84
- infinitive mood:** 無限制式 71
- inflect** [ɪnflɛkt/]. 【云】變化字形 12
- inflection** [ɪnflɛk'shən]. 【名】字形的變化 11
- inform** [ɪnfɔr'm]. 【云】通知 23
- informal** [ɪnfɔr'məl]. 【形】不拘禮節的 67
- informal essay:** 小品文 67
- inhale** [ɪnhā'l]. 【云】吸入 40
- injure** [ɪn'jʊ]. 【云】傷害 42
- injury** [ɪn'jʊəri]. 【名】損害, 損傷 42
- inn** [ɪn]. 【名】小旅店 5
- inner** [ɪn'ə]. 【形】(in 的較級) 較內的 50
- innermost** [ɪn'əmɔst]. 【形】(in 的最級) 最內的 50
- inn-keeper** [ɪn'ki:pə]. 【名】小旅店的主人 52
- inquiry** [ɪnkwɪr'i]. 【名】詢問 29
- insect** [ɪn'sɛkt]. 【名】昆蟲類 52
- instant** [ɪn'stənt]. 【名】立刻; 本月 3 (簡作 inst.)
- institute** [ɪn'stɪtʊt]. 【云】設置, 制定 36
- institution** [ɪn'stɪtʊ'shən]. 【名】制度 40
- instruction** [ɪnstrʊk'shən]. 【名】教訓, 命令, 指示 59
- insurance** [ɪnʃʊə'rəns]. 【名】保險(費) 56
- intellectual** [ɪn'telɪk'tʃʊəl]. 【形】智力的 36
- interlude** [ɪn'tɔləd]. 【名】插戲 59
- interpretation** [ɪntɛr'prɪtə'shən]. 【名】解釋, 說明 79
- interpreter** [ɪntɛr'prɪtə]. 【名】翻譯者, 說明者 65
- interrogative mood:** 詢問式 71
- invade** [ɪnvā'd]. 【云】侵略 46
- invasion** [ɪnvā'zən]. 【名】侵略 46
- invent** [ɪnvɛnt/]. 【云】發明 38
- investigate** [ɪnvɛs'tɪgət]. 【云】調查 2 「邀請 1」
- invitation** [ɪn'vɪtə'shən]. 【名】
- inviter** [ɪnvɪ'tə]. 【名】請者 87
- invoice** [ɪn'voɪs]. 【名】貨單, 發票 56
- irksome** [ɛr'ksəm]. 【形】討厭的 70
- irregular** [ɪrɛg'ʊlə]. 【形】不規定的 50
- irregularity** [ɪrɛg'ʊlər'ɪtɪ]. 【名】不依規矩處 78
- irrevocable** [ɪrɔv'əkəbl]. 【形】不可收回的 29
- Irving, Washington** [wɔʃh'ɪŋgtən ɪr'vɪŋ]: 歐文(美國作家, 1783—1859) 81
- is meant:** 意即, 意指 11
- is spoken of as:** 說是 20
- isle** [ɪl]. 【名】小島 65
- issue** [ɪʃ'ʊ]. 【云】發出; 【名】突出點, 樹枝 47, 77
- item** [ɪ'təm]. 【名】條目 56
- it's no joke:** 不是玩 88
- itself** [ɪtsɛlf/]. 【代】它自己 42

Ivanhoe [i'vənhō]: 撒克遜劫後英雄
略 (Scott 小說) 73

J, j [jā]

Jack of the Bushveld [jāk əv dho
lōōsh/vōld]: Sir Percy Fritz-
patrik 小說 80

James I, King [kɪŋ dʒæmz]: 詹姆士
一世 (英國國王, Mary Stuart 之
子, 1603—25 年在位) 58

Jeffrey [dʒi'fri]. 【名】人名 52

jest [dʒɛst]. 【名】嘲笑, 戲謔 82

jester [dʒɛs'tɔ]. 【名】嘲笑者, 戲謔
者 82

Johnson, Mary J. [mār'i jā dʒɔn/
sn]: 女子名 86

Johnson, Samuel [sām'uəl dʒɔn'sn]:
約翰生 (十八世紀英國文壇巨子,
1709—1784) 68

jointly [dʒɔɪntli]. 【狀】聯合地 67

joke [dʒɔk]. 【名】笑話 88

Jones, Mary Anne [mār'i ān dʒɔnz]:
女子名 86

Jones, Robert [rɒb'ət dʒɔnz]: 人名
86

Jonson, Ben [bɒn dʒɔn'sn]: 英國戲
劇作家 (1573—1637) 59

journalism [dʒɛr'nəlɪzəm]. 【名】新
聞事業 67

journalist [dʒɛr'nəlɪst]. 【名】新聞
學家, 編輯, 記者 67

journey [dʒɛr'nɪ]. 【名】路程 52

Jove [dʒɔv]. 【名】羅馬神祇 21

Jude the Obscure [dʒud dhi əb-
skɪr]: 卑微之仇德 (哈提小說名)
79

judge. 【名】評判員 52

judgement [dʒʌdʒ'mənt]. 【名】評判,
判決, 判斷力 89

Julia [dʒʊ'lyə]. 【名】女子名 65

Julius Caesar [dʒʊ'lyʊs sɛ'zɔ]: 該
撒大將 (莎翁歷史劇名) 59

Juno [dʒʊ'nə]. 【名】羅馬女神 21

Jupiter [dʒʊ'pɪtɔ]. 【名】羅馬神祇
21

justice [dʒʊs'tɪs]. 【名】公道 79

Justice [dʒʊs'tɪs]. 【名】高爾斯華綏
戲劇名, 中文有郭沫若譯本“法網”
79

K, k [kā]

Keats, John [dʒɔn kēts]: 濟慈 (英
抒情詩人, 1796—1821) 73

Kedah [kə'də]. 【名】船名 57

Keep fit: 使身體強壯 88

Kendal, Henry [hɛn'rɪ kɛn'dl]: 澳
大利亞詩人 80

kidnap [kɪ'dnæp]. 【名】綁票 74

Kidnapped, The [dhi kɪ'dnæpt]:
被綁者 (Stevenson 小說) 74

kilolitre [kɪ'lɔlɪ'tɔ]. 【名】一千
公升, 公秉, 仟升 43 (簡作 kl.)

kilometre [kɪ'lɔmɛ'tɔ]. 【名】一千
米突, 公里, 仟米 45 (簡作 km.)

King James' Version (of The
Bible): 欽定聖經本 (1611 年出版)
58

King Lear [kɪŋ lɛr]: 李爾王 (莎翁
悲劇名), 該劇之主角 59

King, William [wɪl'jəm kɪŋ]: 人
名 86

kip [kɪp]. 【名】幼獸之皮 79

- Kipling, Rudyard** [rüd'yəd kīp/-līŋ]: 吉卜林(英國現代詩人, 1865—1935) 79
- Kips** [kīps]: 威爾斯小說名 79
- knight** [nīt]. 【名】武士; 【云】使成武士 46
- knighthood** [nī't hood]. 【名】武士的資格 46
- kopec** [k'opək]. 【名】俄國小銅幣 66
- krona** [krō'nə]. 【名】克羅拿(瑞典幣制單位) 66
- krona** [krō'nə]. 【名】克羅耐(捷克, 丹麥, 挪威幣制單位) 66
- L, I**
- £** (=libra [lī'brə] 之略): 英國金鎊之符號 29
- La Belle Dame sans Merci** [lah bəl dahm sahn mēr'sī]: 忍心的美人 (Keats 詩) 73
- lading** [lā'dīŋ]. 【名】裝載貨物 57
- Lady of The Lake, the** [dhə la'dī əv dhə lək]: 湖上美人 (Scott 著) 73
- lake** [lāk]. 【名】湖 73
- Lake Isle of Innisfree** [lak il əv ī'nīsfrē]: Yeats 詩集 80
- Lamb, Charles** [charlz lām]: 萊姆 (英國文學批評家兼小說家, 1775—1834) 73
- lame** [lām]. 【形】跛的 41
- land** [lānd]. 【名】土地 8
- Land of Heart's Desire, The** [dhə lānd əv hārs dīzīr]: 神往之國 (Yeats 戲劇) 80
- Langland, William** [wīl'yəm lāŋ'lənd]: 人名, 英國古代詩家 (1332—1400) 52
- larch** [lārch]. 【名】落葉松 45
- lark** [lārk]. 【名】百靈 76
- last**. 【云】存在 49
- last night** [lās nīt]: 昨夜 15
- last night, the**: 末一夜 15
- Last of the Mohicans, The** [dhə lāst əv dhə mōhīk'ənz]: 摩喜坎人之末代 (Cooper 詩) 81
- Latin**. 【名】拉丁文 49
- law** [law]. 【名】法律 65
- laxative** [lāk'sətív]. 【名】瀉藥 13
- lay**. 【名】(=ballad) 民歌 73
- Lay of the Last Minstrel, The** [dhə la əv dhə lāst mīn'strəl]: 末一樂師的民歌 (Scott 著) 73
- Le Morte d'Arthur** (法文) [lə mōrti dā'r'thə]=The Death of Arthur (Malory 著) 58
- lead ~ life**: 過某種的生活 6
- leadership** [lē'dəshīp]. 【名】領袖的資格 51
- learned** [lēr'nīd]. 【形】有學問的 49
- learning** [lēr'nīŋ]. 【名】學問 69
- Leaves of Grass** [lēvz əv grās]: 草葉 (Whitman 詩集) 82
- Lee, John** [jōn lē]: 人名 86
- leer** [lēr]. 【名】斜視, 側目而視 25
- legend** [lēj'ənd]. 【名】傳說 53
- lengthen** [lěŋg'thən]. 【云】拉長 70
- Leto** [lēt'ō]. 【名】希臘女神 33
- letter** 【名】字母 16
- letter-head** [lēt'ohēd]. 【名】書信箋頭所印之文字 1

- letter of credit**: 許可通融證; 許可抵押提款證 5
- letters**. 【名】文學 52
- liberal** [lɪb/ərəl, li'b/ərəl]. 【形】開放的, 寬大自由的 67 「放 73
- liberation** [lɪb/ərə'neɪʃən]. 【名】解放
- license** [lɪ'səns]. 【名】許可狀; 【名】登記, 檢查 64, 67
- Licensing Act, the** [dɪ'hoʊlɪ'sənsɪŋ ɔkt]: 審查法令 67
- licentiousness** [lɪ'seɪn/əs/ness]. 【名】放肆, 放蕩, 淫佚 64
- lie**. 【名】臥着 65 (~, lay, lain)
- life**. 【名】生活; 輝; 今生 6, 68, 76
- Life of Samuel Johnson, The** [dɪ'hoʊlɪf əv sɑ:m/ʊəl dʒən'sn]: 約翰生行述 (Boswell 著) 68
- lifeless** [lɪf/les]. 【形】無生命的 11
- lifelike** [lɪf/laɪk]. 【形】如生的 7
- lighter**. 【形】(light 的較較) 較輕的 64
- Lilliput** [lɪlɪ'pʊt]. 【名】小人國 67
- limb** [lɪm]. 【名】手或足; (複數 -s) 四肢 19
- limit** [lɪmɪt]. 【名】限制 28
- limited** [lɪmɪtɪd]. 【形】限制的, 有限的 28 (簡作 Ltd.)
- Lincoln, Abraham** [lɪn'kɒlən ɔbrə'hɑ:m]. 林肯 (美國總統兼演說家, 1809—1865) 82
- Lindsay, Vachel** [væʃəl lɪnleɪz]. 美國現代詩人 (生卒年代不詳) 82
- lioness** [lɪ'ɒnɪs]. 【名】雌獅 30
- liquid measure**: 液量容量 44
- liquor** [lɪk/ə]. 【名】酒類 44
- lira** [lɪ'rə]. 【名】里拉 (意大利幣制單位) 66 「文學的 21
- literary** [lɪt/ərəri, li't/ər-]. 【形】
- literary critic**: 文學批評家 74
- literary form**: 文學上的格式 81
- literary world**: 文學界, 文壇 68
- literature** [lɪt/ərɪtʃə, li't/ərɪtʃə]. 【名】文學 8 「作 1.)
- litre** [lɪ'trə]. 【名】公升, 升 43 (簡
- live up to**: 依~而行 46
- lock**. 【名】捲髮 67
- Locke, John** [dʒɒn lɒk]: 洛克 (英國散文作家, 1632—1704) 64
- logically** [lɒdʒɪ'kəlɪ]. 【形】依邏輯講 71
- Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth** [hɒn/frɪ wɔd'z/wɔ:h lɒŋg'fel/əv]. 朗弗羅 (美國詩人, 1801—1882) 81
- Longfellow, Johnny** [dʒɒn/frɪ lɒŋg'fel/əv]. 男子名 86
- look after**: 照顧, 料理 55
- loom** [lʊm]. 【名】織布機 36
- loose** [lʊs]. 【形】不嚴緊, 放縱 63
- lord** [lɔ:d]. 【名】主人; 貴族; (L-) 男爵, 伯爵之稱呼 46, 78
- loss** [lɔ:s, lɒs]. 【名】損失 61
- lot**. 【名】命運 21
- love story**: 愛情小說, 愛情故事 15
- lovely** [lʊv/əli]. 【形】可愛的 77
- Loveman, Robert** [rɒb/ɪt lʊv'mən]. 美國詩人, 生卒年代不詳 45
- lover** [lʊv/ə]. 【名】愛好~的人; 情人 7, 81
- Low** [ləʊ]. 【名】姓 50
- Lowell, Amy (Lawrence)** [ə'mɪ (lɔ:r/əns) ləʊəl]: 美國現代散文作家兼女詩人 (1874—1925) 82
- Lowell, James Russell** [dʒæmz rʊs/əl/əv]. 美國詩人 (1819—1891) 81
- lowland** [ləʊ'lænd]. 【名】低地, 平原
- Ltd.** 【簡】= limited 23 [77

- uck** [lūk]. 【名】命運,好運氣 22
- Luck of the Roaring Camp, The** [dhə lūk əv dhə rɔɪ'ɪŋ kəmp]: 營帳之幸 (Harte 詩) 82
- luncheon** [lün'chən]. 【名】中餐 86
- lustre** [lūs'tə]. 【名】光輝,光彩 61
- lyre** [lɪr]. 【名】(古希臘之)七絃琴 39
- lyric** [lɪr'ɪk]. 【名】抒情詩 64
- M, m** [əm]
- Macaulay, Thomas Babington** [təm'əs bāb'ɪŋtən nəkəw'li]: 麥果萊 (1800—1859) 74
- Macbeth** [mæk'bəθ]. 馬克白 (莎翁悲劇名); 蘇格蘭王之名,即該劇之主角 59
- machinery** [məʃə'nərɪ]. 【名】機械,機關 77
- madness** [mæd'nɪs]. 【名】狂 75
- magnificent** [mægnɪ'fɪsnt]. 【形】壯麗的,堂皇的 82
- Magnificent Ambersons, The** [dhə mægnɪ'fɪsnt əm'bəsənz]: Tarkington 小說 82
- Maia** [mɪ'ə]. 【名】希臘女神 53
- maid**. 【名】未婚女子,處女 32
- maiden** [mæ'dn]. 【名】處女,少女 32
- maidservant** [mæ'dsɜr'vənt]. 【名】女僕 31 [活 83]
- maintain** [mæntə'n]. 【云】維持,養
- make a speech**: 演說 30
- make for**: 增進 58
- malaria** [mə'lærɪ'ə]. 【名】瘧熱症,瘧疾 13 [11]
- male** [māl]. 【名】男性,雄性,壯性
- Malory, Sir Thomas** [sɪt' (təm'əs māl'ɔrɪ]: 英國散文作家,生卒年代不詳,其最活動時代約在 1470 年頃 58
- Man and Superman** [mæn əv sū'pərmən]: 人與超人 (蕭伯納戲劇名) 79
- man of letters**: 文人,文學家 52
- Mandeville, John** [jən mæn'dəvɪl]. 【名】人名, *The Travels* 著者,生卒年代不詳 (1300?—1372?) 52
- man-eating** [mæn'ə'tɪŋg]. 【形】食人的 51 [的 48]
- manifold** [mæn'ɪ əld]. 【形】多倍
- mankind** [mænkɪ'nd]. 【名】人類 20 [夫的氣概 46]
- manliness** [mæn'lɪnɪs]. 【名】大丈夫
- manner**. 【名】(= way) 樣式 (這樣,那樣的“樣”) 59
- mannerism** [mæn'ərɪzəm]. 【名】拘泥禮儀 67 [男僕 31]
- manservant** [mæn'sɜr'vənt]. 【名】
- manual** [mæn'juəl]. 【形】手作的 83
- manufacturer** [mæn'ʊfək'chəə, -chə]. 【名】製造者 1
- march** [mɑ:ʃ]. 【名,云】進行 10
- mare** [mɑr]. 【名】牝馬 30
- mariner** [mɑrɪ'nə]. 【名】航海者 73
- mark** [mɑ:k]. 【云】加記號; 【名】馬克 56, 66
- market day**: 市集之日 68
- Marlowe, Christopher** [krɪs'təfə mɑr'lə]. 英國戲劇作家 (1564—1593) 59
- Mars** [mɑ:z]. 【名】羅馬戰神 9
- masculine** [mə'skju:lɪn]. 【形】男性的,陽性的 11
- masculine gender**: 陽性 11

- Masefield, John** [jɒn mɑːsfɛld]: 英國現代詩人 (1875—) 79
- mass** [mæs]. 【名】一堆(的東西) 18
- Massachusetts** [mæsˈætʃʊˈsɔːts]. 【名】(美國)麻省 81
- Massinger, Philip** [fɪlɪp mæsɪŋjə]: 英國戲劇作家 (1583—1640) 19
- master** [mahˈstɔː]. 【名】主人, 男主人, 藝術家 81
- masterpiece** [mahˈstɔːps]. 【名】傑作 51
- mastery** [mahˈstɔːrɪ]. 【名】(與 of 合用) 精通 59
- matter**. 【云】有關係 31
- matter of course**: 當然的事 47
- maturity** [məˈtʊərɪtɪ]. 【名】成熟; 成熟時期 59
- Maud** [maʊd]: Tennyson 詩 74
- maybe** [mæˈbeɪ]. 【狀】或許 14
- means** [miːnz]. 【名】方法, 模樣 4
- measure**. 【名】(= metre) 詩的音節 75
【名】量 44
- medicine** [mɛdɪˈsɪn, mɛd/ɪsɪn, -sɪn].
- medieval** [mɛˈdiəvɪəl]. 【形】中(古)世紀的 59
【思】76
- meditate** [mɛdɪˈtɛɪt]. 【云】默想, 沉思
- Mediterranean Sea** [mɛdɪˈtɛrəˌniən sɪ]: 地中海 3
- medium** [mɛdɪˈɒm]. 【形】中的, 中號的 61
- meeow** [mɛˈoʊ]. 【云, 名】咪嗚(貓叫聲) 59
- mect**. 【云】接合, 接頭, 迎接 5, 35
- melancholy** [mɛlˈɒŋkəli]. 【形】憂鬱的 83
- melodious** [mɛlɪˈdɪəs, mɛlɪˌ, mə-, -diəs]. 【形】音節和諧的 74
- melodrama** [mɛlˈɒdrəmə]. 【名】善於激動觀衆的情感而有道德的結局之戲 79
- mention**. 【云】指出 (8 「人 59
- merchant** [mɛrˈtʃənt]. 【名】商
- Merchant of Venice** [mɛrˈtʃənt əv vɛnɪs]: 威尼斯商人(莎士比亞劇名) 59
【祇】22
- Mercury** [mɛrˈkʊəri]. 【名】羅馬神
- Meredith, George** [dʒɔːdʒ mɛrɪˈdiθ]: 梅利透斯(英國小說家兼詩人, 1828—1909) 74
- merge** [mɛrʒ]. 【云】併合, 混入 14
- merit** [mɛrɪt]. 【名】價值 79
- merrily** [mɛrɪli]. 【狀】快樂地 65
- message** [ˈmɛsɪdʒ]. 【名】消息, 信息 89
- Messrs.** [ˈmɛsəz]. 【名】(= Messieurs 之簡, 係 Mr. 之複數) 諸位先生, 寶號 2
- metal** [ˈmɛtəl]. 【名】五金 22
- metal worker**: 五金匠人 22
- metaphysical** [mɛtəˈfɪzɪkəl, -fɪzɪˌ, -kɪ]. 【形】形而上學的 64
- Metis** [mɛˈtɪz]. 【名】希臘女神 33
- metric** [ˈmɛtrɪk]. 【形】米突的 43
- metric system**: 米突制 43
- metrical** [ˈmɛtrɪkəl, -kɪ]. 【形】有一定的音節的, 詩的 51
- metropolis** [mɛtrəˈpɒlɪs]. 【名】大城, 都市 77
【名】美利堅 66
- Mex.** [ˈmɛks]. 【簡】= Mexico, Mexican
- Mexican** [mɛkˈsɪkən]. 【形】墨西哥的 66
- Mexican dollar**: 中國銀元 66
- Mexico** [mɛkˈsɪkə]. 【名】墨西哥 66
- mice** [mɪs]. 【名】(mouse 的複數) 小鼠 39

mid-autumn [mɪd'aw'tən], 【名】

中秋 34

Mid-Autumn Festival: 中秋節 34

middle age: 中年時期 5

Middle Ages, the: 中(古)世紀 49

Middle English: 中古英文 49

Midland [mɪd'lənd], 【名】英國中部的總稱 51 [冬時期 5

mid-winter [mɪd'wɪn'tə], 【名】隆

mighty [mɪ'ti], 【形】有力的 56

mild [mɪl], 【形】溫和 45

millier [mɪl'jə], 【名】百萬克 43

milligramme [mɪl'ɪgrəm], 【名】一克千分之一,公絲,毫克 43 (簡作 mg.)

millilitre [mɪl'ɪlɪ'tə], 【名】一公升千分之一,公撮,毫升 43 (簡作 ml.)

millimetre [mɪl'ɪmɪ'tə], 【名】一米千分之一,公釐,毫米 43 (簡作 mm.)

Milton, John [jɒn mɪl'tən]: 密爾頓(英國清教時代大文豪, 1608—1674) 63

miner [mɪ'nə], 【名】礦工 82

Minerva [mɪn'ɛr'və], 【名】羅馬女神 22

minstrel [mɪn'strɔ:l], 【名】歐洲中世紀之詩人兼樂師 73 [59

miracle [mɪ'rəkl], 【名】神跡;奇蹟

miracle play: 神奇劇 69

mirth [mɪ'th], 【名】愉快 82

miss. 【云】爲無~而感覺不便或不安: 未遇,不見,遺漏 14, 61

misrule [mɪs'rʊl], 【名】虐政 63

missing [mɪs'ɪŋ], 【形】遺漏的 61

mistress [mɪs'trɪs], 【名】主婦 15

misunderstand [mɪs'ʌndə'stænd],

【云】誤會 89 [臘女神 33

Mnemosyne [nɪmɒs'ɪnə], 【名】希

moan [mɔ:n], 【云】呻吟 69

mock [mɒk], 【形】假(常含戲弄,侮慢之意) 67 [的詩 67

mock-heroic poem: 敘述假英雄事蹟

model [mɒd'l], 【名】模型 73

modern [mɒd'ən], 【形】現代的, “摩登” 8

Modern English: 現代英文 49

monetary [mʌn'ɪtəri], 【形】貨幣的 66

money. 【名】幣制 66 [61

monk [mʌnk], 【名】修道士,和尚

monster [mɒn'stə], 【名】妖怪 36

moo [mʊ], 【云】哞,牛鳴 14

mood [mʊd], 【名】語氣,語法 12

Moody, William Vaughn [wɪl'jəm vaʊn mu:di]: 美國現代戲劇作家 82 [14

mooring [mʊ'ɪŋ], 【名】牛鳴聲

Moore, George [dʒɔ:m mu:]: 愛爾蘭小說家(1853—) 80

moral [mɒr'əl], 【形】道德的 55

morality [mɒr'æl'ɪti], 【名】道德(複數 -ies) 道德觀 59

morals [mɒr'əʊz], 【名】有關道德的有爲 63 (作此解時用複數)

More, Sir Thomas [sɪr tɔ:m mɔ:]: 英國小說家(1480—1535) 68

morn [mɔ:n], 【名】早上 76

mossy [mɒs'i], 【形】多苔的 45

mother-of-pearl [mʌðə'ɔ:v-
pɛəl], 【名】珍珠母,蚌 61 (複

數 **mothers-of-pearl** [mʌðə'ɔ:v-
pɛəl])

- motive** [mō'tīv]. 【名】動機 74
- mount** [mownt]. 【名】山 21
- mournful** [mōr'nfōl]. 【形】悲哀的 83
- mouse** [mows]. 【名】小老鼠 89
(複數 mice [mīs])
- mouse's** [mow'sīz]. 老鼠的 89
- movement** [mōō'vmənt]. 【名】運動 78
- movies** [mōō'vīz]. 【名】電影 15
- Mr. So-and-so** [mīs'tō sō'ənsō]. 某某先生 86
- Mrs. So-and-so** [mīs'īz sō'ənsō]. 某某夫人 86
- multitude** [mūl'titūd]. 【名】羣衆 83
- municipal** [mūnīs'īpəl]. 【形】市區的;市政的 77 【府 77
- municipal council**: 市政廳,市政
- Muses** [mū'zīz]. 【名】希臘女神 33
- music** [mū'zīk]. 【名】音樂 7
- musical** [mū'zīkəl, -kl]. 【形】音樂的 21 【家 7
- musician** [mūzīsh'ən]. 【名】音樂家 7
- myriagramme** [mīr'īōgrām]. 【名】一萬克,公衡 43
- myriametre** [mīr'ī mīō'tr]. 【名】一萬米(突) 43
- myrtle** [mīr'tl]. 【名】雁來紅 41
- myth** [mīth]. 【名】神怪人物;神話 8 【話 9
- mythology** [mīthōl'ojī]. 【名】神
- Napoleonic** [nəpō'īfōn'īk]. 【形】拿破崙的 73
- Napoleonic Age, the** [dhə nəpō'īfōn'īk əj]. 拿破崙時代 73
- narration** [nārā'shən]. 【名】講故事,敘說,敘事文 90
- narrative** [nār'ətīv]. 【形】敘述故事的 52 【民族的 51
- national** [nāsh'ənl]. 【形】國家的,
- native** [nā'tīv]. 【形】本地的 69
- naturalist** [nāch'rəīstī]. 【名】研究自然的人,博物學家(動物學家及植物學家) 83
- nature**. 【名】自然界 6
- nay** [nā]. 【狀】(古義)否;(今義,罕用)不只此也 69
- necessary** [nēs'īsərī, nōs'ə, -srī]. 【形】必要的 2 【必需品 70
- necessity** [nēs'sī'tī]. 【名】需要;
- needle** [nē'dl]. 【名】針 61
- never** [nār]. 【簡】=never 75
- negative** [nēg'ətīv]. 【形】反面的, 相反的 78
- Negro** [nē'grō]. 【名】黑人 82
- Neptune** [nēp'tju:n]. 【名】羅馬神祇 21
- neuter** [nū'tr]. 【形】中立的 11
neuter gender: 中性 11
- nevermore** [nēv'ənmōr]. 【狀】不復不再完了,休矣 83
- New Atlantis** [nū'ətlān'tīs]. 西方新大陸 (Mabry 著小說) 68
- New England**: 新英格蘭(即美國東北五六省之總稱, Massachusetts 即其一) 81 【新大陸 58
- New World, the** [dhə nē wɜ:ld].
- New York** [nū'yōr'k]. 紐約 2 (縮寫作 N.Y.)

N, n [ɛn]

name. 【云】命名;指定 9, 47
name after: 從某人之名而名之 9

- Newgate** [nū'gāt]. 【名】新門(倫敦街名) 28 [餐 73]
- nightingale** [nī'tīnggāl]. 【名】夜
- night train**: 夜車 34
- nineties, the**: 1890 至 1899 年間 80
- no matter**: 無論, 不論 16
- noble** [nō'bl]. 【名】貴族中人; 【形】高尚的 46, 82 [中人 46]
- robleman** [nō'blmən]. 【名】貴族
- noise** [noiz]. 【名】聲音 14
- nominative absolute**: 絕對主格 81
- Norman** [nōr'nən]. 【名】腦門人 49 [49]
- Norman French**: 腦門人的法語
- Normandy** [nōr'məndī]. 【名】腦門地(法國省名) 49
- North of Boston** [nōrth əv 1ōs'tən]: 在波斯頓之北 (Frost 詩) 82 [東北的 6]
- northeastern** [nōr'thō'stən]. 【形】
- Norway** [nōr'wā]. 【名】挪威 66
- Norwegian** [nōr'wō'jən]. 【形】挪威的 79
- not true to nature**: 不與自然相符, 不近自然, 不自然 64 [52]
- notable** [nō'təbl]. 【形】可注意的
- novel** [nōv'əl, nōv'ɪ]. 【名】長篇小說, 神史 68 [73]
- novelist** [nōv'əlɪst]. 【名】小說家
- nude** [nūd]. 【形】裸體 40
- number**. 【名】音節 83 [子 48]
- numerator** [nū'morəto]. 【名】分
- nurture** [nūr'chə]. 【名】撫育 65
- O, o** [ō]
- oat** [ōt]. 【名】雀麥 5
- object**. 【名】物, 東西 16
- oblige** [əblɪ'ʒ]. 【云】迫 61
- obscure** [əbskū'r]. 【形】不明了的, 晦澀 76
- obstacle** [ɔb'stəkl]. 【名】阻礙 64
- obtainable** [əbtə'nəbl]. 【形】可得到的 4
- Oceanus** [ōsɪ'ənoʊ]. 【名】海神 36
- ode** [ōd]. 【名】短詩 69
- Ode to the West Wind** [ōd tə ðə wɛst wɪnd]: 曉西風 (Shelley 詩) 73
- Odin** [ɔ'dɪn]. 【名】條頓民族神祇 9
- Odyssey** [ɔd'ɪsɪ]. 【名】Homer 之敘事詩, 所敘為 Odysseus (即 Ulysses) 於 Troy 之戰後返 Ithaca 時十年間之漫遊 58
- of-phrase**: 含有 of 字的短語 24
- offer**. 【云】供獻(轉為)出價 3
- office**. 【名】職權 41
- officer** [ɔf'ɪsə]. 【名】職員 61
- old age**: 老年時期 5
- Old Curiosity Shop, The** [dɪ ðə ɔld kər'jʊs'ɪtɪ shɔp]: 骨董店 (Dickens 小說) 74
- Old English**: 古代英文 49
- old maid**: 老處女 32
- old school, the**: 舊派 19
- olive** [ɔlɪ'v]. 【名】橄欖 30
- olive tree**: 橄欖樹 36
- Olympian** [ɔlɪm'piən; ō-]. 【形】屬於 Olympus 的 21
- Olympic** [ɔlɪm'pɪk, ō-]. 【形】屬於 Olympus 所開的運動會的 21
- Olympus** [ɔlɪm'pəs, ō-]. 【名】希臘山名 21
- on board**: 在船上, 在火車上 28
- on business**: 因事 35

- on foot**: 步行 14
on the average: 以平均計 4
once in a while [wʊns ɪn ə waɪl]: 不久一次 13
one one hundredth: 百分之一 43
one one thousandth: 千分之一 43
O'Neil, Eugene [ˈoʊjən ɔˈneɪl]: 美國現代戲劇作家 82
one-tenth [wʊn/ˈtɛntθ/]. 【名】十分之一 43
open, the: 空曠之地 6
opinion [əˈpɪn/yən]. 【名】意見 69
opium [əˈpɪəm]. 【名】鴉片 73
opium-eater. 【名】吸鴉片者 73
opium-fiend [-fɛnd]. 【名】鴉片煙鬼 73
opposition [əpˈoʊzɪʃən]. 【名】反對 64
oppress [əˈprɛs/]. 【云】壓迫 73
oppressed, the: 被壓迫者 73
oracle [ɔˈrəkl̩]. 【名】神諭;神諭所 40
orator [ɔˈrətə]. 【名】演說家 68
Orcaus [ɔˈrkəs]. 【名】羅馬神祇 21
ordain [ɔˈrdeɪn]. 【云】命定,注定 40
order. 【名】定貨單;階級【云】定貨 3, 46
ordered. 【形】有秩序的 36
ordinal. 【名】序數 48
ordinarily [ɔˈdɪnəriəli, -dnəri-]. 【狀】平常地 32
ore [ɔˈrɔ]. 【名】丹麥挪威 krone 及瑞典 krona 百分之一 66
organ [ɔˈrɡən]. 【名】機關 77
organization [ɔˈrɡənɪzəʃən]. 【名】組織 43
organizer [ɔˈrɡənɪzə]. 【名】組織者 8
origin [ɔˈrɪjɪn]. 【名】原始 74
Origin of Species, The [dʰi ɔˈrɪjɪn əv spɛʃɪs]: 物種原始 (Darwin 著) 74 【地,原始地 49
originally [ɔˈrɪjənəli]. 【狀】本來
Othello [ɔˈθɛləʊ]. 奧賽羅(莎翁悲劇名;該劇之主角 59
outer [aʊtə]. 【形】(out 的較級)較外的 50
outlaw [aʊtˈlɔw]. 【名】不法之徒,盜賊 52 【79
outline [aʊtˈlaɪn]. 【名】大綱,大意
Outline of History, The [dʰi aʊtˈlaɪn əv hɪsˈtri:]: 世界史綱(威爾斯著) 79
outlive [aʊtˈlɪv/]. 【云】活得比~較久 47 【處 14
outskirt [aʊtˈskɜːt]. 【名】近郊外
outspan [aʊtˈspæn/]. 【云】向外擴展 80
Outspan, The [dʰi aʊtˈspæn/]: Sir Percy Fritzpatrik 小說 80
over-eat [əˈvɔːt]. 【云】食得太多 13
overwhelm [əˈvəʊhɒlm/]. 【云】壓伏,淹沒 45 【過度 63
overwork [əˈvəʊəˈk]. 【云】工作
owl [aʊl]. 【名】貓頭鷹 41
own. 【形】自己的 2
ownership [əˈnəʊʃɪp]. 【名】所有權,主權 11

P, p [pō]

- pack** [pæk]. 【云】裝包;充塞;擁擠 15
pants [pænts]. 【名】褲 35 (單數 pant 罕用)
par [pɑː]. 【名】額面的價 47

- paradise [pär'ədis]. 【名】天堂樂園 63
- Paradise Lost, The [lho pär'ədis lawst]: 失樂園 (Milton 之名著) 63
- Paradise Regained, The [lho pär'ədis rīgā'nd]: 得樂園 (Milton 著) 63
- parcel [pär'sl, -səl] 【名】包裹 31
parcel post: 包裹郵務 34
- parenthesis [pərən'thī'sis]. 【名】括弧 10 (複數 parentheses [s'əuz]) [附 77]
- parliament [pär'ləmənt]. 【名】議院 77
- part. 【名】所扮的角色 31
- participial [pär'tisip'iəl]. 【名】屬於分詞的 84
participial phrase: 分詞短語 84
- participle [pär'tisip'l]. 【名】分詞 53 [特別地 79]
- particularly [pə'tik'julī]. 【狀】特別地 79
- party. 【名】黨團 31
- pass by: 從附近經過 5
- pass off: 消去 76
- passage [pə'si]. 【名】船費, 車費 93
- passion [pə'shən]. 【名】情感 70
- passive [pə'siv]. 【形】被動的 12
passive voice: 被動態 12
- patent [pə'tənt]. 【名】專利 88
- patent medicine: 便藥 88
- paternal [pə'tərniəl]. 【形】父親的 69 [尋路的人 81]
- path-finder [pah'thfi'ndə]. 【名】尋路者 81
- Pathfinder, The [lho pah'thfi'ndə]: Cooper 詩 81
- pathos [pə'thəs]. 【名】感傷(即激起同情心或憐憫心之原動力) 74 (複數無)
- patient [pə'shənt]. 【名】病人 84
- patriotism [pät'rīōtīzəm]. 【名】愛國心 58
- patron [pə'trən]. 【名】扶助者, 眷顧者 52 [助者 22]
- patroness [pə'trənīs]. 【名】女扶助者 22
- payment [pə'mənt]. 【名】付款 2
payment against delivery: 付款取貨, 收款交貨 3
- peace [pi:s]. 【名】和平 36 [32]
- peacock [pē'kək]. 【名】孔雀(雄) 32
- peahen [pē'hēn]. 【名】孔雀(雌) 32
- pearl [pē'ri]. 【名】珍珠: 【云】結成球形 76 [pk.]
- peck [pek]. 【名】配客 44 (簡作 pel) [pk.]
- pel [pəl]. 【名】金錢(含有輕蔑的意思) 75 [6]
- peninsula [pī'nīn'sūlə]. 【名】半島
- pennyweight [pēn'iwā]. 【名】辨士重 34 (簡作 dwt.)
- per. 【介】(=a) 每, (=by) 由, 依 4, 29, 57
- per cent [pə'sənt]: 百分比 4
- periculis: 每担 29 [57]
- per your instruction: 遵照, 遵命
- perfect [pə'fekt]. 【云】使成完善 81
- perfect [pə'fekt, -fəkt]. 【形】完成的, 完成式的 12 [12]
- perfect continuous: 完成繼續式
- perfect tense: 完了時制 12
- perfectness [pə'fekt'nīs]. 完善自樣子 77
- peril [pə'ri]. 【名】危險 53
- period [pē'riəd]. 【名】時期, 點(.) 5, 60
- permit [pə'mit]. 【云】允許 77
- persecute [pə'sikūt]. 【云】窮追 39

- personal** [pɛr'snəl] 【形】個人的 16
personal ending: 人稱字末 17
personal pronoun: 人稱代名詞 16
personification [pɛrsən'ifikaʃn]. 【名】以物擬人, 人格化 19
peso [pə'so]. 【名】西班牙古銀幣, 墨西哥及菲律賓的銀幣 66
pfennig [pɛn'ɪŋ]. 【名】芬呢(一馬克百分之一) 66 (複數 pfennige [-ɪ])
philosopher [fɪlə'sɒfə]. 【名】哲學家 64
philosophical [fɪlə'sɒfɪ'kəl]. 【形】哲學的 74
'phone, phone [fōn]. 【簡】= telephone 15
piastre, piaster [pɪəs'tɔ]. 【名】安南銀(埃及銀之一種) 63 [66]
pice [pɪs]. 【名】排士(安那四分之一)
pick out: 取出, 選出 38 [84]
picked troops: 精兵(軍隊中之)精銳
Pickwick Papers, The [dʰə pɪk'wɪk pə'pɔz]. 【西克爾克之文件 (Dickens 小說) 74
Pictures of the Floating World [pɪk'tʃəz əv dʰə flɔ'tɪŋ wɜ:ld]. 【俄間根 (Lowell 散文集) 82
picul [pɪ'kʊl, pɪk'ɔ]. 【名】擔 29
pie 【名】排(排士三分之一) 66
Pied Piper, The [dʰə pi:l pɪ'pɔ]. 【吹笛人 (Browning 詩) 74
Pieria [piɛr'iə]. 【名】古馬頓其地名, 係九 Muses 女神之靈地 39
Piers [pɪɜz]. 【名】人名 52
Piers the Ploughman: 農夫皮爾斯(詩名) 52
pilgrim [pɪl'grɪm]. 【名】香客 52
Pilgrim's Progress, the [dɪ ə pɪl'grɪmz prɔ'grɛs]. 【天路歷程 (Bunyan 名著) 63
pilgrimage [pɪl'grɪmɪʃ]. 【名】進香的旅行 52
pillow [pɪl'ə]. 【名】枕頭 69
pin [pɪn]. 【名】釘針, 別針 56
pine [paɪn]. 【名】松樹 77
Pinero, Sir Arthur [sɪə ɑ:/'θɜ:pɪnɪə]. 【北內羅 (英國戲劇作家, 1855—) 79
pint [pɪnt]. 【名】品脫 44 (簡作 pt.)
Pippa Passes [pɪp'ə pah'ɪz]. 【假日樂游 (Browning 詩) 74 [3
place order with you: 向尊處定貨
plague [plæg]. 【名】瘟疫 40
plantation [plɑntə'shən]. 【名】園地, 農場 65
play: 【名】戲劇; 【云】扮演 7, 31
player [pleɪə]. 【名】遊戲者; 球員 15
plaid [pɪd]. 【名】勸導, 曉諭 65
plot [plɔt]. 【名】結構 59
plough [pləʊ]. 【名】犁 33
ploughman [pləʊ/mən]. 【名】犁田的人 52
plural [plu:əl]. 【形】複數的; 【名】複數式, 複數字 11, 18
plural number: 複數 11
Pluto [plu:tə]. 【名】希臘神祇 21
pocket [pɔk'ɪt]. 【名】口袋 30
Poe, Edgar Allen [ə'dʒə ɑ:l'ɪn pɔ]. 【愛倫坡 (美國詩人兼小說家, 1809—1849) 81
poet [pɔɪ't]. 【名】詩人, 詩家 8
poet of freedom: 歌頌自由的詩人 81

- poetry [pō'itri]. 【名】詩 33
- Pole [pōl]. 【名】波蘭人 79
- polish [pōl'ish]. 【云】磨琢, 擦亮 67
- political [pōli'tikəl, -kl]. 【形】政治的 67
- pond [pōnd]. 【名】池 30
- Pontus [pōn'təs]. 【名】希臘神祇 19
- poor. 【形】卑劣的 5
- Pope, Alexander [ā'igzəh'ndə pōp]. 蒲伯(美國古典派詩人, 1688—1744) 65
- Pope, Franklin [frānk'līn pōp]. 人名 86
- poppy [pōp'i]. 【名】罌粟 41
- popular [pōp'ulə]. 【形】公衆的 15
- popularity [pōp'ulər'itī]. 【名】人聲; 風行 82
- popularize [pōp'uləriz]. 【云】使受羣衆歡迎 73
- port [pōrt]. 【名】海口 3
- Porter, William Sydney [wīl'yəm sīd'nī pōr'tə]. O. Henry 的真姓名 82
- Poseidon [pōsi'dən]. 【名】希臘神祇 21
- positive [pōz'itīv, pōz'tīv]. 【形】明確的; 原級的 12
- positive degree: 原級 12
- possession [pōz'esh'ən]. 【名】所有權 24
【的】 11
- possessive [pōz'sīv]. 【形】所有
- possessive case: 所有格 11
- possessor [pōz'sə]. 【名】所有者, 主權人 24
【能性】 15
- possibility [pōs'əbīl'itī]. 【名】可能性 10
- possible [pōs'ibl]. 【形】可能的 10
- possibly [pōs'ibli]. 【狀】可能地 77
- pound [paʊnd]. 【名】金鎊 28
- pound sterling: 英金鎊 28
- power [paʊə]. 【名】權力 75
- powerful [paʊ'əfʊl]. 【形】有勢力的, 有權力的 19
- preach [pri:tʃ]. 【云】傳教 64
- pre-Christian [pri'keɪs'tʃən]. 【形】化爲基督教以前的 51
- precious [pre'si:əs]. 【形】寶貴的
- precious stone: 寶石 44 [44]
- predict [prī'dikt]. 【云】預言 55
- prejudice [pre'dʒʊdɪs]. 【名】偏見 73
【是語】 62
- prepositional complement: 介詞補
- prescription [prɪskrɪp'shən]. 【名】單方 88
- presence [prez'əns]. 【名】到場 87
- present [prez'nt]. 【形】現在的 3
- present [prez'nt]. 【云】呈現, 寫出 68 [36]
- preside [prez'īd]. 【云】管理, 支配
- president [prez'ɪdnt]. 【名】會長, 主席, 總統 62, 82
- pretend [prɪ'tend]. 【云】假冒 30
- prettier [prɪ'tiə]. 【形】(pretty 的較級) 較美的 31
- prevail [prɪ'veɪl]. 【云】通行 49
- prevent [prɪ'vent]. 阻止 61
- Priam [prɪ'əm, prɪ'am]. 【名】古人名 40
- pride [praɪd]. 【名】驕傲 73
- Pride and Prejudice [praɪ ən pre'dʒʊdɪs]. 驕傲與偏見 (Austin 小說) 73
- priestess [praɪ'stɪs]. 【名】女巫; 女教士: 40
【要地】 69
- principally [prɪn'səpi]. 【狀】主
- principle [prɪn'səpl]. 【名】原理 67
- print [prɪnt]. 【云】印刷 1

- prisoner [prɪz'nə]. 【名】囚犯 73
Prisoner of Chillon, The [dhə prɪz'nər əv shɪ'jʊn]. 【名】西谷之囚 (Byron 著) 73
- private [prɪ'vɪt]. 【形】私下的;
 【名】私編密碼 1
- probable [prəb'əbl]. 【形】大概的, 可能的 29
- probably [prəb'əblɪ]. 【狀】大半會, 可有地 89
- proceed [prə'si:d]. 【云】進行 56
- produce. 【云】產出; (與戲劇合用時) 上演, 扮演 68, 79 [生產 81
- production [prədʊk'shən]. 【名】職業 69 [授 81
- professor [prəfēs'ə]. 【名】大學教授
Professor at the Breakfast Table, The [dhə prəfēs'ə ət dhə brək'fəst tə'bl]. 早餐一席話 (Holmes 散文集) 81
- profit [prə'fɪt]. 【名】得利, 贏餘 23
- pro forma [prə'fɔ:mə]. 形式的, 假定的 55 卷
- progress [prə'grɛs]. 【名】進步, 進程 27, 63
- Prometheus Unbound** [prəmō'thūs ūn'bəʊnd]. 人類解放 (Shelley 抒情戲劇) 73
- prominent [prəm'ɪnənt]. 【形】顯著的, 超羣的 73
- promote [prəmō't]. 【云】增進 83
- pronounced [prə'naʊnst]. 【形】特顯的 82
- property [prəp'ətɪ]. 【名】產業 21
- prophecy [prə'fɪsi, -sɪ]. 【名】預言 40 [議 62
- proposal [prəpə'zəl, -zɪ]. 【名】提
- propose [prəpə'z]. 【云】提議 52
- proprietor [prəprɪ'ətə]. 【名】所有者, 主人 2
- prose [prəʊz]. 【名】散文 52
- prospect [prəs'pekt]. 【名】形勢, 光景 88
- prosperity [prɒspər'ɪtɪ]. 【名】興盛, 富裕 58
- protection [prətək'shən]. 【名】保護 46 [者 32
- protector [prətək'tə]. 【名】保護
- protectress [prətək'trɪs]. 【名】女保護者 22
- proud [praʊd]. 【形】驕傲; 可驕傲的, 榮耀的 75
- prove [prəʊv]. 【云】證明 27
- psalm [sahm]. 【名】聖詩 81
- Psalms of Life, The** [dhə sahmz əv li:f]. 生活之頌詩 (Longfellow 詩) 81
- psychological [sɪ'kɒləj'ɪkəl]. 【形】心理學的 74
- public [pʌb'lɪk]. 【形】公眾的 77
- public opinion: 輿論 77
- publication [pʌb'lɪkə'shən]. 【名】印行, 刊行 74
- publish [pʌb'ɪʃ]. 【云】印行 68
- punish [pʌn'ɪʃ]. 【云】處罰 40
- punishment [pʌn'ɪʃmənt]. 【名】刑罰 63 卷
- puppy [pʌp'i]. 【名】小狗 25
- purely [pɪr'i]. 純粹地 83
- Puritan [pɪr'ɪtən]. 【名】清教徒;
 【形】清教徒的 63
- Puritan Age, the** [dhə pɪr'ɪtən əɪ]. 清教主義時代 63
- Puritanism [pɪr'ɪtənɪzəm]. 【名】清教徒的信仰或行爲 64

Q, q [kū]

- quack** [kwāk]. 【名】江湖郎中, 庸醫 88
- quadruple** [kwōd/'rōōpl]. 【形】四個所合成的 48
- Quaker** [kwā/kə]. 【名】友會宗(耶穌教之一派)之人; 【形】屬於友會宗的 81 「29
- quantity** [kwōn/'tītī]. 【名】數量
- quarrel** [kwōr/əl]. 【名】爭吵 36
- quart** [kwōrt]. 【名】夸爾 44 (釀酒)
- quarter**. 【名】地方 83 [作 qt.]
- question**. 【云】疑問 47
- question mark**: 問號(?) 60
- quickly** [kwik/'lī]. 【狀】迅速地 5
- quintal** [kwīn/'təl, -tī]. 【名】十萬克 45 (簡作 q.)
- quit** [kwīt]. 【云】棄去, 辭職 31
- quotation** [kwōtā/'shən]. 【名】價目, 報價; 引用的話, 引用句 28, 55
- quote** [kwōt]. 【云】報(價); 引用 28 60

R, r [ār]

- race** [rās]. 【名】賽跑 68
- radio** [rā/dīō]. 【名】無線電 89
- radiogram** [rā/dīōgrām]. 【名】無線電報 89 「35
- railway** [rā/'lwa]. 【名】軌道, 鐵路
- railway station**: 火車站 35
- rain or shine**: 不管陰晴 76
- raise the money**: 籌資 68
- rake** [rāk]. 【名】耙 36
- rape** [rāp]. 【名·云】搶劫 67
- Rape of the Lock, The** [dhə rāp əv dhə lōk]: 爭髮之戰 (Pope 所著假英雄詩) 65
- rapid** [rāp/īd]. 【形】快 27
- rapidly** [rāp/īdī]. 【狀】很快地 59
- rapture** [rāp/chə]. 【名】快樂, 狂喜 (在本課指詩歌音樂) 75
- rat** [rāt]. 【名】老鼠 30
- rational** [rāsh/nī]. 【形】理性的, 基於理性的 73
- raven** [rā/vn]. 【名】烏鴉, 八哥 81
- Raven, The** [dhə rā/vn]: Poe 詩 81
- raw** [raw]. 【形】生的, 未經煮過的 29
- reaction** [rīāk/'shən, rē-]. 【名】反動 64
- readable** [rē/dəbl]. 【形】可讀的 68
- ready made**: 現成的 59 「82
- realism** [rī'əlīzəm]. 【名】寫實主義
- realistic** [rī'əlīs/'tīk]. 【形】寫實的 52
- reality** [rīāl/'tītī, rē-]. 【名】實在, 實在的東西 11
- rebate** [rībā't]. 【名】減少; 折扣 4
- rebellion** [rībēl/'yən]. 【名】造反, 反叛 20
- receipt** [rīsē't]. 【名】接收 4
- recognize** [rōk/'əgnīz]. 【云】認識, 認明, 承認 71
- recommendation** [rōk/'əməndā-'shən]. 【名】推薦, 介紹 88
- recovery** [rīkūv/'əri, -v'ri]. 【云】恢復原狀 27
- Red Fox, The** [dhə rēd. fōks]: 紅狐 (George Robert 小說集) 8)
- redbreast** [rēd/'brōst]. 【名】知更鳥 45

- redemption [rɪdɒmp/shən]. 【名】贖回, 補救, 贖罪 63
- redress [rɪdres/]. 【名】補救, 賠償, 匡正 76
- reference [rɪfərəns]. 【名】參考 1
reference No. 備考號碼 1
- refinement [rɪfɪnmənt]. 【名】文雅的风氣 33 [11]
- reflect [rɪflɛkt/]. 【云】反照, 反射
- reflection [rɪflɛk/shən]. 【名】反照, 反照 11
- reflexive [rɪflɛk/sɪv]. 【形】反身的 42 [42]
- reflexive pronoun: 反身代名詞
- Reformation [rɪfɔːnəʃən]. 【名】(歐洲的)宗教改革 58
- regain [rɪɡeɪn/]. 【云】再得, 收復 56
- regard. 【名·云】注意, 關心 3, 61
- regarding [rɪɡɑːdɪŋ]. 【介】關於 61 [及 53]
- regardless [rɪɡɑːdlɪs]. 【形】不顧
- region [rɪdʒən]. 【名】區域, 地方 36
- regrett'st [rɪgrɛt/sɪ]. 【云】(regret [rɪgrɛt/]) 之一式, 與 thou 合用) 懊悔 76
- regularly [rɛɡʊləli]. 【狀】有恆地, 依一定時間地 13
- Reichsmark [rɪksmɑːk]. 【名】馬克 66 (複數 Reichsmarke [-ɪ])
- Reichspfennig [rɪkspfɛnɪŋ]. 【名】芬呢 (一馬克百分之一) 63 (複數 Reichspfennige [-ɪ])
- relation. 【名】親戚 70
- relative. 【名】親戚 9
- religion [rɪlɪdʒən]. 【名】宗教 76
- religious [rɪlɪdʒəs]. 【形】宗教的 58
- remark [rɪmɑːk]. 【名·云】批評 31
- Renaissance [rənɑːsəns, rɒn/ə-sɒns/]. 【名】(歐洲)文藝復興時期 58
- render [rɛndə/]. 【云】翻譯 51
- render into English [rɛndə ɪntə ɪŋɡlɪʃ/]. 【云】翻成英文 51
- renown [rɪnaʊn/]. 【名】名聲 76
- repeat. 【云】重複, 再作, 循環 56
- replace [rɪpleɪs/]. 【云】補還, 復置 61
- replier [rɪpliə/]. 【名】答覆者 87
- Reply to Heynes [rɪpli/ tə haɪnz/]. 答韓斯 (Webster 演說詞) 82
- represent [rɛprɪzɛnt/]. 【云】代表 59
- representative [rɛprɪzɛntətɪv/]. 【形】代表的, 很足爲代表的 17
- republican [rɪpʌbɪkən]. 【形】民主的 46 [56]
- require [rɪkwaɪr/]. 【云】要求, 規定
- rescue [rɛskjuː]. 【云】救 58
- resemble [rɪzɛmbl/]. 【云】與~相同 77
- reserve [rɪzɛrv/]. 【云】保留 61
- resolution [rɛzɔːlʊʃən]. 【名】議決案 77
- resourcefulness [rɪsɔːsɪfʊlnɪs]. 【名】多應變之才 67
- respond [rɪspɒnd/]. 【云】答, 回答 31 [76]
- restless [rɛslɪs/]. 【形】不安定的
- restoration [rɛstɔːrəʃən]. 【名】恢復原狀; 復辟 63
- return. 【名】歸還 46
- returnest [rɪtɜːnɪst/]. 【云】(return 之一式, 與 thou 合用) 回, 歸 83 [84]
- review [rɪvjuː]. 【云】溫習, 評論 10,

- revive [rɪvɪv]. 【云】復興 80
- revolt [rɪvɒlt]. 【云·名】造反 19
- revolution [rɒv'əlʊə'shən]. 【名】革命 63
- Rhea [rɪə]. 【名】希臘女神 19
- rhetoric [rɪt'ɒrɪk]. 【名】修辭學 90
- rhetorical [rɪt'ɒrɪkəl]. 【形】修辭學的,合於修辭學的 90
- rheumatism [rɪə'mætɪzəm]. 【名】風溼病 83
- ribbon [rɪb'ən]. 【名】絲帶 25
- Richard III [rɪtʃ'əd dɪə θɪr'd]: 利查三世(英國國王; 1483—85 在位,生卒年代 1452—1485); 莎翁歷史劇名 59
- Richardson, Samuel [səm'ʊəl rɪtʃ'ədn]. 英國小說家(1689—1761) 68
- Riders to the Sea [rɪ'dəz tə ðə si: sɔ:]. 入海騎士(Syngé 戲劇) 80
- right. 【云】使公平 46
- right after: ~之後立刻 20
- Ring and the Book, The [dɪə rɪŋ ən dɪə bʊk]: 指環與書(Browning 詩) 74
- ripe [rɪp]. 【云】熟 65
- rival [rɪ'væl]. 【名】競爭者 79
- Rivals [rɪ'vəlz]: Sheridan 戲劇 79
- river [rɪv'ə]. 【名】河,江,溪 14
- roar [rɔ:, rɔ:]. 【名】喧嘩 82
- Roberts, George [dʒɔ: rɒb'əts]: 坎拿大作家(生卒年代不詳) 80
- Robin [rɒb'ɪn]. 【名】人名 52
- Robin Hood ballads, the 稱頌羅賓漢的民歌 52
- Robinson, Edwin Arlington [əd'wɪn ɑ:rlɪŋtən rɒb'ɪnsn]: 美國現代詩人 82
- Robinson Crusoe [rɒb'ɪnsn krʊə'sɔ:]. 魯濱遜飄流記(狄福著) 67
- rod [rɒd]. 【名】棍; 權標,笏 41
- rogue [rɒg]. 【名】流氓,棍徒 63
- Roman [rɒ'mæn]. 【名】羅馬人 8
- romance. 【名】長篇小說,傳奇 68
- romantic [rɒmæn'tɪk]. 【形】浪漫的 58 「浪漫主義 68
- romanticism [rɒmæn'tɪsɪzəm]. 【名】浪漫主義者 73
- Rome [rɒm]. 【名】羅馬(城名) 8
- Romeo and Juliet [rɒ'miəʊ dʒʊ'lyət]. 羅米歐與朱麗葉(莎翁悲劇名); 該劇中男女兩主角 59
- Romola [rɒm'ɒlə]. 【名】Eliot 小說 74
- root [rʊt]. 【名】根; 字根 43
- rose [rəʊz]. 【名】玫瑰 41
- rosy [rəʊ'zi]. 【形】玫瑰的 65
- rough [rʌf]. 【形】粗的,不精細的 51
- royalist [rɔɪ'æliɪst]. 【名】保王黨 63
- R.S.V.P. [ɑ: 'ɒs've'pe]. 【簡】(法文 *repondé s'il vous plaît* [rə-paw'nda si voo plā], 等於英文 "reply if you please") 敬乞賜覆 86
- ruble, rouble [rʊə'bl]. 【名】盧布(俄國幣制單位) 66
- Rudd, Steele [stɪl rʌd]: 澳大利亞小說家 80
- rule [rʊl]. 【云】管理 8
- ruler [rʊə'lə]. 【名】管理者,君王 19
- rupee [rʊə'peɪ]. 【名】羅比(印度銀幣) 66
- Ruskin, John [dʒɒn rʌs'kɪn]: 羅司金(英國作家兼藝術批評家, 1819—1900) 74

Russell, George [jɔ̃r rʉs/ɹ]: 愛爾蘭散文作家 80 [61
rust [rʉst]. 【名】銹;【云】生銹 46,

S, s [ʒs]

s. 【簡】=shilling 29
sacred [sə'krɪd]. 【形】神聖 89
sacrifice [sə'krɪfɪs]. 【名】犧牲 89
safe [sə]. 【名】錢櫃,保險箱 18
safety [sə'fɪti]. 【名】平安,無危險 61
safety pin: 安安別針,別針鎖 61
sailor [sə'ɔɪə]. 【名】航海的人,水手
saint [sənt]. 【名】聖人 46 [79
Saint Joan [sənt jɔ̃n]: 蕭伯納戲劇名 79
sales office: 銷售處,營業部 1
salvation [səlvə'sheɪn]. 【名】得救,救恩 64
Samuel [sə'mʉəl]. 【名】人名 46
sandal [sə'n'dl]. 【名】草鞋 2
sank [sə'ŋk] 【云】(sink 的過去時制) 墜落 59
sap [səp]. 【云】使不安定,使弱 76
Satan [sə'tɔ̃n]. 【名】撒但(魔鬼之領袖) 63
satang [sə'tə'ŋg]. 【名】沙丁(銀的百分之一) 57
satire [sə'tɪr]. 【名】諷刺,諷刺文 64
satirize [sə'tɪrɪz]. 【云】諷笑 67
satisfactory [sət'ɪsfək'tɔ̃ri, -trɪ]. 【形】令人滿意的 2
Saturn [sə'tɜ̃rn, sət'ɔ̃n]. 【名】羅馬,希臘神祇 9 [人 49
Saxon [sə'k'sɔ̃n, -tɔ̃n]. 【名】撒克遜
scandal [skə'n'dl] 【名】恥辱的事,誹謗 79

Scandinavian [skən'dɪnə'vɪən]. 【形】屬於 Scandinavia (斯干的那維亞,即挪威,瑞典,丹麥等國之總稱)的;【名】Scandinavia 的人 49 [81
scarlet [skə'rɪlt]. 【名】腥紅,深紅
scarlet letter, the: 紅色 A 字(古時用爲姦通罪之記號) 81
Scarlet Letter, The [dʰə skə'rɪlt lɔ̃t'ə]: 紅色 A 字(霍桑小說) 81
scene [sɔ̃n]. 【名】風景;戲臺佈景,場面;劇中一幕之一“場” 59
scenic [sɛ'nɪk]. 【形】關於風景的 34
sceptre, scepter [sɛp'tɜ̃]. 【名】王節 41
school. 【名】派別 19
School for Scandal, The [dʰə skɔ̃l tə skən'dɪ]: 造謠學校 (Sheridan 戲劇名) 79
Schreiner, Oliver [ɔ̃'lɪvə shrɪ'nə]: 南非聯邦作家(生卒年代不詳) 80
science [sɪ'əns]. 【名】科學 10
scientific [sɪ'ɔ̃ntɪfɪk]. 【形】科學的 79 [人 75
scorner [skɔ̃rnə]. 【名】輕蔑~的
Scott, Sir Walter [sɪr waw'lɔ̃ skɔ̃t]: 史各脫(蘇格蘭小說家兼詩人, 1771—1832) 73
sea life: 航海者的生活 79
search [sɜ̃tʃ]. 【名】尋找 64
seashore [sɛ'shɔ̃r]. 【名】海岸,海邊
seat [sɛt]. 【名】座位 47 [邊 6
seaweed [sɛ'wɛd]. 【名】海藻 41
secondly [sɛk'ɔ̃ndli]. 【狀】其次,第二層 34
seek [sɛk]. 【云】覓,尋找 62 (~, sought, sought)

- seest [sē'ist]. 【云】古體 see 之一式,與 thou 連用 65 [37]
- selective [sɪlək'tiv]. 【形】選擇的
- self-pronoun [sɛlf-'prɔ'noun]. 【名】含有 self 的代名詞 42
- self-sufficiency [sɛlf-'sʌfɪʃ'ənsɪ]. 【名】自足 81 [的 73]
- selfish [sɛl'fɪʃ]. 【形】自私自利
- sen [sɛn]. 【名】錢(日金一圓百分之一) 66 [39, 73]
- sense [sɛns]. 【名】意義;覺感,意識
- Sense and Sensibility [sɛns ən sɛn'sɪbɪl'ɪtɪ]. 感覺與感覺性 (Austin 小說) 73
- sensibility [sɛn'sɪbɪl'ɪtɪ]. 【名】感覺性 73 [感 80]
- sentiment [sɛn'ɪmɒnt]. 【名】情
- sentimental [sɛn'tɪmən'tɪ, -təl]. 【形】富於情感的,假作多情的 64
- sentimental comedy: 注重情緒的喜劇 64
- sentist [sɛnt-st] (=sentest [sɛn'tɪst]). 【云】send 之過去時制與 thou 連用者 65
- separate [sɛp'reɪt]. 【形】分開的 27
- serf [sɛrɪ]. 【名】農奴 46 (複數 serfs) [數同]
- series [sɛr'ɪz]. 【名】組,套 55 (複)
- serious [sɛr'ɪəs]. 【形】嚴肅的,重要的 26 [27]
- seriously [sɛr'ɪəsli]. 【狀】嚴重地
- serpent [sɛr'pɒnt]. 【名】蛇 41
- servant [sɛr'vɒnt]. 【名】僕人(男女僕通用) 31
- service [sɛr'vɪs]. 【名】服務 2
- serviceable [sɛr'vɪsəbəl]. 【形】可供服務的 67
- settle [sɛt'l]. 【云】安身,安定 15
- settle down: 安定 15 [地 56]
- settlement [sɛt'l'mɒnt]. 【名】殖民
- severe [sɪvər]. 【形】嚴厲 5
- sex [sɛks]. 【名】性,性別 11
- sexless [sɛks'lɪs]. 【形】不分性別的 11
- shadow [shə'dɔ]. 【名】影子 14
- shake [ʃə:k]. 【云】搖動 47 (～, shook, shaken)
- shake hands: 握手 47
- shaken [ʃə'kɒn]. 【云】(shake 的過去分詞) 搖動 47
- Shakespeare, William [wɪl'yəm ʃə'kspɛr]. 莎士比亞(英國詩翁, 1564—1616) 58
- shape. 【名】形狀 1
- Shaw, George Bernard [dʒɔrʒ bɛr'nɔ:l ʃəʊ]. 蕭伯納(英國現代文豪兼戲劇作家, 1856—) 79
- She Stoops to Conquer [ʃə stəʊps tu:kɒŋ'kɔ]. Goldsmith 戲劇名 79
- shell [ʃɛl]. 【名】殼,甲 59
- Shelley, Percy Bysshe [pɛr'sɪ pɪʃ ʃɛl'i]. 雪萊(英國抒情詩人, 1792—1822) 73
- Shepherd's Calendar [ʃɛp'hɔ:z kæl'ɪndə]. 牧人的日曆(畫名,係 Spenser 之名著) 58
- Sheridan, Richard Brinsley [rɪç'hɔ:l brɪnz'lɪ ʃɛr'ɪdn]. 英國戲劇作家(1751—1816) 79
- shilling [ʃɪl'ɪŋ]. 【名】先令 29 (簡作 s. 或 /-)
- shine. 【名】好天,晴天 76
- shipment [ʃɪp'mɒnt]. 【名】所裝之貨 61
- shiver [ʃɪvər]. 【云】名】戰慄 6

- shook** [ʃʊk]. 【云】(shake 的過去時制) 搖動 47
- shoot** [ʃʊt]. 【云】射, 射箭 7 (~, shot, shot)
- shop** [ʃɒp]. 【名】店 10
- short**. 【形】短, 缺少 61 [61]
- shortage** [ʃɔʊtɪdʒ]. 【名】短, 缺少
- shorten** [ʃɔʊtɪn]. 【云】縮短 70
- shot** [ʃɒt]. 【云】(shoot 之過去時制及過去分詞) 射, 射箭 7
- show**. 【云】開映; 【名】影戲 15
- shown** [ʃəʊn]. 【云】(show 的過去分詞) 開映(影戲) 15
- sickle** [sɪkʌl]. 【名】鐮刀 19
- Sidney, Philip** [sɪdni/ɪp sɪd/nɪ]. 英國散文大家(1554—1586) 58
- sigh** [saɪ]. 【名】嘆息 25
- sight** [saɪt]. 【名】眼力, 視域; (與支票, 匯票合用時) 期 56
- sign**. 【名】記號 17
sign of infinitive: 無限式云謂詞的記號 17 [小說 74]
- Silas Marner** [sɪləs mɑːnə]. Eliot
- silence** [sɪləns]. 【名】靜默 80
- silver** [sɪlvə]. 【名】銀 44
- simple**. 【形】單純的; 【名】單純式 12
simple tense: 單純式的時制 12
- sin** [sɪn]. 【名】罪惡 64
- Singe, John M.** [dʒɒn ɒnsɪŋ]. 愛爾蘭戲劇作家(1871—1909) 80
- single-handed** [sɪŋgʰl-hændɪd]. 【形】單身隻手, 赤手空拳 67
- singular** [sɪŋgʰlə]. 【形】單數的; 【名】單數式, 單數字 11
singular number: 單數 11
- sink** [sɪŋk]. 【云】墜落 59 (~, sank, sunk)
- sinner** [sɪnə]. 【名】罪人 65
- Sir**. 【名】男爵 52
- situate** [sɪtʰuət]. 【云】位於某處, 處於某種地位 29 [形, 情境 3]
- sketch** [skɛtʃ]. 【名】見聞錄 68
- Sketch Book** [skɛtʃ bʊk]: 歐文“見聞雜記” 81
- skill** [skɪl]. 【名】技藝 75
- Skin Game, The** [dʰə skɪn gæm]: 高爾斯華綏所著戲劇, 中文有顧仲彝譯本“相鼠有皮” 79 [雲 37]
- skylark** [skɪlɑːrk]. 【名】天鸚, 百
- slave** [slɑːv]. 【名】奴隸 7
slave trade: 買賣奴隸 82
- Slave Ship, The** [dʰə slɑːv ʃɪp]: 奴隸之舟(Whittier 詩) 81
- slavery** [slɑːvəri]. 【名】奴隸制度; (此指) 如奴隸的工作 76
- slight** [slaɪt]. 【云, 名】輕視 65
- slumber** [slʌmbə]. 【名】輕睡 83
- smile** [smɪl]. 【名, 云】微笑 65
- snail** [sneɪ]. 【名】蝸牛 25
- snap** [snæp]. 【形】突然捉住的 56
snap fastener: 鈕扣 56
- snow-bound** [snəʊ/baʊnd]: 【形】為雪所包圍的, 為雪所封鎖的 81
- Snow-Bound, The** [dʰə snəʊ/baʊnd]: 雪偶(Whittier 詩) 81
- so**. 【狀】很 31
so far: 直至現在 31
- so-called** [səʊ/kɔːld, sɔːkɔːld, sɔːkɔːld]. 【形】所謂 74
- social** [səʊʃəl]. 【形】屬於社會的 37
- society** [səʊsɪəti]. 【名】會, 會社, 社會 62, 73
- soldier** [səʊldɪə]. 【名】兵士, 軍人 75
- solitude** [səʊlɪtʰud]. 【名】荒涼之處, 孤獨, 隱遁 69

- Son of God, the** [dʒə sʌn əv ɡɔd]: 神之子(指耶穌) 63
- sonnet** [sɒnɪt]. 【名】十六行詩 59
- sonny** [sʌnɪ]. 【名】父母呼喚兒子時所用的字,意即“愛兒” 35
- Soochow** [sʊʊ'ʃəʊ]. 【名】蘇州 86
- Soochow Road** [sʊʊ'ʃəʊ rɔd]: (上海)蘇州路 86
- soul** [səʊl]. 【名】靈魂 46
- South Gate**: 南門 28
- South Seas**: 南洋 57
- southeastern** [səʊ'thē'stən]. 【形】東南的 56
- sparrow** [spærə]. 【名】麻雀 32
- specialize** [spəʃi'əlaɪz]. 【云】專長,專門化 88
- especially** [spəʃi'əli]. 【狀】=especially (此是舊日用法) 83
- species** [spɛʃi'si:z]. 【名】物的種類 74 (複數同)
- specific** [spɛsɪfɪk]. 【名】特效藥 88
- specifically** [spɛsɪfɪkəli]. 【狀】逐一指明地 86
- spectator** [spɛktə'tɔ]. 【名】旁觀者 67
- Spectator, The** [ɪhə spɛktə'tɔ]: 旁觀者(英國十八世紀著名報紙) 67
- speech**. 【名】演說詞 59
- Spencer, Edmund** [ed'mənd spɛn'sɔ]: 斯賓塞(英國詩人, 1822—1899) 58
- Spencer, Herbert** [hɛr'ɒt spɛn'sɔ]: 斯賓塞(英國哲學家, 1820—1905) 74
- spice** [spɪs]. 【名】香料 25
- spindle** [spɪndl]. 【名】紡錘 36
- spirit** [spɪrɪt]. 【名】精神 4
- spoil** [spɔɪl]. 【云】縱壞 27
- spokesman** [spɔ'ksməŋ]. 【名】代發言者,代官人 82
- spouse** [spəʊz]. 【名】次或妻 33
- sprang** [sprɒŋ]. 【云】(spring的過去時制)跳 19 (sprung)
- spring**. 【云】跳 19 (～, sprang, sprung [sprɒŋ]. 【云】(spring的過去分詞)跳 19
- spy** [spi]. 【名】密探,間諜 81
- Spy, The** [dʒə spi]: Cooper 詩 81
- S.S.** [ɛs'ɛs/]. 【簡】=steamship 57
- St.** 【簡】=saint 73
- stage** [steɪ]. 【名】戲臺 79
- stallion** [stɔlɪ'jɔn]. 【名】牡馬 32
- stand**. 【云】忍受 31 (～, stood, stood) [58
- standard** [stændəd]. 【形】標準的
- standing**. 【名】地位 28
- start**. 【名】開端,起首 27
- state**. 【名】國家 83
- statement**. 【名】陳述 60
- station** [steɪʃən]. 【名】站;【云】屯兵 35, 49
- statistics** [stə'tɪstɪks]. 【名】統計 3
- status** [stə'tʌs]. 【名】地位 57
- steadily** [stɛdɪli]. 【狀】穩固地,繼續不停的 5 了的 56
- steady** [stɛdɪ]. 【形】穩固的,或穩固
- steamer** [sti'mɔ]. 【名】汽船,輪船 57 [汽船 57
- steamship** [sti'mshɪp]. 【名】輪船,
- Steele, Richard** [ri:ʃəd steɪl]: 斯蒂爾(英國新聞學家, Spectator 編者, 1671—1729) 67
- stere** [stɛr]. 【名】一立方英尺,立方英尺 43 (簡律 8)
- sterling** [stɛr'lɪŋ]. 【名】英國法幣之標準成份 28

- stern** [stɛrn]. 【形】嚴厲,板面孔的 63
- Sterne, Laurence** [iɔr/əns stɛrn]: 英國小說家 (1713—1768) 68
- Stevenson, Robert Louis** [rɔb/ət lɔv/i stɔ/vnsn]: 史蒂芬生(蘇格蘭散文作家兼詩人, 1850—1894) 74
- stimulate** [stɪm/ulət]. 【云】刺激,興奮 51
- stir** [stɪr]. 【云·名】騷動 52
- stone** [stɔn]. 【名】石頭 20 [73]
- stoop** [stɔp]. 【云】屈身,屈下,折腰
- Story of South African Farm.**
The [dhə stɔr/i əv saʊθ əf'rɪkən fɑ:m]: 南非農場的故事 (Oliver Schreiner 小說) 80
- Stowe, Harriet Beecher** (hār/iət bē/ehə stō): 斯吐活(美國小說家, 1812—1896) 82
- straightness** [strā'tnɪs]. 【名】直的樣子 77
- strait** [strāt]. 【名】海峽 56
- Straits.** 【簡】= Straits Settlements (海峽殖民地) 56
- strand** [strænd]. 【名】海邊(只用於詩中) 75
- stricken** [strɪk'n]. 【云】strike 之過去分詞。以下諸短語中: stricken with old age, poverty, etc. 89
- strife** [strɪf]. 【名】相爭 79
- Strife** [strɪf]. 【名】高爾斯華綏所著劇本,中文有郭沫若譯本“鬭爭” 79 [81]
- striking** [stri'kɪŋ]. 【形】奇特的
- string** [strɪŋ]. 【名】細繩 59
- stroll** [strɔl]. 【云】散步,慢行 6
- strong.** 【形】強壯 19
- Stuarts** [stjuəts]. 【名】依利薩伯女王以後英王的姓 63
- style** [stajl]. 【名】文章的格調 67
- stylist** [sti'list]. 【名】精於字句的文學家 73
- subject** [süb'jɪkt, -jɔkt]. 【名】題目;目的物 27, 83
- subject matter:** 內容 68
- subject.** 【形】受限制的 4
- subject to:** 受限制於 4
- subjunctive** [səbjʊŋktɪv]. 【形】接續的 12
- subjective mood:** 接續法,假定的語氣 12
- substance** [süb/stəns]. 【名】本質,內容 60
- succession** [səksəʃən]. 【名】連綿,連續 70
- Such-a-one** [sʊch/əwʊn]. 【代】某人,某某 69
- suck** [sʊk]. 【云】吸 65
- sudden** [sʊd'n]. 【形】忽然的 40
- sudden death:** 暴卒 40
- suddenly** [sʊd'nli]. 【狀】忽然地 13
- suffer** [sʊf/ə]. 【云】受苦 88
- sufficiency** [səfɪʃ/ənsɪ]. 【名】充足 81 [38]
- summarize** [sʊm/ərɪz]. 【云】括要
- sun.** 【云】曝日 34
- sun-god** [sʊn'gɔd]. 【名】太陽神 22
- sunk** [sʊŋk]. 【云】(sink 的過去分詞) 墜落 59
- superior** [sʊpɪr'iə]. 【形】高 82
- superlative** [sʊpɪr'lətɪv]. 【形】最高的,最級的 12
- superlative degree:** 最級 12
- superman** [sʊ'pəmən]. 【名】超人 79

- supernatural** [sū'pənəch'ərəl, -chərəl]. 【形】超自然的, 神奇的 73 「假設 72
- supposition** [sūpəz'ɪʃən]. 【名】
- supreme** [sūprə'm]. 【形】最高的, 無上的 20
- surprise** [səprɪ'z]. 【云】使駭異; 【名】奇異的事 26, 27
- survey** [sēr'və, sēr'vā]. 【名·云】
- swallow**. 【云】吞 20 「觀視 11
- swan** [swɒn]. 【名】天鵝 41
- swear** [swær]. 【云】立誓 21
- swear upon**: 指~爲誓 47
- Sweden** [swē'dɪn]. 【名】瑞典 65
- sweet**. 【形】甜蜜的 25
- swell** [swəl]. 【云】膨脹, 凸出, 充滿; (在本課指)唱 75
- Swift, Jonathan** [jɒn'əθən swɪt]. 【名】斯威夫特(英國新聞學家, 1667—1745) 67
- sword** [sɔ:rd]. 【名】劍, 利刃 77
- syllable** [sɪ'ləbl]. 【名】音節 52
- symbol** [sɪm'bəl, sɪm'bl]. 【名】記號 41 「表同情的 75
- sympathetic** [sɪm'pəθət'ɪk]. 【形】
- symptom** [sɪm'ptəm]. 【名】徵候, 症候 88 「使系統化 32
- systematize** [sɪs'tɪmətɪz]. 【云】
- tap** [tæp]. 【云·名】輕敲, 輕敲的聲音 82
- Tarkington, Booth** [būθ tɑ:kɪŋkɪŋtən]. 【名】美國現代小說家(生卒年代不詳) 82
- Tarrytown** [tær'ɪtown]. 【名】美國紐約省東南部村鎮名 83
- Tartarus** [tɑ:'tərəs]. 【名】地獄以下的地方 19
- Taylor** [tæ'ɪlə]. 【名】人名 46
- Taylor, Jeremy** [jər'ɪmi tæ'ɪlə]. 英國散文作家(1613—1667) 63
- T. B.** 【商】=tuberculosis 88
- teahervnets** [tə'vɒn'ɪts]. 【名】十茶 party: 茶會 87 「盛布 66
- tear** [tɛr]. 【名】眼淚 25
- technique** [tɛknə'k]. 【名】技藝 59
- tedious** [tē'di:əs]. 【形】煩厭的 13
- telegraph** [tē'lɪgræf, -græf]. 【名】電報; 【云】打電報 89
- telegram** [tē'lɪgræm]. 【名】電報, 電信 89
- telegraphic** [tē'lɪgræf'ɪk]. 【形】屬於電報的 1 「址 1
- telegraphic address**: 電報掛號住
- telephone** [tē'lɪfɒn]. 【名】電話; 【云】打電話 15
- tell on**: 對於~有不良的效果 14
- Tellus** [tē'l'os]. 【名】羅馬神祇 21
- tempest** [tēm'pɪst]. 【名】大風浪, 暴風雨 59 「喜劇 59
- Tempest, The** [dhə tēm'pɪst]: 莎翁
- temple** [tēm'pl]. 【名】廟宇 7
- tennis** [tɒn'ɪs]. 【名】網球 15
- tennis match**: 網球比賽 15
- Tennyson, Lord Alfred** [bɔ:rd æl'frɪd tɒn'ɪsn]. 【名】丁尼生(英國詩人, 1809—1892) 74

T, t [tō]

- tail** [tāl]. 【名】尾巴 8
- take care of**: 管理 29
- take up**: 取起, 選取(研究科目) 27
- tale** [tāl]. 【名】故事 51
- Tam O'Shanter** [tām'ə shān'tə]: 湯姆遇巫記(Burns 著敘事詩) 68

- tense [tɒns]. 【名】時制 12
- term [tɜ:m]. 【名】學期 13
- terms [tɜ:ms]. 【名】條件 2
- terms of payment: 付款條件 2
- Tess of the D'Urbervilles [tɛs əv dhə dɛr'bu:vɪlz]: Hardy 小說, 中文有張穀若譯本“德伯家的苔絲” 79
- testify [tɛs'tɪfi]. 【云】證明 61
- Tethys [tɛ'thɪs]. 【名】希臘女神 36
- Teutonic [tju:tɒn'ɪk]. 【形】條頓民族的 8
- Thackeray, William Makepeace [wɪl'yəm mə'kɪpɛs θæk'tɔ:ri]: 薩克萊(英國小說家, 1811—1863) 74
- theater [θi'ɪətə]. 【名】戲院 15
- theater packed: 戲院客滿 15
- theater manager: 戲院經理 15
- thee [ði:]. 【代】(古語)你 [單數, 受格] 65
- theft [θɛft]. 【名】偷竊 39
- theirs [ðəɪz]. 【代】他們的 7
- theme [θɛm]. 【名】題目 51
- Themis [θɛ'mɪs]. 【名】希臘女神 33
- thereon [ðə'rɒn/]. 【狀】在其上 65
- thinker [θɪŋk'kə]. 【名】思想者, 思想家 8
- third brother: 三哥或三弟 26
- Thomson, James [dʒəms θɒm'sn]: 英國詩人(1700—1748) 68
- Thor [θɔ:]. 【名】條頓民族的“雷公” 9
- Thoreau, Henry David [hɛn'rɪ dā'vɪd θɔ:r'əʊ]: 美國作家(1817—1862) 81
- thorn [θɔ:n]. 【名】荆棘 76
- thorough [θʊr'əʊ]. 【形】徹底的 13
- thou [ðəʊ]. 【代】(古語)你 [單數, 主格] 65
- threefold [θri:ˈfɔld]. 【形·狀】三重的, 三倍的 48
- threw [θrəʊ]. 【云】(throw 的過去時制) 擲 47
- thrice [θraɪs]. 【狀】三倍 48
- throughout [θru:ə'waɪ]. 【介】全部 67
- throw [θrəʊ]. 【云】擲 47 (～throw, thrown)
- thrown [θrɒn]. 【云】(throw 的過去分詞) 擲 47 「機頭」 89
- thrum [θrʌm]. 【名】(織布機的) 雷 9
- thunder [θʌn'də]. 【名】雷 9
- thunderbolt [θʌn'dɒlbɔlt]. 【名】雷電 10
- thy [θi]. 【代】(古語)你的 [單數所有格] 75 「元」 57
- tical [tɪk'l]. 【名】鈸, 鉢(運羅的銀) 32
- tiger [tɪ'gɔ:]. 【名】老虎, 壯虎 32
- tigress [tɪ'grɪs]. 【名】雌虎 32
- till. 【云】耕種 46
- times. 【名】倍 45
- tire [tɪr]. 【云】使疲乏 10
- tired. 【形】疲乏的 10
- Titan [tɪ'taɪn]. 【名】巨大的神; (轉爲)巨大有力的人或物 19
- title [tɪ'tl]. 【名】權利; 頭銜, 爵位 70, 75
- title to it: 對於它的權利 70
- Tiw [ti]. 【名】條頓民族的戰神 9
- to be sure: 當然的 8
- to the best advantage: 最有益 70
- To the Fringed Gentian [təʊ dhə frɪŋdʒ dʒən'shɪən]: 龍膽草讚 (Bryant 詩) 81

- To a Grecian Urn** [tō ə grē'shən ūrn]: 希臘壺讚 (Keats 詩) 73
- To Night** [tō nīt]: 夜之歌 (Shelley 詩) 73
- To a Nightingale** [tō ə nī'tiŋ-gāl]: 夜鶯頌 (Keats 詩) 73
- To a Skylark** [tō ə ski'lārk]: 雲雀頌 (Shelley 詩) 73
- To a Waterfowl** [tō ə waw'ta-fowl]: 水禽頌 (Bryant 詩) 81
- toil** [toil]. 【云】辛苦地工作 5
- toilet**. 【名】梳妝 14
- toilet soap**: 香皂 14 「寬容 58
- tolerance** [tōl'ərəns]. 【名】容忍,
- ton** [tʌn]. 【名】噸 28
- tone** [tōn]. 【名】調, 語調 67
- tonneau** [tənoʊ], **tonne** [tɒn]. 【名】公墩 43 (簡作 t.)
- Tono Bungay** [tənoʊ bʌŋ'gɛi]: 威爾斯小說名 79
- torch** [tɔːtʃ]. 【名】火把 41
- tortoise** [tɔː'tɔɪs]. 【名】龜 59
- tory** [tɔːri]. 【形】守舊派的; 【名】守舊派的黨員 67
- Tory** [tɔːri]. 【名】託克黨, 英國十八世紀的政黨, 今之保守黨 (Conservative Party) 即其後身 67
- towards**. 【介】向 69
- tract** [trækt]. 【名】論文, (特指)十七世紀末有報紙以前英國政黨及教徒之辯論文 63
- trade** [treɪd]. 【名】貿易 28
- tragedy** [træ'dʒɪdi]. 【名】悲劇 59
- trading company**: 貿易公司 28
- train** [treɪn]. 【名】火車; 【云】訓練 34, 46
- transaction** [trænsæk'shən]. 【名】交易, 買賣 56
- transcribe** [trænskri'b]. 【云】繕寫 69
- transhipment** [trænsʃip'mənt]. 【名】轉載, 轉運 29 「渡 49
- transition** [trænsɪʃh'ən]. 【名】過渡的 68 「翻譯 58
- transitional** [træn'siʒhən]. 【形】過渡的 68 「翻譯 58
- translation** [træhnsli'shən]. 【名】痛苦 65 「旅行 34
- travail** [trəv'əl]. 【云】經過分娩的 痛苦 65 「旅行 34
- travel** [trəv'əl, trəv'i]. 【云】名
- Travels of Sir John Mandeville, The** [dhə trəv'ɪz əv sɪr jɒn mæn'dəvɪl]: 曼特維羅遊記 52
- traveller** [trəv'lə]. 【名】旅行者 41
- treasure** [trɛzh'ə]. 【名】財寶 74
- Treasure Island, The** [dhə trɛzh'ə ɪlənd]: 金銀島, 寶島 (Stevenson
- treat of**: 論, 說到 63 「小說」 74
- treatment** [trɛ'tmɛnt]. 【名】待遇; 處理的方法 4, 73
- tread** [trɛd]. 【名】傾向, 趨向 82
- trial** [tɪr'ɪəl]. 【名】試探 3
- trial order**: 試辦的定貨單 3
- tribe** [trib]. 【名】族 49
- trident** [tri'dənt]. 【名】三叉戟 41
- trip** [trɪp]. 【名】旅行 89 「48
- triple** [trɪp'l]. 【形】三個所合成的
- troops** [trʊps]. 【名】軍隊 84
- troublesome** [trʊb'ləsəm]. 【形】麻煩的, 棘手的 31
- Troy** [troi]. 【名】地名 40
- troy weight**: 金銀衡 44
- truly** [trʊli]. 【狀】真誠地 2
- trunk** 【名】箱 34
- trustworthy** [trʌst'wɜː'dhɪ]. 【形】可靠的 88

ruth [trūðtʰ]. 【名】 眞實的情形,眞理 70

truthfulness [trūθ'tʰrʊðl'nɪs]. 【名】 無可疑識 47

try. 【云】 使疲勞 14 「意的 14

trying [tri'ɪŋ]. 【形】 很使人不適
Tsinan [tsē'nān/]. (山東) 濟南; (the ~) "濟南號" 輪船 89

tuberculosis [tūbēr'kūlə'si:s]. 【名】 肺癆 88

tumultuousness [tūmūl'tūsnɪs]. 【名】 騷動的樣子, 奮發的樣子 76

Turk [tūr'k]. 【名】 土耳其人 73

turn. 【名】 回轉 49

turn against: 反對, 攻擊 20

turnover [tūr'nō'və]. 【名】 買賣總數 28

Twain, Mark [mā'k twān]: 瑪克·吐溫 (美國作家, 1835—1910) 82

twice [twɪs]. 【狀】 兩倍 48

Twice Told Stories, The [dwa twɪs təld stōr'iz]: 陳舊的故事 (霍桑短篇小說) 81

twin [twɪn]. 【名】 雙生子之一 33

twine [twɪn]. 【云】 環繞 41

'twixt [twɪkst]. 【簡】 (= betwixt) 之簡) 在~兩者之間 79

'Twixt Land and Sea [twɪkst lænd ə. . .] 陸地之間 (康乃特小說名) 79

twofold [tu:foʊld]. 【形·狀】 二重的, 二倍的 48

type [tɪp]. 【名】 種類 68

typhoid [tɪ'fɔɪd]. 【形】 腸熱症的 13

typhoid fever: 腸熱症, 傷寒, 腸室扶斯 13

typical [tɪ'pɪkəl, -kəl]. 【形】 可爲代表的 1

U, u [ū]

ultimo [ūl'tɪmō]. 【名】 上月 4 (簡寫 ult.)

unbind [ūnbɪ'nd]. 【云】 解開 73 (~, unbound, unbound)

unbound [ūn'baʊnd]. 【云】 (un-bind 的過去時制及過去分詞) 解開; 被釋放 73

Uncle Tom's Cabin [ūŋg'kl tɔmz kəb'ɪn]: 黑奴顛天錄 (Stowe 著小說) 82

under no circumstance [ūndə nō sɪr'kəmstəns]: 無論何種情況都不可 89

under separate cover: 另封 27

un-English [ūn-ɪŋg'lɪʃ]. 【形】 非英國式的 79

unfold [ʊnfəʊld]. 【云】 展開 65

unfortunate [ūnɪf'ɔrtʃənɪt]. 【形】 不幸的 83

unhappy [ūnhəp'i]. 【形】 不快活的 83 「尊敬的 75

unhonoured [ūn'ɔnəd]. 【形】 不被

unimaginative [ūn'ɪmā'ɪnətɪv]. 【形】 缺少想像力的 67

union [ū'njən]. 【名】 聯合, 組合 87

Union Church [ū'njən çɜrch]: 教堂名 (耶穌教各會派之組合教堂) 87 「90

unity [ū'nɪtɪ]. 【名】 單一, 純一, 和諧

universe [ū'nɪvɜrs]. 【名】 宇宙 21

university [ū'nɪvɜr'sɪtɪ]. 【名】 大學 47

unlike [ūn'lɪk]. 【形】 與~不同 72

unlucky [ūnlʊk'i]. 【形】 不幸的 83

unmerciful [ʌnmɛr'ʃɪfʊl]. 【形】不慈悲的, 慘酷的 83
unpack [ʌn'pæk]. 【云】解開包裹; 開箱取物 34
unpleasant [ʌnplɛz'nt]. 【形】不愉快的 61 「靜」 47
unsettled [ʌn'sɛtld]. 【形】不安
unsung [ʌn'sʌŋ]. 【形】不為人家所歌頌 75
unto [ʌn'tu]. 【介】與, 交與, 至於 45
unusually [ʌnʊ'zʊəli, ōli]. 【狀】非常地 19
unwept [ʌn'wɛpt]. 【形】不為人家所哀哭 75
unworthy [ʌnwɔr'dhi]. 【形】不配 83 「高的」 50
upper [ʌp'ə]. 【形】(up 的較級) 較
uppermost [ʌp'əmɔst]. 【形】(up 的較級) 最高的 50
Uranus [ʌr'ənos, ɪr'a-]. 【名】希臘神祇 19
urn [ɛrn]. 【名】甕, 壺 73
U.S.A. 【簡】=the United States of America (美國) 2
useful [ʊ'sɪfʊl]. 【形】有用的 22
utmost [ʌt'mɔst]. 【形】至極的 50
Utopia [ʌtʊ'piə]. 【名】烏託邦 (More 著小說) 68
uttermost [ʌt'ətɔst]. 【形】(out 的較級) 外最的 50

V, v [və]

valley [væl'i]. 【名】山谷 6
value [væl'v]. 【名】價值 68
vanish [væn'ɪʃ]. 【云】消滅 69
vanity [væn'ɪti]. 【名】虛榮, 奢望 74

Vanity Fair, The [dʌvə'nɪtɪ fɪər]: 虛榮市 (Thackeray 小說) 74 [58
variety [vəri'eɪtɪ]. 【名】種類繁多
v.d. [və'deɪ]. 【簡】= venereal disease 88
v.d. hospital [və'deɪ hɔs'pɪtl]: 花柳病醫院 88 「的」 88
venereal [vɪnɔr'iəl]. 【形】花柳病
venereal diseases: 花柳病 88
vent [vɔnt]. 【云】發洩 77
Venus [vɛ'nʊs]. 【名】愛情之女神 19
verse [vɛrs]. 【名】詩, 詩的一行 64
versification [vɛr'sɪfɪkə'shən]. 【名】關於詩的音節的技巧 59
version [vɛr'shən]. 【名】譯本 58
Vesta [vɛs'tə]. 【名】羅馬女神 22
vex [vɔks]. 【云】激怒 69
vicar [vɪk'ə]. 【名】牧師, 主教之代表 68
Vicar of Wakefield, The [dʌvɪkər əv wə'kɪfɔld]: 威克斐牧師傳 (Goldsmith 著小說) 68
Victoria [vɪktɔr'iə]. 【形】維多利亞 74
Victorian [vɪktɔr'iən]. 【形】屬於英國女王 Victoria 的 74
Victorian Age, the [dʌvɪktɔr'iən əɪ]: 維多利亞時代 74
view [vju]. 【名】視域, 情境; 【云】觀察, 見解 29, 79
vigor [vɪg'ə]. 【名】體力 68
Village Blacksmith, The [dʌvɪlɪj blæk'smɪθ]: 村中鍛工 (Longfellow 詩) 81
violate [vi'əleɪt]. 【云】違背 89
violet [vi'eɪɪt]. 【名·形】紫蘿蘭; 青紫色 45

virgin [vɪr'jɪn]. 【名】處女 22
 virtually [vɪr'ʧhʊəli]. 【狀】事實上幾乎 67
 vixen [vɪk'sn]. 【名】北狐 30
 viz. 【簡】= videlicet [vɪd'ɪsət] 之簡,常略作 [vɪd, vɪz]; 但多數人則以 namely 代之 42
 vocation [vokə'shən]. 【名】職業 37
 voice. 【名】話聲; 【云】說,陳述,吐露
 vomit [vɒm'ɪt]. 【云】吐,嘔吐 13
 vowel [vow'əl]. 【名】元音 18
 Vulcan [vʌ'kən]. 【名】希臘神祇 22
 vulgar [vʌl'gə]. 【形】鄙俗的 64

W, w [dʌl/lū]

wad [wɒd]. 【云】塞以棉花 34
 wadded [wɒd'ɪd]. 【云】(wad 的過去時制及過去分詞) 塞以棉花 34
 wadded gown: 棉袍 34
 Walden [wɒl'dɛn]: Thoreau 散文集 81
 Wales [wɛlz]. 【名】威爾斯 49
 walk. 【名】範圍 51
 walk of life: 職業,階級 31 [76
 walkings [wɒl'kɪŋz]. 【名】步行
 Wallace, Alfred Russel [ɔl'frɪl rʌs'l wɒl'əs]. 華萊司(英國博物學家, 1823—1913) 74
 wandering [wɒn'dɔ:ɪŋ, -drɪŋ]. 【名】遊遊 75
 war [wɔ:ɹ] 【名】戰爭 7
 War of Independence: (美國)獨立戰爭 81
 warfare [wɔ:ɹ'fɛə]. 【名】戰爭 47
 Washington, D.C. 【名】美京 83
 watch. 【云】觀看 6
 waterfowl [wɒ'tɔ:fl]. 【名】水鳥 水禽 81
 watermark [wɒ'tɔ:mɑ:k]. 【名】水紋記號,水準 81
 wave [wæv]. 【名】波浪 6
 Waverly Kenilworth [wɒ'vɛlɪ kɛn'ɪlwɔ:θ]. 司各脫小說 73
 weak [wɛk]. 【形】狹弱 84
 weaken [wɛ'kɛn]. 【云】使弱 46
 wealth [welθ]. 【云】財寶 75
 weapon [wɛp'ən]. 【名】武器 47
 weave [wɛv]. 【云】織 86 (wove, woven)
 weaving [wɛ'vɪŋz]. 【名】織布 86
 Webster, Daniel [dæn'yəl wɛb'stə]. 韋伯斯脫(美國演說家, 1782—1851) 82
 wedding [wɛd'ɪŋ]. 【名】婚禮 31
 Wells, Herbert George [hɛr'bɔ:t ʤɛrʤ wɛlz]. 威爾斯(英國現代小說家,科學家,兼預言家, 1886—) 79
 West, the [ðə wɛst]: 西洋,歐西; (美國)西部 8, 82
 West Hills: 北平)西山 34
 wharf [wɒ:ɹ]. 【名】碼頭 72
 Wharton, Edith [ed'ɪθ wɒ:tɔ:n]. 美國現代小說家 82
 what does it matter? 那有什麼關係? 31
 whence [wɒns]. 【狀】從那處 75
 whereas [wɛ'wɛəz]. 【連】至於 65
 whichever [wɪtʃ'ɪvə'ɔ:]. 【代】不論哪一個 38
 whichever [wɪtʃ'ɪvə'ɔ:]. 【代】不論哪一個 38 [頁 67
 whig [wɪŋ]. 【名】民權黨; 民權黨

- Whig** [wɪhɪɡ, wɪɡ] 【名】會格黨，英國十八世紀之政黨，今之自由黨 (Liberal Party) 即其前身 67
- Whitman, Walt** [wɒlt wɪt'mən]: 惠脫曼(美國詩人, 1819—1892) 82
- Whittier, John Greenleaf** [ʃɒn grē'nli:f wɪt'ɪər]: 美國詩人 (1876—1892) 81
- whoever** [həʊəvə, həʊ-]. 【代】不論誰 30
- whomsoever** [həʊ'msəʊvə]. 【代】不論誰 [受格] 38
- whosesoever** [həʊ'zəʊvə]. 【代】不論誰的 38
- whosever, whose-ever** [həʊzəvə]. 【代】不論誰的 38
- whosoever** [həʊ'səʊvə]. 【代】不論誰 [主格] 38
- wicked** [wɪkɪd]. 【形】惡的 78
- widely** [wɪdli]. 【狀】廣大, 普遍 81
- widow** [wɪdʊ]. 【名】寡婦 32
- widower** [wɪdʊə]. 【名】鰥夫 32
- wild** [wɪld]. 【形】野的 45
- Wilde, Oscar** [ɒs/kə wɪld]: 王爾德 (英國戲劇作家, 1856—1900) 79
- wilds** [wɪldz]. 【名】荒野的地方 49
- willingness** [wɪ'lɪŋnɪs]. 【名】願意 47
- willow** [wɪlʊ]. 【名】柳樹 69
- Winchester** [wɪn'tʃɛstə]. 【名】英國南部的城 51
- Window in the Thrums, A** [ə wɪn'dəʊ ɪn ðə θrʌmz]: Barrie 小說 80
- wine** [wɪn]. 【名】葡萄酒, 酒 44
- wing** [wɪŋ]. 【名】翼翅; 【云】裝翼 (罕用) 22 上的 22
- winged** [wɪŋd]. 【形】裝翼的 有翼
- winged sandal**: 掛翼的草鞋 22
- Winkle** [wɪŋ'kl]. 【名】人名 2
- wisdom** [wɪz'dɒm]. 【名】智慧 41
- wise** [wɪz]. 【形】智慧的; 合算的 34
- wisest** [wɪ'zɪst]. 【形】(wise 的最級) 最有智慧的 36
- wit** [wɪt]. 【名】滑稽, 機智 59
- witch** [wɪtʃ]. 【名】女巫 (半屬妖怪) 68
- withdraw** [wɪðdraʊ]. 【云】撤退, 收回 49 (~, withdrew, withdrawn)
- withdrawn** [wɪðdraʊ'n]. 【云】(withdraw 的過去分詞) 撤退, 收回 49
- withdrew** [wɪðdruː]. 【云】(withdraw 的過去時制) 撤退, 收回 49
- wither** [wɪðə]. 【云】枯萎, 凋謝 65
- witness** [wɪt'nɪs]. 【云·名】作證, 證人 70 “玉皇上帝” 9
- Woden** [wɒ'dn]. 【名】條頓民族的
- wonderful** [wʌn'dəfʊl, -ɪd]. 【形】可異的, 可驚的 6
- Wordsworth, William** [wɜːrðswɜːθ]: 華茲華士 (十九世紀英國浪漫派詩人之領袖, 1770—1850) 45, 73
- work**. 【名】(文藝的) 作品 58
- workman** [wɜːk'mən]. 【名】工人
- works**. 【名】工場, 工廠 1 [37
- worship** [wɜː'shɪp]. 【云】拜, 事奉 7 [可敬的 70
- worthy** [wɜː'thɪ]. 【形】有價值的;
- wove** [wəv]. 【云】(weave 的過去時制) 織 36
- woven** [wɒvən]. 【云】(weave 的過去分詞) 織 36

wrap [rāp]. 【云】包裹 20
 wreath [rōth]. 【名】花圈 65
 wreck [rèk]. 【云】船破 67
 wrestle [rēs'l]. 【云】角力 7
 wretch [rèch]. 【名】可憐可鄙之人
 75
 wrong [rōng]. 【名】冤仇, 枉曲 46

yours faithfully, 商業信札上通常的
 結尾語, 並無什麼特別的意義 3
 yourselves [ūrsōivz']. 【代】你們
 自己 42
 youth [ūth]. 【名】青年 75
 Youth [ūth]: 康乃特小說名 79
 youthful [ū'thfool]. 【形】年輕的
 58

Y, y [wī]

Yeats, William Butler [wīlyəm
 but'lo yāts]: 愛爾蘭作家兼詩人
 (1865—) 80
 yen [yón]. 【名】圓(日金) 66

Z, z [zěd]

Zeus [zūs]. 【名】希臘的“玉皇上
 帝” 9

